Basic

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman



Language Oxford Word Skills



Learn and practise English vocabulary





Oxford Word Skills









Great Clarendon Street, Oxford 0x2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker) First published 2008 2012 2011 2010 2009 2008 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

ISBN: 978 0 19 462000 0

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Alamy Images pp 55 (airplane/Mint Photography), 65 (leg of lamb/Jeff Morgan, tuna steak/Maximillian Weinzlerl), 67 (raw peas/foodfolio, cooked peas/Paul Bradforth), 72 (grilled fish/Images of Birmingham), 140 (TV/Tony Cordoza, radio/Mark Bolton Photography, Mini/Natonal Motor Museum)

Cephas Picture Library p 65 (squid/Tim Hill)

Corbis pp 16 (blooming trees/Bloomimage, beach in summer/ Randy Faris, winter/image100), 38 (couple/Tim Pannell), 72 (fried eggs/J. Riou), 72 (roast chicken/David Thomas/PictureArts), 140 (ocar red carpet/Chris Pizzello/Reuters, Olympic flag/Duomo), 164 (broken pencil/Jose Luis Pelaez/Blend Images)

Epson p 55 (printer)

Getty Images pp 37 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 39 (two women/Elisabeth Knox/Photographer's Choice), 50 (tights/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 96 (bazaar/Scott R. Barbour/Image Bank), 133 (orchestra/Oliver Benn/Stone, Vanessa Mae/George Chin/WireImage), 159 (two girls in library/John Cumming/Iconica)

Lebrecht Music & Arts Photo Library p 133 (Sir Simon Rattle/ Wladimir Polak, Cecilia Bartoli/Laurie Lewis, Yo Yo Ma/T. Martinot)

Mark Mason Studios pp 10, 12 (cover card)

Music Pictures p 132 (Arctic Monkeys/Rob Verhost/Redferns)

OUP pp 11 (pencil/Photodisc), 50 (Hemera), 52 (clothes shopping), 65 (ham slices/Hemera), 66 (tin/Hemera), 69 (wine bottle, can/Hemera), 82 (young man/Image Source), 86 (bell/Hemera), 103 (soap, toothbrush, electric razor, hairbrush, comb, tissues, perfume/Hemera), 111 (young man/Image Source), 112 (young man/Image Source), 127 (young man/Image Source), 140 (newspapers, Journal), 153 (handshake/Hemera)

Photolibrary.com p 16 (autumn/Mark Barrett/Index Stock Imagery)

Pierre d'Alancaisez pp 55 (wine bottle), 65 (bacon, sausages, salmon steak, tuna steak, prawns, fillet steak, pork chop, salmon fillet, bacon), 67 (frozen peas), 69 (juice carton, biscuits and rice, jars, tin, chocolates and matches), 103 (toothpaste, shampoo, razor, make-up)

Punchstock pp 72 (boiled rice/Digital Vision), 131 (woman shooting/Photodisc)

Press Association p 140 (Iraq demonstration/Dima Gavrysh/ Associated Press)

Ronald Grant Archive p135 (Rumor Has It poster/Warner Bros. Pictures)

StockFood pp65 (crab/Peter Rees, mussels/Eisling, chicken/Foodcollection); 72 (rare steak/Eisling, well done steak/Foodcollection)

Illustrations by Stephane Gamain/NB Illustration, Willie Ryan/ Illustration, Oxford Designers and Illustrators

Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst



Contents

Acl	knowledgements	7
Int	roduction	8
C+	artar unit	
31	arter unit	
	w to use a unit	10
	w to learn new words	11
Ho	w to do the exercises	12
Abl	previations and symbols	13
Ba	asic English	
1	I can understand and say numbers	14
2	I can tell the time	15
3	I can say days and dates	16
4	I can say countries and nationalities	18
5	I can use classroom vocabulary	20
6	I can use English language words	21
7	I can ask and answer questions about language	22
	Review	23
Pe	ople	
	op.c	
8	I can give personal information	26
9	I can fill in a form	27
10	I can talk about my family	28
11	I can describe physical actions	30
12	I can name parts of the body	32
13	I can describe people	33
14	I can talk about character	36
15	I can describe relationships	38
16	I can say how I feel	40
	Review	42

Everyday life

17	I can describe my routine	46
18	I can talk about clothes	49
19	I can buy clothes	51
20	I can talk about money	54
21	I can talk about the weather	56
22	I can talk about illness	58
23	I can get help at the chemist's	60
	Review	61

Food and drink

24	I can name meat and fish	65
25	I can name fruit and vegetables	66
26	I can buy food in a shop	68
27	I can order in a café	71
28	I can order in a restaurant	72
	Review	75

Getting around

29	I can get around on buses	78
30	I can get around on trains	80
31	I can ask for and give directions	82
32	I can talk about roads and traffic	84
33	I can understand signs and notices	86
leaster.		
	Review	87

Places

34	I can talk about my country	90
35	I can talk about my town	91
36	I can describe the countryside	94
37	I can talk about shops	96
38	I can talk about my home	98
39	I can describe a kitchen	100
40	I can describe a bedroom and bathroom	102
41	I can describe a living room	104
	Review	105



Study and work

42 I can talk about my school	109
43 I can talk about university	112
44 I can name jobs	114
45 I can describe a job	116
46 I can talk about using a computer	118
47 I can use email and the internet	120
Review	122
Hobbies and interests	
48 I can say what I like	126

48	I can say what I like	126
49	I can talk about sport	128
50	I can talk about my free time	130
51	I can talk about music	132
52	I can talk about films	134
53	I can talk about the media	136
	Review	138

Holidays

54	I can arrange a holiday	141
55	I can book a hotel room	142
56	I can communicate in an airport	144
57	I can describe a beach holiday	146
58	I can describe a sightseeing holiday	147
59	I can use the bank and post office	148
	Review	150

Social English

60	I can meet and greet people	153
61	I can use special greetings	155
62	I can ask for information	156
63	I can ask for things	158
64	I can invite people	160
65	I can make suggestions	161
66	I can offer, accept, and refuse	162
67	I can say sorry and respond	164

68	I can express my opinion	165
69	I can use the phone	166
	Review	168
La	nguage	
70	I can use common adjectives	172
71	I can use common adverbs	174
72	I can use irregular verbs	176
73	I can use phrasal verbs	178
74	I can use prepositions of time	180
75	I can use time words and phrases	181
76	I can use prepositions of place and movement	183
77	I can use link words (1)	186
78	I can use link words (2)	188
79	I can use 'have' and 'have got'	190
80	I can use 'get'	192
	Review	193
Voc	abulary building tables	199
Cor	nmon irregular verbs	202
Ans	swer key	203
Ans	swer key to review units	225
List	of spotlight boxes	235
Wo	rd list/Index	237



Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain English Centre, Valencia, Spain Tti School of English, London, UK Bell International, London, UK Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd and the students at International House, Bath, UK

Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk and Iza Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank Scott Thornbury and Rachel Dudley.

ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

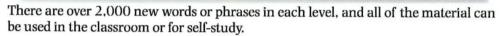
Andreas Schmidt (Germany)
Ayumi Whitehouse (Japan)
Funda Bolat (Turkey)
Esteban Cichello Hubner (Argentina)
Anna Anagnostopoulou (Greece)
László Rézműves (Hungary)
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman (UK)
Marcelo Ritter (Brazil)
Jung Hyang Oh (South Korea)

Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise and revise new vocabulary.

Basic:	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)



How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Basic level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, using the phone
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions of place, phrasal verbs

There is a particular emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English. This is continued at Intermediate level with the addition of more vocabulary from different styles of written English. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items as well as more idiomatic language.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000TM which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. at the moment, never mind, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. main course in a restaurant, or hand luggage at an airport.



We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings. (See *How to learn new words* in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through visuals, tables or different types of text, including dialogues. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying mini-glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

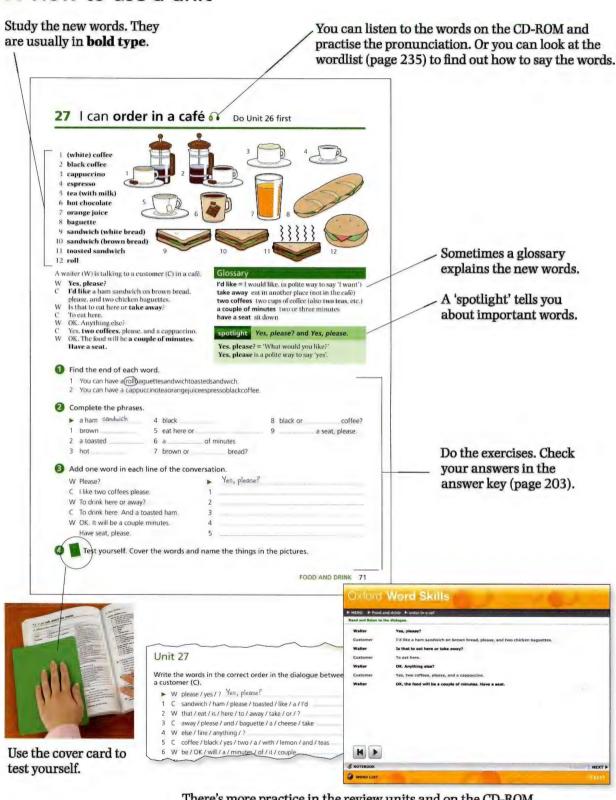
Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can
 use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.

A How to use a unit

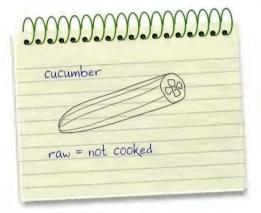


There's more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.

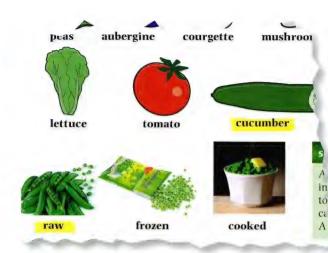
B How to learn new words



Repeat the words two or three times to help you remember them.



- · Write down new words in a notebook. Write the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- Write the words in sentences. Say them to vourself.
- You can do the exercises in the review units. or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. Basic English).
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (pages 199 to 201).
- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/ wordskills) for links to more practice and other useful websites.



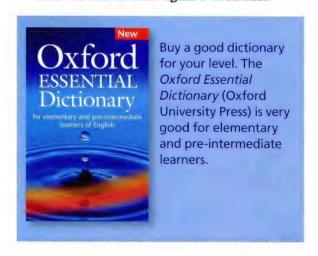
Use a coloured pen to help you remember difficult words.



Use a pencil. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.

4 gacabeb

5 naseb



C How to do the exercises

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

Word	Meaning			
tick	1			
underline	word	word		
cross out	-word			
circle	(word)			
complete	word or I like chocolate is	ce cream.		
right	$^{\circ}2 + 2 = 4^{\circ}$ is right .			
wrong	$^{\circ}2 + 2 = 5^{\circ}$ is wrong.			
mistake	If something is a mistake , it e.g. Inglish (The 'I' is a mistal	_		
correct	Make something right. e.g. Inglish (wrong) English (ri	ight)		
true	e.g. London is in England. Tha			
false	e.g. Paris is in Italy. That's fal	Ise . It's in France.		
the same	e.g. Small and little are the s	ame. (small = little)		
different	e.g. Big and small are differe	ent. (They're not the same.)		
match	Find something that you can put with another thing. e.g. 1 I'm from a music 2 I can speak b Japan 3 I like c English			
missing	If something is missing , it is not there. e.g. He comes New York. The word from is missing . (He comes from New York.)			
cover	Put one thing over another thing.			
table	This is a table :			
	Word	Meaning		
	tick	1		
	r-derline	Marond		
column	The table has two columns : a column for 'words' and a column for 'meanings'.			



Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the meaning. Can you remember the meaning?

D Abbreviations and symbols

opposite, Old is the opposite of young. OPP

synonym: a word that means the same as another word, e.g. small = little SYN

informal. If a word or phrase is informal, you use it when you are speaking to friends or INF people you know very well. The opposite is formal. If a word or phrase is formal, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know very well, or in written English.

etc. You use etc. at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them

for example: Fruit, e.g. apples and bananas. e.g.

U uncountable noun. These nouns have no plural form and can't be used with a or an.

past tense (past simple form of an irregular verb) PT

PP past participle

Vowels

i:	see	/siː/
i	happy	/'hæpi/
1	sit	/sit/
e	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
a:	father	/'fa:ðə(r)/
D	got	/gpt/
э:	saw	/so:/
υ	put	/put/
u	casual	/ˈkæʒuəl/
u:	too	/tu:/
Λ	cup	/kap/
3:	bird	/bs:d/
Э	about	/əˈbaut/
eī	say	/seɪ/
90	go	/gəʊ/
aı	five	/faɪv/
ao	now	/nao/
OI	boy	/lcd/
ıə	near	/n10(r)/
еә	hair	/heə(r)/
บอ	sure	/ʃʊə(r)/

Consonants

p	pen	/pen/
b	bad	/bæd/
t	tea	/ti:/
d	did	/did/
k	cat	/kæt/
g	got	/gpt/
tſ	cheap	/tʃiːp/
d ₃	jam	/dʒæm/
f	fall	/fo:1/
v	verb	/vaːb/
θ	thin	/0m/
ð	this	/ðis/
s	so	/səu/
Z	zero	/zɪərəʊ/
S	shoe	/ʃuː/
3	television	/'telrvizn, telr'vizn/
h	hat	/hæt/
m	map	/mæp/
n	no	/nəʊ/
ŋ	sing	/sɪŋ/
1	leg	/leg/
r	red	/red/
j	yes	/jes/

1 I can understand and say numbers 6

1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one	101	a/one hundred and one
2	two	12	twelve	22	twenty-two	140	a/one hundred and forty
3	three	13	thirteen	30	thirty	200	two hundred NOT two hundreds
4	four	14	fourteen	40	forty	1,000	a/one thousand
5	five	15	fifteen	50	fifty	1,050	a/one thousand and fifty
6	six	16	sixteen	60	sixty	1,250	a/one thousand two hundred and fifty
7	seven	17	seventeen	70	seventy	2,000	two thousand
8	eight	18	eighteen	80	eighty	100,000	a/one hundred thousand
9	nine	19	nineteen	90	ninety	1,000,000	a/one million
10	ten	20	twenty	100	a/one hundred	2,000,000	two million NOT two millions

In large numbers (over 999), write a comma (,) between thousands and hundreds, e.g. 11,000, and between millions and thousands, e.g. 3,000,000.

1	Co	orrect the mistakes.			spotlight about				
		thirty one thirty-one			Andread and All the control of the c				
	1	two hundreds	-		About means 'a bit more or a little less than'. How many students are there? \sim About 20.				
	2	three hundred forty			(= 18, 19, 20, 21 or 22)				
	3	twenty two		How much is it? ~ It's about £100.					
	4	42500							
	5	one thousand and two hundred	lo Philipsondoglycessssommonoscarence;						
	6	two thousand three hundred fifty	•	macin menten					
2	W	/rite the middle number in wor	ds.						
	•	24 twenty-five	26	5	118 120				
	1	7	9	6	243245				
	2	19	21	7	999 1,001				
•	3	66	68	8	5,0555,057				
	4	49	51	9	11,300 11,302				
3	W	rite the number in words using	about.						
	•	sixty-eight people about seventy	people	isetylastassattiseki					
	1	ninety-seven euros							
	2								
	3								
	4	four hundred and ninety							
	5	one thousand nine hundred and ninety							
	6	seventy-eight people							
	7	two hundred and forty-nine thousand							
	8	nine hundred and eighty thousand							

Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and say the numbers.

A Telling the time 6.

What's the time? What time is it?

MA				
(1)	Tt'e	form	o'cle	-doc
(1)	112	lour	OCI	UCK

It's five past six.

It's quarter past four It's four fifteen.

It's twenty past six. It's six twenty.

It's half past four. It's four thirty.

It's twenty to seven. It's six forty.

It's quarter to five. It's four forty-five.

It's three minutes to seven. It's six fifty-seven.

Use minutes with to and past when the number of minutes is not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five, e.g. three minutes past six NOT threepast six.

Write the times in words.

•	3.10 three ten
1	9.15
2	10.25
3	3.35
4	11.45
5	3.45
6	7.20
7	2.30
8	4.40

Write the times in words. Use past and to.

	12.30 half past twelve
1	7.15
2	9.30
3	11.35
4	3.50
5	8.25
6	1.03
7	2.45
8	4 17

Test yourself. Look at the clocks. Cover the words and say the times.

Giving more information 6.

9 a.m. nine o'clock in the morning

12.00 p.m.

5 p.m. five o'clock in the afternoon

7 p.m. seven o'clock in the evening

7.57 nearly/almost eight o'clock

8.02 just after eight

11.30 p.m. eleven thirty at night

midnight 12.00 a.m.

Same or different? Write 5 or D.

	8.45 p.m.	8.45 in the evening	S
•	3.00 p.m.	nearly 3.00	D
1	12.00 at night	midnight	
2	4.00 a.m.	4.00 in the afternoon	
3	6.32	nearly 6.30	
4	11.45 p.m.	11.45 at night	
5	8.43	nearly quarter to nine	
6	2.17	quarter past two	
7	12.03 p.m.	just after midday	
8	3.00 a.m.	three o'clock	

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

When do banks open in your country?

Do they close at midday?

What time do shops close?

What time do bars open?

What time do they close?

When do post offices open and close?

3 I can say days and dates Do Unit 1 first

A Days, months, and seasons 👀

days of the week	Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday		
months of the year	January February March April May June July August September October November December		
seasons (in Britain)	spring (March – May) summer (June – August) autumn (September – November) winter (December – February) Christmas Day (25 December) New Year's Day (1 January) your birthday (the day you were born)		
special days			



Days and months have a capital letter. Monday NOT monday January NOT january

1	Put the words in the correct order. Write the number in the box.
---	--

	1	Wednesday Saturday Monday 1 Fric	day 🗌 Tuesday 📗 Sunday 📗 Thursday 🗌
	2	autumn spring winter summer	
	3	December March June February April July September May Au	
2	W	/rite the next day, month or season.	
		May June 5	Friday
	•	**	March
	1		January
	2		autumn
	3	spring9	Wednesday
	4	November10	July
3	AE	BOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write you	ur answers or ask another student.
	1	Which month is your birthday?	
	2	Which season do you like best? Why?	
	3	Which day of the week do you like best? Why?	
	4	What do you do on New Year's Day?	
	5	What are two other special days in the year, and	d when are they?

Test yourself. Cover the days, months and seasons, and say or write them.

B Ordinal numbers and dates 6.

1^{st} first 6^{th} sixth 7^{th} seventh 3^{rd} third 8^{th} eighth 4^{th} fourth 5^{th} fifth 10^{th} tenth	11 th eleventh 12 th twelfth 13 th thirteenth 14 th fourteenth 15 th fifteenth 20 th twentief	enth 22 nd twenty-second nth 23 rd twenty-third nth 30 th thirtieth
--	---	--

6 Complete the words.

	ni <u>n</u> th	5	eigth
1	th_rd	6	si_teenth
2	twent_eth	7	fo_rteenth
3	fi_th	8	th_rteenth
4	frst	9	s_cond

6 Look at the calendar. Answer the questions. Write the dates as we say them.

spotlight Saying and writing dates

We can write the date like this:

 $10\ March$ OR $10th\ March$ OR 3.10.08 OR 3/10/08 We say the date like this:

What's the date today? \sim It's March the tenth. \sim It's the tenth of March.

Say the year like this:

1980 nineteen eighty 1995 nineteen ninety-five 2006 two thousand and six 2020 twenty twenty

Mai	rch							Арі	il					
S	М	_T	W	Т	F	S		S	М	Т	W	Т	F	S
				1	2	3		1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4	5	6	7	8	9	10		8	9	10	11	12	13	14
11	12	13	14	15	16	17		15	16	17	18	19	20	21
18	19	20	21	22	23	24		22	23	24	25	26	27	28
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	:	29	30					

When's ...

- ▶ the first Saturday in March? March the third. OR The third of March.
- 1 the second Tuesday in April?
- 2 the second Wednesday in April? _____
- 3 the first Sunday in March?
- 4 the first Friday in April?
- the moeth of the second of the
- 5 the third Tuesday in April? _____
- 6 the fifth Saturday in March?
- 7 the third Wednesday in March? _____
- 8 the fourth Monday in April?

Write the dates or years as we say them.

W	rite the dates or years as we say them.		Language	
-	6.9 The sixth of September. OR Septemb	er t	he sixth.	Language مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان
1	3.2	7	21.5	anacommunication to dis discontist to the minutes
2	4.7	8	30.11	14gap
3	10.12	9	22.4	DEFENDENCE OF THE PARTY OF THE
4	12.8	10	2015	
5	15.1	11	Today's date	
6	1989	12	The date next Tuesday	

4 I can say countries and nationalities 6

I com	e from	(I'm (I speak)		
Area in the world	Country	Nationality (Language)		
Burope	The Czech Republic	Czech		
	France	French		
	Germany	German		
	Greece	Greek		
	Hungary	Hungarian		
	Italy	Italian		
	Poland	Polish		
	Portugal	Portuguese		
	Russia	Russian		
	Spain	Spanish		
1	Switzerland	Swiss (German, French, Italian		
	Turkey	Turkish		
Asia	India	Indian (Hindi)		
Asia/The Far East	China	Chinese (Mandarin, Cantonese)		
	Japan	Japanese		
	South Korea	Korean		
	Thailand	Thai		
North America	Canada	Canadian (English, French)		
	The United States	American (English)		
Central America	Mexico	Mexican (Spanish)		
South America	Argentina	Argentinian (Spanish)		
	Brazil	Brazilian (Portuguese)		
The Middle East	Saudi Arabia	Saudi (Arabic)		
Africa	Egypt	Egyptian (Arabic)		
Australasia	Australia	Australian (English)		

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same, e.g. Czech is the nationality and the language. Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from Mexico are Mexican, but they speak Spanish. Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with capital letters: Japan NOT japan.



spotlight People from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add 's' to the nationality, e.g. Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks. Some plural forms are irregular: the British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss.

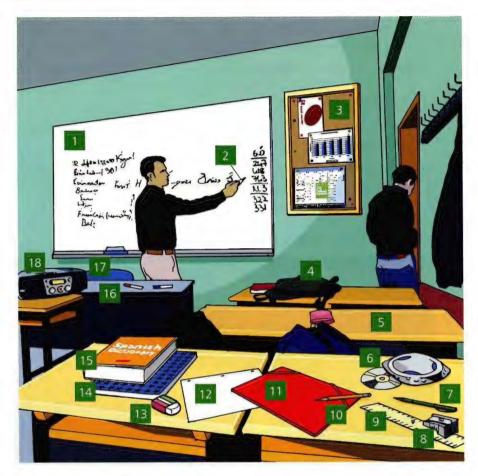
(Great) Britain = England, Wales, and Scotland

The United Kingdom/The UK = England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland Only people from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not English, but they are British.

	rue or false? Write T or F.			
	Argentinians speak Spanish.	5	Australians speal	k Australian.
1	Saudis speak Arabic.	6		ak Chinese.
2	Mexicans speak Spanish.	7		Portuguese.
3		8	Americans speak	
4	Hungarians speak Hungarian.	9	Czechs speak Po	
C	omplete the sentences.			
	China is in The Far East	. 5	Argentina is in	Am
1	Scotland is in Great	. 6		
2	Hungary is in	7		
3	Mexico is in Ameri	ca. 8		•
4	Thailand is in The	ast. 9		
	rite the names of the countries and	languages	9	
•	England English	6	The C	
1	F,,	7	P	, description of the second of
2	G,	8	a local distance of the local distance of th	,
	S,	9	R	
3	P,	10		
3			J	Commission of the Commission o
		11	T	
4 5	· ·	11 ending in		
4 5 Co	1			n
4 5 Co	omplete the boxes with nationalities	ending in	these letters.	

5 I can use classroom vocabulary 6

- 1 board
- 2 board pen
- 3 noticeboard
- 4 bag
- 5 desk
- 6 CD player and CD
- 7 pen
- 8 pencil sharpener
- 9 ruler
- 10 pencil
- 11 folder
- 12 piece of paper
- 13 rubber
- 14 notebook
- 15 dictionary
- 16 table
- 17 chair
- 18 cassette player

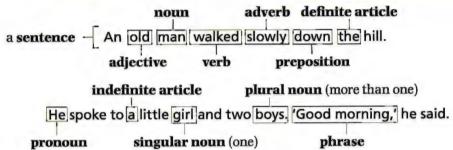


1	Tick (✓) the things you	u cai	n put in a bag. Po	ut a	cross (X) by the	things	you can't.
	▶ pen ✓	3	chair _	7	dictionary [11	table
	▶ board 🗶	4	rubber 🗌	8	ruler 🗌	12	pencil sharpener
	1 desk	5	board pen	9	noticeboard 🗌		
	2 piece of paper	6	CD 🗌	10	pencil [
2	Add another word to	mak	e a longer word	or p	hrase.		
	▶ notebook		3 notice		6	CD	00 000 10 1111 100 Address and Control of Co
	1 board		4 pencil				
	2 cassette		5 piece of				

- ABOUT YOU Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.
 - ► I've got a dictionary. ► I haven't got a cassette player.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

6 I can use English language words 60





- · There are eight words in the first sentence, and thirteen in the second.
- Walk is a regular verb; the past simple is walked.
- · Speak is an irregular verb. The past simple is spoke, and the past participle is spoken. (The past participle is used to form the present perfect.)

Circle the correct answer.

- A and the are adjectives (articles.)
- 1 A and an are definite/indefinite articles.
- 2 Woman is a noun/sentence.
- 3 Up is a preposition/pronoun.
- 4 Speak is a regular/an irregular verb.
- 5 Spoken is the past simple/past participle of speak.
- 6 Books is singular/plural.
- 7 Go and do are verbs/past simple forms.
- Slowly and quickly are adverbs/phrases.

Find the answers for each sentence.

I have three English lessons every week.	a verb have 1 a pronoun	2	a plural noun
There's a young man from Rome in the class.	3 an adjective 4 a preposition	5 6	an indefinite article
Today, he asked a question, and he spoke quickly.	7 an adverb 8 an irregular past simple	9	a regular past simple
I think he's in the wrong class.	10 a singular noun	11	a sentence

7 I can ask and answer questions about language

1

Question	Answer
What does 'dreadful' mean? (NOT What means 'dreadful'?)	I don't know. = It's a new word for me. OR It means 'terrible'.
What's this called in English?	I can't remember. = I knew the word yesterday, but I don't know it today. OR It's a stamp.
How do you say 'pasaporte' in English?	Passport.
Could you explain 'No vacancies'? (NOT Could you explain me?)	Yes, you see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.
What's the difference between 'hello' and 'hi'?	The meaning is the same, but 'hi' is informal.
What's the opposite of 'large'?	Small.
How do you pronounce 'May'?	/meɪ/, like 'day'.
'Eight' is pronounced /art/. Is that right? OR Is that correct?	No, that's wrong . or That's not right. It's pronounced /ert/.
How do you spell 'apple'?	I'm not sure. Is it one 'p' or two? or A-double P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)

Match 1–6 with a–g.

- ▶ How do you spell your name? ______
- 1 How do you say 'cup' in German? _____
- 2 What's the opposite of 'closed'?
- 3 What does 'tiny' mean? _____
- 4 How do you pronounce 'tiny'?
- 5 Could you explain 'How are you?' _____
- 6 'Question' and 'answer' mean the same.
 - Is that right? _____

- It means 'very small'.
- b It's what you say when you meet a friend.
- D-E-double N-I-S. < C
- d /tami/
- e No, it's wrong.
- f I don't know.
- q Open.

Complete the questions.

- What does 'awful' mean ? ~ 'Terrible' or 'dreadful'.
- 1 What's this ______ in English? ~ It's a frying pan.
- 2 How do you ______'tomato'? ~ /təm'axtəu/.
- 3 ______ you spell 'eye'? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.
- 4 What's the difference ______ 'bye' and 'goodbye'? ~ 'Bye' is more informal.
- 5 'Pen' is the same as 'pencil'. Is that ______ ? ~ No, that's wrong.
- 6 What's the ______ of 'interesting'? ~ Boring.
- 7 What ______ 'enormous' mean? ~ It means 'very big'.
- 8 Could you ______ 'EXIT'? ~ You see it on a door. It means that you can go out there.

Review: Basic English

Unit 1

Do the maths. Write the	ne answer in words.
-------------------------	---------------------

- ten plus (+) seven = seventeen
- ▶ eight minus (-) three = five
- 1 three plus nine = _____
- 2 four plus eleven = _____
- 3 nineteen minus six = _____
- 4 five plus twenty-nine = _____
- 5 sixteen minus five = _____

- 6 eighty-seven minus eight = _____
- 7 ninety-five plus seventeen = _____
- 8 thirty-five minus eight = _____
- 9 a hundred and five plus seventy =
- 10 three hundred minus fourteen = _____
- 11 twenty-eight plus thirteen = _____
- 12 one thousand minus forty-seven = _____

Unit 2

Write the times in the box under the clocks. Then add 15 minutes to each time. Write the new times with past or to.

five past eleven half past six	twenty-five past five twenty past two	ten to eight ✓ midnight twenty to two five to nine	
► 07:50 ten to eight	+15 five past eight	4 02:20	+15
1 [3:40]	+15	5 [20:55]	+15
2 [12:00]	+15	6 05:30	+15
3 23:05	+15	7 [11:25]	+15
		244234444444444444444444444444444444444	******************************

Unit 3

1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 A What's the _____today?
 - B The fifth _____ October.
- 2 A I don't like January.
 - B Why?
 - A Because it's the coldest ______ of the _____
- 3 A Which ______ do you like best?
 - B Summer.
- 4 A It's my _____today.
 - B Really? How old are you?
- 5 A I'm going to California on New _____
 - B Fantastic!

2 Write the answers.				
► What's the 1st day of	of the week? Monday	mas .		
	th of the year?			
2 What's the 3rd seas	on of the year in Britain?	ORANGE DE PROPERTIES CONTRACTOR DE LA CO		
3 What's the 4th day	of the week?	-		
4 What's the 5th mon	th of the year?	PRO101010000		
5 What's the 6th day	of the week?	0+409		
6 What's the 7th mon	th of the year?	edharanea		
7 What's the 9th mon	th of the year?	. 300 Sellando		
8 What's the 11th mo	nth of the year?	CONTRACT COLUMN		
Unit 4				
1 Write the first letter	of each word. Remember	r, countries an	d nationalities	
	tters. Then write C for 'co	ountry' or N fo	or 'nationality'.	
$ ightharpoonup \frac{S}{R}$ audi $\frac{N}{C}$	5hina	11		
▶ BritainC	6zech	12	rench	
1taly	7gypt	13	•	
2ungary 3exico	8			
4wiss	10urkey		rgentinian ortugal	
7	iourkey	10	ortugal	
2 Complete the text.				
My name's Magda, and	I'm studvina ► English i	n London at the	moment. I'm from Po	(1
and I live with two stud	ents: Silvia, who's Br	(2), and Irina v	vho's from the Cz	- ('
Re(3). Irina sp	peaks Cz(4) and Po	(5). V	Ve go to a language school in t	the
centre. Our class has ma	any nationalities: there are two	o Ja(6	5) students, a Ko(7),	
three Tu(8) w	omen, a young lt(9) girl, a Ch	(10) boy and four studer	its
from Sp (11).	Our teacher is Dennis, and he	's Au	(12).	
Unit 5				
Write your answers.				
► You put your things in	this, a bag			
	this in the classroom.			
2 You use this if you mal	ke a mistake.	needs advantamental		
3 You put notices on this				
_	of words in this.	1012-1013-101-101-101-101-101-101-101-101-10		
	ith this.			
	lary in this.	***************************************		
7 You listen to CDs on the				
8 You sit on this.				
	paper in this.			
. Tod can put pieces of	super III uiis.	MARKO 33333 8 TO LEGINO		

Unit 6

Find 12 more English language words in the square. Write them in the correct spaces below.

1	S	P	Α	5	T	S	1	М	Р	L	E
٧	S	T	Α	R			C	L	E	W	P
D	E	U	P	S	1	Ν	G	U	L	Α	R
1	N	G	R	E	G	U	L	Α	R	D	E
R	T	M	0	U	D	Y	L	U	R	J	P
R	E	1	Ν	T	R	0		E	K	E	0
E	N	L	0	Α	D	G	T	P	D	C	S
G	C	L	U	K	E	R	U	L	E	T	1
U	E	D	Ν	U	W	E	M	U	1	1	T
L	Y	Α	D	V	E	R	В	R	M	V	1
Α	R	0	F	0	P	H	R	Α	5	E	0
R	U	W	0	R	D	C	0	L	R	P	Ν



	Walked, went, saw past simple
1	I come from France.
2	Quickly, slowly
3	In, from, on
4	Good afternoon, at school
5	Walk(ed), look(ed), listen(ed)
6	A, an, the

7	He, I, they
8	Table, go, very
9	Different, old, big
10	Boy (not boys)
11	Do (did), go (went)
12	Girls (not girl)

Unit 7

Answer the questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	What does terrible mean? It means very bad or dreadful.
1	What's the opposite of correct?
2	What's the difference between spelling and pronunciation?
3	How do you say hello in your language?
4	How do you pronounce explain?
5	What does wrong mean?
6	Tiny means the same as enormous. Is that right?



What's this called in English?



8 I can give personal information 6.

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The receptionist needs some information. RECEPTIONIST SANDRO spotlight information What's your family name? ~ Bertoli. And your first name? ~ Sandro. Information means facts about people or things, e.g. name, Could I have your address? ~ 45 Alfred Road. address, etc. Information is And the postcode? ~ CB2 4TX. uncountable; don't say Now the receptionist is asking Sandro about himself and his family. an information or informations. So, Sandro, where are you from? ~ Italy. (or Where do you come from?) Whereabouts in Italy? ~ Pisa. (or Where in Italy exactly?) What do you do in Pisa? ~ I'm a doctor. (or What's your job?) And are you married or single? ~ I'm married. Have you got any children? ~ Yes. A boy and a girl. How old are they? ~ The boy's six and the girl's two. In each question, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it. Are married you? Are you married? 1 What do do you in your country? 2 Where do come from you? 3 Could I your address have? 4 What's your name family? 5 What's postcode your? 6 How are old your children? 7 Have you any children got? 8 What's your name first? Complete the questions. (You will answer these questions in Exercise 3.) ▶ I need some information ABOUT YOU 1 What's your _____ name? ~ Kovács. 2 And your _____ name? ~ Zsuzsa. 3 Where are you ______ ? ~ Hungary. 4 ____? ~ The capital, Budapest. 5 And ______ I have your address? ~ Tarcali utca 27. 6 And the _____? ~ 1113. 7 And what _____ you do? ~ I'm an engineer. 8 Are you _____? ~ No, I'm still single.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions above, or ask another student.

~ I'm 27.

9 How _____ are you?

9 I can fill in a form 6

Meaning	Word	Example	ABOUT YOU
single or married man married woman single woman single or married woman	Mr Mrs Miss Ms	Miss	
family name	surname	Rodriguez	
first name(s)	forename(s)	Maria Helena	
day, month, and year you were born	date of birth	12 June 1985	
	nationality	Argentinian	
first language	mother tongue	Spanish	
	home address	California 2000, Piso 12 Buenos Aires C1289AAN	
phone number during the day	daytime tel	[54] 11 4302 8000	
no means 'number'	mobile no	0341 241248	
noт email number	email address	malena@latinoa.com.ar	
married or single?	marital status	single	
job	occupation	sports teacher	
elementary? intermediate? etc. tick = ✓	level of English (please tick)	elementary 🗸 intermediate advanced	elementary intermediate advanced
your written name	signature	Maria Rodriguez	

True or false? Write T or F.

- Miss = married or single woman ___F
 occupation = married or single _____
- 2 Mrs = married woman
- 3 Mr = single or married man _____
- 4 surname = first name ...___
- 5 tick = **√**
- 6 forename = family name _____

- 7 level = write your name
 - 8 marital status = married or single
 - 9 mother tongue = mother's name
- 10 email address = where you live
- 11 date of birth = today's date
- 12 daytime tel = phone number during the day

2 ABOUT YOU Write your information in the table above.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

10 I can talk about my family

A Family tree 60





Elsie Damon's grandmother

All his **grandfather**



Dave his **father**



Maggie his **mother**



Paul his **uncle**



Jane his **aunt**



Luke his brother





his sister



James his **cousin**

Jessica his **cousin**

All the people here are Damon's **relatives**.
Luke is Dave and Maggie's **son**.
Karen is Dave and Maggie's **daughter**.
Maggie is Dave's **wife**.
Dave is Maggie's **husband**.

Dave is Maggie's **husband**.

Elsie and Alf are Maggie's **parents** (= mother and father).

Dave is Paul's brother-in-law.
Jane is Maggie's sister-in-law.
James is Maggie's nephew.
Karen is Paul's niece.
Luke is Elsie's grandson.
Jessica is Elsie's granddaughter.

- Omplete the sentences about Damon's family.
 - ▶ Paul is Elsie and Alf's <u>son</u>.
 - 1 Maggie is Elsie's _____
 - 2 Luke is Paul's3 Jessica is Maggie's
 - 4 Maggie is Jane's
 - 5 Karen is Jessica's

- 6 Paul is Jane's
- 7 Elsie is Jessica's _____ 8 Paul is Luke's _____
- 9 Maggie is Jessica's
- 10 James, Maggie, and Alf are Damon's

2 Complete the table.

	MALE	FEMALE
	father	mother
1	brother	
2	husband	
3	nephew	
4	relative	
5	son	

	MALE	FEMALE
6	brother-in-law	
7	grandfather	
8	grandson	b
9	cousin	***************************************
10	parent	(many page 150 150 150 150 150 150 150 150 150 150
11	uncle	



Test yourself. Cover the male words in Exercise 2. Look at the female words. Say the male words.

4 ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and brother, sister, uncle, etc.

B Family history 60

My parents got married 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother, Luke, was born. Then I was born a year after that. I've also got a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me. so there are five of us in my family. Luke's got a girlfriend. Sue, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with our mum and dad. We spend a lot of time together.



spotlight How old are you?

Damon is 22 (years old). NOT He has 22 (years). His brother is older than him. He's 23. His sister is younger than him. She's 20. Alf's the oldest in the family. Karen's the youngest in the family.

Use the practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

Glossary

get married become husband and wife (get divorced stop being husband and wife) be born start your life have got have there are five of us NOT we are five girlfriend/boyfriend see picture below mum INF mother dad INF father spend time with someone be with someone and do things with them together with each other



5	True	or	false?	Write	T	or	F.
---	------	----	--------	-------	---	----	----

- ▶ Damon is Luke's older brother. _____ 1 Damon's parents are divorced.
- 2 Damon was born after Luke.
- 3 Luke is younger than Karen.
- 4 Luke and Sue live together.
- 5 Luke's mum has two sons.
- 6 Damon is Sue's boyfriend.
- 7 There are four in Damon's family.
 - 8 Karen is the youngest in the family.
 - 9 Damon and Karen are often together.

6 Write the words in correct sentences.

- his/divorced/are/parents His parents are divorced.
- born / I / 1989 / in / was _____
- 2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a ______
- 3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is ______
- 4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us _____
- 5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am _____
- brother / younger / 've got / sister / an / older / and / a / I _____

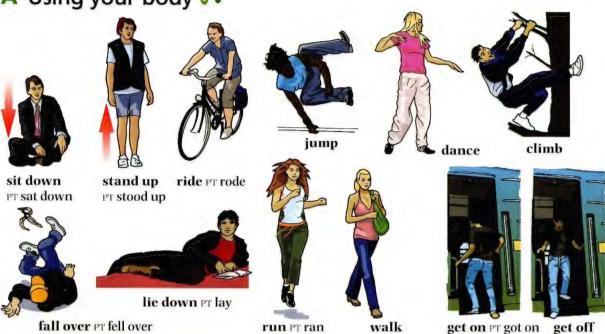
ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Do you all live together?

- 1 How many people are there in your family? 2 When were you born? ___
- 3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you?
- 4 In your family, who do you spend a lot of time with?

11 I can describe physical actions

A Using your body 60



spotlight Irregular verbs

The verbs **sit**, **stand**, **run**, **fall**, **ride**, **lie** and **get** are irregular. The past simple of these verbs is not formed by adding **ed**. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 202.

1	Write the	present form	of the verbs.
---	-----------	--------------	---------------

	walked walk	3	rode	6	got on
1	lay down	4	climbed	7	ran
2	fell over	5	sat down	8	stood up

2 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6-9.

	1 sat	down at my desk and worked for two hours.	
		up when the teacher comes into the class	room.
2	I often	to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on fo	ot.
3	I want to	Mount Kilimanjaro next year.	
4	Do you often	when you go to nightclubs?	
5	The doctor asked me	to down on the bed.	
6	The boys	into the swimming pool.	
7	She	her bike to school this morning.	
8	I was late, so I	to the bus stop, but Iover.	
9	She	off the bus went into the station and	a train

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.

B Using your hands 60



4	Make	words	from	the	letters.
	MINIAKE	words	HOIII	uie	letters.

-	ivge give	7	kipc pu
1	rrcay		kabre
2	nurt fof	9	dloh
3	tpu wond	10	uphs
4	seloc	11	thsu .
5	thuco	12	pnoe
6	pord		

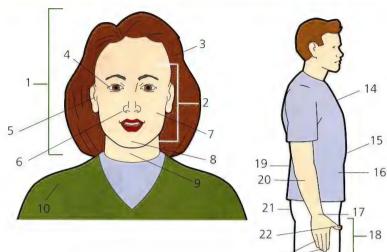
5 Can you do these things with one hand or do you need two? Write 1 or 2.

	shut a dictionary	4	pull your hair touch your hair
	give someone five dictionaries 2	5	turn off a radio hold a radio
1	touch a bicycle push a bicycle	6	drop a ruler break a ruler
2	pick up a TVturn on a TV	7	carry a door close a door
3	break a bottle open a bottle	8	nick up a haby hold a haby

Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.

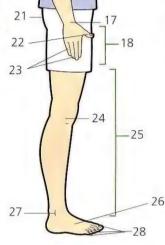
12 I can name parts of the body 6.

- 1 head
- 2 face
- 3 hair
- 4 eve
- 5 ear
- 6 nose 7 cheek
- 8 chin
- 9 neck
- 10 shoulder



- 11 mouth
- 12 lip
- 13 tooth (plural teeth)





- 14 chest
- 15 stomach
- 16 waist
- 17 wrist
- 18 hand 19 back
- 20 arm
- 21 bottom
- 22 thumb
- 23 fingers
- 24 knee 25 leg
- 26 foot
 - (plural feet)
- 27 ankle 28 toes



True or false? Write T or F.

I've got two ...

- eves ____
- ▶ necks F
- 2 lips _____
- 3 ears _____
- 4 waists _____
- 1 noses

- 5 knees ____
- 6 shoulders _____
- 7 backs _____ thumbs _____ 8
 - hands _____ 9
- wrists ____ 10
- 11 ankles _____
- 12 heads _____ 13 arms
- 14 mouths ____

- Which one is different? Circle it.
 - ▶ finger thumb (waist) hand
 - 1 foot wrist toe ankle
 - 2 arm hand wrist stomach
 - 3 neck ears nose lips

- 4 cheeks finger chin hair
- 5 mouth teeth lips shoulder
- 6 eyes legs knees ankle
- 7 shoulder chest neck bottom

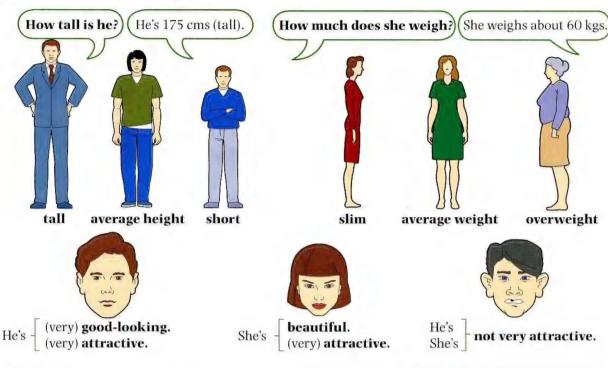
- Complete the words.
 - ▶ hair
 - 1 c__n
 - 2 s____h
 - 3 c____t

- 4 t___h
- 5 b__k
- 6 f__e 7 n ____ e
- 8 b____m
- 9 wa ___ t

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the parts of the body.

13 I can describe people

A General description 60



1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you are *overweight*, you aren't *slim*. ______
- 1 Average height means not tall and not short. ____
- 2 Attractive and good-looking mean the same. _____
- 3 You can say a man is good-looking or beautiful.
- 4 If someone is fat, they are overweight.
- 5 The answer to 'How much does he weigh?' is '200 cms'.
- 6 'How tall are you?' is correct.
- 7 It is polite to call someone fat and ugly.
- 8 Thin and slim mean the same, but thin is more positive.

spotlight thin, fat, ugly

- Thin means slim, but slim is more positive.
- It isn't polite to tell someone they are fat. It is more polite to say they are overweight.
- The opposite of beautiful/ good-looking is ugly, but it isn't polite to tell someone they're ugly.

Complete the dialogues. Don't use the words in italics in your answer.

- Is he attractive? ~ Yes, he's <u>good-looking</u>

 1. She's not tall or short, really ... No, she's average.
- 1 She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average ______.

 2 Are the two brothers attractive? ~ Yes, they're both _______
- 3 Is she guite thin? ~ Yes, she's very ______.
- 5 Is he overweight? ~ Yes, he's a bit ______.
- 6 Is she very attractive? ~ Yes, she's _____
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

B Hair and eyes 👀

	How long?	What colour?	What kind?	
	short	blonde	straight	
	modium langth	light brown		
She's got	medium-length	dark brown	curly	hair
	long	grey	wavy	
	lung Service S		o wavy	
		brown eyes		
		green eyes		
He's got		blue eyes (5)		
	a beard	a moustache	2)	

- 4 Cross out the adjective you don't need.
 - ► She's got long, dark brown, black hair. (or She's got long, dark brown, black hair.)
 - 1 I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
 - 2 Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
 - 3 My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
 - 4 My brother's got short, grey, black hair and a moustache.
 - 5 My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.
- 6 Complete the questions. (You will write your answers in Exercise 6.)

		AROUI AOO
	Is your hair brown? Is it dark brown or light brown?	No, it's blonde.
1	Is your hair long, ml, or s?	
2	What colour is it: bl, bl, br, or g?	
3	Is your hair st, w, or c?	ALLEGO STATE OF THE STATE OF TH
	Have you got a b or a m ?	
5	Have you got br eyes?	

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5. Then, if possible, tell another person about yourself.

I've got long, dark hair and...

C How old are they? 60

Age	Word/phrase	
→ 18 months; before they can walk	a baby	
$2 \rightarrow 10 \text{ or } 11$	a child plural children	
13 → about 17	a teenager or a young person plural young people	
18→	an adult	
about 45 → 60	a middle-aged person	
65→	an elderly man or woman (more polite than old)	

spotlight		Other phrases for age	
in	his her	teens (13 → about 17)	
in	my his her	early twenties $(20 \rightarrow 23)$ mid-thirties $(34 \rightarrow 36)$ late fifties $(57 \rightarrow 59)$	

- Match 1 8 with a i.
 - ▶ me (45) __d
 - 1 my wife (38) _____
 - 2 my son (6 months) _____
 - 3 my daughter (7) _____
 - 4 my brother (47)
 - 5 my nephew (14) _____
 - 6 my aunt (63) _____
 - 7 my father (79) _____
 - 8 my niece (21) _____

- a elderly
- b in her late thirties
- c a teenager
- d in my mid-forties 🗸
- e a baby
- f in her early sixties
 - g an adult
 - h middle-aged
 - i a child
- 8 ABOUT YOU Write the names of people in your family, or tell another student.
 - ▶ a baby Marcus (my sister's son) 4 an elderly woman
 - 1 a young person _____
 - 2 a middle-aged person
 - 3 someone in his/her twenties _____
- 5 an elderly man
- 6 a baby _____
 - 7 someone in his/her fifties ____
- Test yourself. Cover column two of the table. Look at the 'age' column and say the words and phrases.
- f m Read the police description. Which man are the police looking for, X or Y?

The man we are looking for is in his mid-thirties. He is slim, with dark brown curly hair and a moustache. If you see him, please ring the police on 0088 997 4422.



Write a description of the other man. Use the text above to help you.

The other man is

I can talk about character

A What's he/she like? 6.

Word	Example	Meaning	
friendly	The students in my class are all really friendly ; it's great.	happy to meet and talk to other people OPP unfriendly	
kind	He visited me a lot in hospital, which was really kind .	warm, friendly and always wanting to help other people	
nice	I met Colin on holiday and he's a really nice guy.	kind and friendly (a very important word in spoken English) syn pleasant opp horrible	
fun	I love Karen; she's great fun .	something or someone that makes you happy	
funny	John makes me laugh – he's just a really funny man.	making you laugh	
relaxed	My parents are very relaxed : they don't get angry if I'm late.	calm	
clever	Tom is very clever – the best student in our class.	able to learn and understand very quickly syn intelligent opp stupid	
quiet	She's quiet, but she can be funny.	someone who is quiet doesn't say very much	
serious	I like our teacher but she's very serious.	someone who is serious thinks a lot and doesn't laugh very much	

61	Complete	the	words
	complete	uie	words.

-	f <u>u</u> n	4 ne	
1	f y	5 dr	
2	q t	6 f	_)
2	rlyd	7 la h	

spotlight What's ... like?

We use this question to find out more about someone or something.

What's Jack like? ~ He's very nice. NOT He's like very nice.

What was the film like? ~ Great!

Answer the questions.

What's... ▶ a synonym for nice? pleasant 1 the opposite of friendly? 2 a synonym for clever? 3 the opposite of nice? ___ 4 the opposite of clever? ___

What do you call someone who...

- likes meeting and talking to people? <u>friendly</u>
- makes you laugh?
- 6 thinks a lot and doesn't laugh a lot? _____
- 7 is usually calm?
- always wants to help others?

Complete the conversations.

1	What's Alex <u>like</u> ? ~ He's nice, but he's very He doesn't laugh much.
	What ; I like her very
	much. But her father doesn't like people very much – he's really
3	was your grandmother like? ~ She was very – she always helped
	everyone. And she was too. She went to university.

B We like each other 60

each other



Gemma: "I met Sophie at university. I was on my own, and she came up and talked to me; she's like that. What's interesting is that we're complete opposites. She's very happy to meet new people, but I'm really shy; she's very sociable, I'm quiet; she's sporty, and I'm not. But it wasn't important. We became friends and shared a flat for two years. I'm very organized and did most of the housework. Sophie's not very tidy, and she can be lazy around the house. But she's a great cook and a really nice person."

3 usually tidy or untidy? ...

Glossary

on my own alone or without other people be complete opposites be very different shy If you're shy, you can't talk easily to people you don't know.

sociable friendly and liking to talk to people sporty liking sport and good at it

share a flat live in the same flat as another person

organized An organized person plans things well.

tidy A tidy person likes everything to be in the right place. OPP untidy

lazy A lazy person doesn't like working. opp hardworking

spotlight really

6 a very organized person?___

Really is important in spoken English. It means 'very' and you can use it before most adjectives.

I'm in a **really** nice class. She was **really** horrible to me.

		nd and write four more examples of real	•		
		really <u>kind</u>	othe sittetis site	Annual desirability and the second se	***************************************
	Re	ead the text again. Are these statements Sophie likes sport. $-$	tru	e or false? Write T or F.	
	1	Gemma was alone when she met Sophie		Listen to the CD-ROM a	ind
	2	Gemma and Sophie are very different.	****	do the exercises.	.,,,
d	3	Sophie likes meeting new people.			
	4	They lived together at university.			
	5	Gemma's sociable.			
	6	Sophie's very unfriendly.			
	7	Sophie's untidy			
	8	Gemma doesn't plan things			
	Al	BOUT YOU Write your answers or ask an	othe	er student.	
,	W	hat are you like? Are you			
	1	sporty or not sporty?	4	lazy or hardworking?	
	2	a very relaxed person?		quiet or very sociable?	

15 I can describe relationships

A Romantic relationships 60

Max is my **partner**, and we have a very good **relationship**. We've been together for about two years. I started to **go out with** him after I came to London. We met at my **ex-boyfriend**'s house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to **get to know** each other. Now Max wants us to **get married** and **have a baby**, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married **couples** who have **split up** and are now **divorced**. I don't want that to happen to us.



Glossary

partner someone you have a romantic relationship with (your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband)
be together be in a romantic relationship
go out with someone have a romantic relationship with someone
ex-boyfriend a person who was your boyfriend in the past
(also ex-girlfriend, ex-wife, ex-husband)
get to know someone learn about and become friends with someone
get married become husband and wife
have a baby become a new mother/father
couple two people, often in a romantic relationship
split up stop having a romantic relationship

spotlight relationship

You have a **relationship** with someone. It can be good or bad.

I have a good **relationship** with my flatmate.

He has a difficult **relationship** with his father.

We often talk about romantic relationships with wives, boyfriends, etc.

Write the words in correct sentence	1	Write the	words in	correct	sentences.
-------------------------------------	---	-----------	----------	---------	------------

divorced married in the past but not now

	get/to/they/married/want They want to get married.	97003
1	baby / last / had / a / year / they	
2	split up / January / they / in	
3	have / good / a / very / relationship / we	20100
4	you / how / her / get to know / did / ?	
5	three / together / for / they / years / were	*****
6	with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out	

2 Complete the sentences.

	They nave a very good relationship.
1	When did they a baby?
2	My boyfriend and I have been for two months.
3	I know Phil and Sue very well. They're a lovely
4	She went with him last year, but they split in January.
5	Sonia is his girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
6	My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're My father has a new
	, but I don't think they're going to married.

B Friends 6



WHY WE LIKE

each other

Sophie: "I get on very well with Gemma - she's great. I don't know why, because we're completely different. We first met at university. and then we became flatmates. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I ask for advice - and she always gives me good advice. We don't see each other very often now, because we live in different parts of the country, but I've known her for a long time, and she will always be my closest friend."

Glossary

get on (well) with someone have a good relationship with someone

meet PT met see and speak to someone for the first time

become flatmates start to be flatmates (also become friends)

flatmate person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship

advice an opinion or information that you give to help someone with a problem (You give advice or you give someone advice.)

see someone talk to or visit someone know someone be friends with someone or have met them

closest friend most important friend (also best friend)

spotlight each other

Pam and Mike really loved each other. (Pam loved Mike, and Mike loved Pam.) The two girls never listen to each other. (A doesn't listen to B, and B doesn't listen to A.)

Are the sentences the same or different? Write 5 or D.

	We met last year.	I have known her for a year.	S
1	We live near each other.	We are flatmates.	
2	We don't get on very well.	We have a very good relationship.	
3	I see her every Saturday.	I meet her every Saturday.	
4	She's my best friend.	She's my closest friend.	
5	We became friends.	We stopped being friends.	
6	She gives me advice.	She helps me with my problems.	

4	ABOUT YOU	Write your	answers or	ask	another	student
	ABOUT TOU	write your	aliswers of	ask	anomer	Stude

1	Who is your closest friend?
7	University of the second secon

- How long have you known him/her? 3 Where did you meet? _
- 4 How did you get to know him/her?
- 5 How often do you see each other?
- 6 Why do you get on well with him/her?

16 I can say how I feel

A Physical feelings 6.

Word/phrase	Example	Meaning
What's the matter?	What's the matter? ~ Nothing.	What's the problem?
be/feel tired	I feel tired . I'm going to bed.	want to rest or sleep
be/feel hungry	I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?	want something to eat
be/feel thirsty	I'm thirsty. Can I have a juice?	want something to drink
be/feel boiling	I'm boiling. Can we open a window?	very, very hot
be/feel freezing	Where's my coat? I'm freezing.	very, very cold
be/feel nervous	Did you feel nervous before the exam? ~ Yes, I did, but it was OK.	
be/feel ill	He felt ill after the meal. I think he had too much to eat.	
not be/feel well	He doesn't feel well , so I told him to go to bed.	

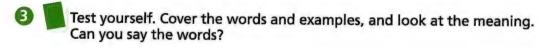
1	How	do	you	feel?	Write	your	answers.
---	-----	----	-----	-------	-------	------	----------

You're outside. It's -10 degrees.	I'm freezing.

- 1 It's the end of a working day.
- 2 It's minutes before an important exam.
- 3 You've had nothing to drink for hours. _____
- 4 You've had nothing to eat for hours.
- 5 You're working. It's 35 degrees.
- 6 Your body temperature is 39.5 degrees.

Complete the dialogues.

- When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry ?
- 1 What's the ______ ? ~ I _____ ill.
- 2 Are you ______? ~ Yes, I'm going to bed.
- 3 What's the ______ ? ~ I'm _____ . I need a coat.
- 4 It's very hot in here. ~ Yes, I know. I'm ______.
- 5 Is it your driving test tomorrow? ~ Yes, and I'm feeling a bit _____
- _____ the matter? ~ I don't feel _____.



B Emotions 6



1 He's happy.



2 She's sad. SYN unhappy



3 He's excited.



4 She's worried.



5 He's angry.



She's frightened. SYN scared



7 He's embarrassed. 8 She's surprised.





9 He's in love.



10 She's **upset**.

spotlight get



Get can mean 'become' or 'start to be'. My wife gets worried if I'm late. The children **got** very **excited** at the party.

Complete the words.

- ▶ ha ₽₽₽
- 1 ang__
- 2 wor____
- 3 up____
- 4 sca ____
- sur _ _ _ _ 5
- fri ______
- 7 unh _____
- 8 emb_____
- 9 ex_____

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I was <u>sad</u> when I heard that her mother was very ill.
- 1 The teacher got ______ because the children were running round the classroom.
- 2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was very happy but also very ______.
- 3 I got very ______ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.
- 4 My brothers get very _____ when they're watching football on TV.
- 5 I made a stupid mistake and everyone laughed. I felt very ______.
- 6 My sister and Joe are getting married. My parents are _______ because they like him.
- 7 I was very _____ when my boyfriend found a new girlfriend.
- 8 My aunt never travels by plane. She's _____ of flying.
- 9 They met on holiday. I think they're in _____.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

Review: People

Unit 8

Complete the dialogue using information in the notes to help you.

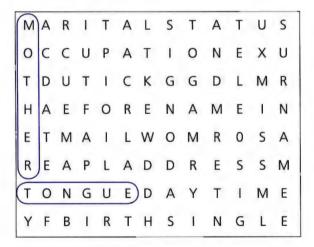
	Helena Costa	
	Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63	
	São Paulo	
	05065 – 002	
	Brazil	
	Art teacher	
	Married; one son, Marco, 7	
Α	Hello there. Now, what's your family name?	
В	Costa.	
Α	Right, and your first (1)	_?
В	Helena.	
Α	OK, Helena, and where do (2)	
	from?	

Α	Oh, where in Brazil (4)?
В	São Paulo.
Α	Right, and could (5)
	your address?
В	It's Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63, São Paulo
Α	And the (6)?
В	It's 05065-002.
Α	And what do you (7)?
В	I(8) an art teacher.
Α	Oh, really? And (9)
	married?
В	Yes, I am. And I've got a son.
Α	Oh, (10)
	is he?
В	He's seven.

Unit 9

B I'm (3)

Find 11 more words, phrases, or short words from the unit. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across ->.



Unit 10

1 Find 13 more family words in the wordsquare.

Α	G	0	R	E	L	Α		1	V	E	S
G	S	J	0	G	Y	W	E	S	G	T	1
K	1	D	Α	U	G	Н	T	E	R	D	0
0	S	Y	M	E	F	0	T	N	Α	U	M
Α	T	В	X	Н	U	S	В	A	N	D	1
U	E	R	1	C	U	N	L	1	D	Q	(5)
Ν	R	В	R	0	T	Η	E	R	F	U	0
T	1	P	W	U	Ν	C	L	E	Α	1	N
L	N	0	1	S	T	1	C	A	T	M	Ŭ
0	L	W	F	1	S		E	P	H	E	W
P	Α	R	E	N	T	S	J	0	E	T	1
R	W	U	Ν	l	E	C	E	E	R	F	Α

2	Correct one mistake in each sentence.	
	► He's eighteen years. He's eighteen.	ATTENDROPHENISM CONTROL OF CER has SERVICESHAME
	1 My brother has eighteen years old	and the state of t
	2 I born in 1990	and the first of the second se
	3 My sister is younger that me	The state of the s
	4 His parents are divorce.	
	5 There are five of we in my family.	
	6 She is more old than her brother.	
	7 We spend together a lot of time	
	8 Who is the youngest of the family?	
	nit 11	
1	Complete the table with the verbs in the b	
	push ✓ walk pick something up s drop turn something off run ride	
	Using your hands	Using your feet or legs
	push	3,
	Push	
2	Circle the correct word.	
	You get on a bus/a house.	6 You can hold a bag/a classroom.
1	You can open a door/a light.	7 You can break some juice/a pencil.
	You can touch a park/a wall.	8 You can climb a tree/a bus.
	You can turn on a radio/a watch.	9 You can close a TV/a book.
	You can pick up a car/a bicycle.	
		10 You can sit down on a bed/the sea.
5	You can ride a car/a bicycle.	
1 1	nit 12	
U	nit 12	
1	Above or below the waist? Write A (above) or B (below).
	5	der 8 knee 11 bottom
	head A 3 foot 6 chin	
		10 nose 13 mouth
1	ears / leg	10 nose 13 mouth
2	Write another part of the body which is b	etween the other two. Look at the example.
		fingers 6 eyes mouth
1	handshoulder 4 ankle	
	chest head 5 back	
_	J Dack	P. D. S. Chan. II annual L. Y.

Unit 13

1 Write about the people.



E		I AND
She's tall, slim and attracti	ve. She's got medium-length, dark b	orown hair. She's a teenager.
2		
3		
Put the words in order from y	oung (1) to old (9).	
in your early thirties	a baby 1	a child
a teenager	in your mid-twenties	in your early sixties
middle-aged	elderly	in your late thirties

Unit 14

2

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

Positive	Negative	Positive or negative	funny stupid
friendly	unfriendly		quiet clever friendly horrible kind untidy sociable organized serious unfriendly

		serious unfriendly 🗸
2	Complete the dialogues.	
	She's nice. ~ Yes, very <u>pleasant</u> .	
1	She doesn't do any work. ~ No, she's very	
2	Does she meet new people easily? ~ No, she's very	
3	Did you live in the same place? ~ Yes, we a f	at.
4	I really like being with her. ~ Yes, she's great	
5	She's clever, isn't she? ~ Yes, very	
6	Were you with other people? ~ No, I was	
7	She makes me laugh. ~ I know, she's very	
8	She plans everything. ~ Yes, she's very	

Unit 15

1 Circle the correct word.

Lucy met/knew John at a disco when she was just twenty. She (1) got/went out with him for a year. Then suddenly, one weekend, he took her to Paris where they got (2) marry/married. They have a very good (3) relation/relationship, and they (4) get/go on well with each other's family, too. Last year, they (5) got/had a baby girl called Paula. They've been (6) together/each other for eight years now. I don't think they will ever split (7) off/up, or (8) get/go divorced, because they are a very happy (9) couple/two.

2 Complete the questions with a verb from the box.

you good advice? flatmates? n well with your sister? in divorced?
 1 W

Unit 16

1 Correct the spelling mistakes

correct the spenning mistakes.	
He's frightend. frightened	6 I feel tierd.

- 1 Why are they exited? 7 She's scard of dogs. 2 I'm hangry. ______ 8 Is he nervos? 3 She was very suprised. 9 What's the mater?
- 4 I think he was embarassed. 10 She's thursty. I'm very worrid.

2 Are these feelings positive or negative? Write P or N.

- ► She's very sad. N 6 My brother's in love. My daughter's excited about the dog. 7 He's scared of her. 2 She's really unhappy at the moment. 8 I was very upset about it. 3 He was embarrassed about it. 9 I felt nervous before I met him.
- 4 I don't feel well. 10 They're all happy. 5 It's freezing in this room.

17 I can describe my routine

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday) 60



I usually get up at 7.00.





I get dressed.



I have breakfast.



I usually leave home at 8.00.



I get to work at 8.30.



I finish work at 5.00.



I have dinner at 8.15.



I go to bed at 11.30.



I sleep seven hours a night.

spotlight usually and normally

AROUT YOU

I usually/normally go to work by bus means that I go to work by bus most days.

Match the verbs in column 1 with words in columns 2 and 3. Write the sentences.

	1	2	3	
	I get up ✓	work	before breakfast	I get up at 7.30 a.m.
1	l get	at 🗸	at 11 o'clock	
2	I have	seven hours	7.30 a.m. 🗸	
3	I leave	dressed	at 6 p.m.	
4	I finish	home	with my family	
5	I have	dinner	a night	
6	l go	breakfast	at 8.00 a.m	
7	I sleep	to bed	at 8.30 a.m.	

Complete the questions with the correct verb. (You will write your answers in Exercise 3.)

		ADOUT TOO
	What time do you usually get up in the morning?	I get up at 7.30.
1	Do you dressed before or after breakfast?	w
2	Do you a shower in the morning?	
3	What time do you home in the morning?	
4	What time do you to school/university/work?	######################################
5	Who do you dinner with?	
6	What time do you normally to bed?	

- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the sentences. Say the phrases.

B Weekends (Saturday and Sunday) 6.

What do you do at the weekend?

During the week I usually stay in after school. I often study in the evenings, watch TV, listen to music, or just talk to my family. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or go and see a film. At the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning I usually go shopping with a friend, or I go to the gym, and sometimes I study in the afternoon. I go out with my boyfriend in the evening. On Sundays, I get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis.

Glossary

at the weekend on Saturday and Sunday
during the week from Monday to Friday
stay in stay at home
once a week one time in every week
twice a week two times in every week
come round come to my home
go out leave home to go to a bar, cinema, restaurant, etc.
go shopping go to the shops to buy clothes, CDs, etc.
(When you do the shopping you buy food.)

go to the gym

late after the usual time opp early
go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself
play tennis

5 Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

the	shopping	go	for	a
do	week _A	or	once	walk
during -	the	twice	a	week
stay	tennis	go	shopping	at
in	play	go	gym	the
come	round	to	the	weekend

6 Complete the sentences.

	1 go to a restaurant once	or twice a week.	
1	Do you want to	shopping?	
2	Come	to my flat after work.	
3	I can't	tennis this weekend.	
4	Do you want to go	on Saturday?	
5	the v	veek I usually stay	
6	I'm really tired today beca	ause I went to bed	last night.
7	What are you doing	the weekend?	
8	I go to the	twice a week because I like	to exercise.
9	I often	the shopping very	, at 8.00 in the morning.
		a film on Sunday.	

C Frequency words 60

100%					0%
always	often	sometimes	occasionally	hardly ever	never
These adverbs go before the main		spotlight ev	ery and all		
verb (e.g. get up), auxiliary verb (e can or be).	.g. do, does, have,		y day means 'he goe ursday, Friday, Satu		Tuesday,

He works every day means 'he works from Monday to Sunday'.

He works all day means 'he works from 9.00 a.m. to 6.00 p.m.'

I always get up late on Sundays. Do you often go out in the evening? We occasionally go for a walk. I'm hardly ever ill.

Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

•	I always go shopping on Saturdays.	I go shopping every Saturday.	S
1	I sometimes work at home.	I often work at home.	
2	She's hardly ever late for work.	She's rarely late for work.	
3	We often finish classes early.	We finish classes early every day.	
4	I never eat meat.	I occasionally eat meat.	
5	She always has a shower in the morning.	She has a shower every morning.	
6	In August we play tennis every day.	In August we play tennis all day.	

Write the sentences using a word from the box.

	every day	always	often √	hardly ever	all day	occasionally	never
•	Hiro goes t	o restauran	ts two or thr	ee times a week	Hiro oft	en goes to rest	aurants.
1							
2							
3		-	-			***************************************	
4			-				***************************************
5							* 100 to 50 0000000000000000000000000000000
6				_			
_	_			often play ten			
1	I always h	ave a showe	er before bre	akfast	change is the est o so successful the contract of the contract	***************************************	
2	l often go	out on Frid	ay evening			***************************************	
3	I never list	en to music	in the evenir	ng	***************************************	THE SHIP SHIP SHIP IS LOOKED COMMON TO SHIP SHIP SHIP SHIP SHIP SHIP SHIP SHIP	
4	I rarely stu	dy on Sund	lay	HOM AND MANAGEMENT OF THE PARTY	secures see sey + . In characteristics	100/000/00000	
5	sometime	es watch T\	at the week	cend		N 30 11111111111111111111111111111111111	y A Au
6	l never wo	rk in the ev	ening.	00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-	44 400 ********************************	PP	
7	I usually g	o shopping	on Monday.		07777077070000000000000000000000000000		
8	occasiona	ally go to th	ne gym after	dinner.			

I can talk about clothes

A Clothes 6



- 2 top
- 3 jumper SYN sweater
- 4 trousers
- 5 ieans
- 6 skirt
- 7 dress
- 8 T-shirt
- 9 iacket
- 10 suit
- 11 coat
- 12 raincoat



Complete the words.

- 1 i---t
- 2 t____s
- 3 i____r
- $c_{-}t$

- 5 r____t
- T-___t
- d___s
- j___5
- s____r

spotlight wear

I often wear jeans. She isn't wearing a skirt today. I wore a blue shirt yesterday.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Colours 6























dark blue



pale blue OR light blue

Look at the clothes above. True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ red trousers __F
- 1 a pale blue shirt _____
- 2 dark blue jeans _____
- 4 grey trousers _____
- 5 a black suit _____
- 6 a brown jacket _____
- 7 a pale yellow top _____ a light blue coat ______ 8 a pink raincoat _____
- 9 a blue skirt _____
- an orange and white T-shirt 10
- 11 a purple dress
- 12 a cream jumper _____



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the colours.



One word in each group is wrong. Cross it out.

trousers	tramers	jeans
trainers	boots	gloves
scarf	umbrella	tie
jeans	socks	shoes
sandals	glasses	hat
glove	watch	hat
scarf	belt	jeans
	scarf jeans sandals glove	trainers boots scarf umbrella jeans socks sandals glasses glove watch

spotlight Plural nouns

Trousers, jeans, tights, clothes and **(sun)glasses** are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

These **trousers are** very nice. NOT This trouser isvery nice.

My jeans were cheap.

6	Make	the	sentences	sinau	lar	if	possible.
---	------	-----	-----------	-------	-----	----	-----------

- Are these your boots? Is this your boot?
- ► Her glasses are nice. Not possible.
- 1 Give me the socks. . . _____
- 2 Where are my tights? _____
- 3 I've got two pairs of sandals.
- 4 Do you like my new trousers?
- 5 She's wearing my scarves.
- 6 Where are my gloves? _____
- 7 The jeans cost €20.
- 8 I don't like these sunglasses.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 What are you wearing today? _____
- 2 What clothes do you wear at the weekend? ______
- 3 Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?
- 4 Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?
- 5 How often do you wear: a hat? a scarf? a watch?

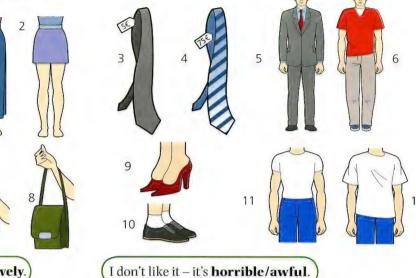


Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

19 I can buy clothes Do Unit 18 first

A Describing clothes 60

- 1 long
- 2 short
- 3 cheap
- 4 expensive
- 5 smart
- 6 casual
- 7 small/little
- 8 large/big
- 9 uncomfortable
- 10 comfortable
- tight 11
- 12 loose



I like it – it's really **nice/lovely**.

Look at the pictures and describe the clothes.

acheap	A! -
a Cheup	tie

- 2 c_____shoes
- 3 a s_____ handbag
- c_____ clothes

- 5 a L______ T-shirt
- 7 s______ clothes

Circle the correct word.

- My handbag is very large/small, so I put lots in it.
- 1 I like these trainers, but they're very comfortable/uncomfortable.
- 2 I've got some really nice/horrible boots. I wear them a lot.
- 3 At the weekend, I usually wear casual/smart clothes.
- 4 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear cheap/expensive clothes.
- 5 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a small/large T-shirt.
- 6 You need your long/short coat today; it's really cold.
- If you are going to the gym, it's better to wear tight/loose clothes.
- 8 That suit is awful/lovely you must buy it.

Write the opposite of the underlined word.

- You need a large belt. small
- 1 She's wearing a long coat.
- 2 Are those boots comfortable?
- 4 Was the belt very cheap? 5 She doesn't want tight trousers.
- 6 Does this look nice?
- 3 We can wear smart clothes.



Test yourself. Cover the words and say the adjectives and clothes in the pictures.

B Talking about size 60

Questions	Answers	Problems with size
What size are you? What size do you take?	I'm a (size) 12. I take size 40. small/medium/large	It's They're It doesn't They don't It's They don't
		It's too long.
	customer	They're too big.
shop assistant		

5	Complet	e the	sente	nces.
---	---------	-------	-------	-------

- 1 What ► <u>size</u> are you? ~ I'm ______14.
- 2 Is she small, _____, or large?
- 3 I'm sorry, this shirt is the _____ size.
- 4 Does this jumper ______?
 ~ No, it's ______ tight for me.
- 5 What size do you _____? ~ Small.
- 6 I like the trousers but they don't _____; they're _____ long.

spotlight too and very

There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.

Her coat is **very** long. (It's OK.)

Her coat is **too** long. (It's not OK.)

These trousers are **very** tight, but I'm going to buy them.

These boots are **too** tight; I can't wear them.

6 Look at the pictures. What's the problem?



The jacket's too short.



1



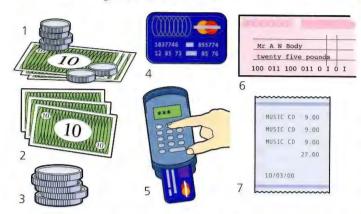


3



	iii a shop ••	
A sl	shop assistant (SA) and a customer (C) are talking.	Glossary
SA C SA C	Do you need any help? Yes, I'm looking for a smart, black skirt. What size do you take?	Do you need any help? also Can I help you? I'm looking for = I want try something on to see
C SA	Yes, sure. The changing room is over there.	if the size is right changing room a place where you try something on That looks (really nice) = I think it's
C SA	Oh, no, it's too tight. Here's a size 14.	(really nice) on you pay give money for something cash desk the place where you pay
SA C	That looks really nice. Thanks. Yes, it's fine. I think I'll take it. Where do I pay?	credit card e.g. Visa, American Express
SA		spotlight I'll take it/I'll leave it
SA C SA	By credit card.	When you decide to buy something in a shop, you say 'I'll take it/them'. NOT I take it/I buy it. If you decide not to buy something, you say '(No), I'll leave it/them, thanks'.
	Write the words in correct sentences. help / can / l / you / ? Can I help you? l / where / pay / do / ? thanks / no / l'll / it / leave changing / where's / excuse me / the / room / ? dress / can / on / this / try / l / ? pair / l'm / of / looking / trousers / for / a help / you / need / do / any / ?	
8	Write the final word in each sentence.	
	1 Can I try these ? 6 Do you 2 Pay at the cash 7 Oh, th	e me. Where's the changing ? u need any ? at looks You must buy it. vould you like to ?
9	,	
	Do you like shopping for clothes?How often do you buy clothes?What was the last thing you bought?	
•	 Do you always know what you're looking for? Do you always try clothes on? How do you usually pay? 	

A Money in shops 6



You are in a shop and decide to buy three CDs. They **cost** €9 **each**, which is €27 **altogether**. You can pay **in cash**¹ (**notes**² and **coins**³): for example, you give the shop assistant €30, and he gives you €3 **change**. You can also pay by **credit card**⁴. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to **enter**⁵ (or **put in**) your **PIN**. You can also pay by **debit card** or **cheque**⁶. At the end, he gives you your CDs and a **receipt**⁷.

Glossary

cost PT cost How much does it cost?

= How much is it?

€9 each = €9 for one

€27 altogether = €27 for everything change the money you get back if you give the assistant more than something cost debit card. If you use a debit card, the money comes out of your bank account (where you put money in and take it out).

PIN = Personal Identification Number (also PIN number)

spotlight Money

C I'll have six, please, and a melon.

D Thank you. That's €4.30 (6)

C I'm sorry, I've only got a €50

D That's OK. I've got lots of (8)

€5.30 five euros thirty or five thirty
NOT five euros and thirty
£10.99 ten pounds ninety-nine
OR ten ninety-nine
a ten pound/euro note NOT a ten pounds/
euros note

	Can I pay for cheque? Can I pay by ch	negue?
1	The dictionary cost me eight euros and f	-
2	Could you put your PIN, please?	THE STATE OF THE S
3	She paid for the dress of cash.	The state of the s
4	I've only got a 50 pounds note.	
5	They're €6 for each.	20° 11 Marie
6	Have you got a bank count?	The state of the s
7	Three books. That's €42 together.	
8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 me		stant £5 and she gave me £1.80 money.
Co	omplete the dialogues.	
Α	I'd like this watch, please.	C Hi. How much do these peaches
B	Fine. How would you like to pay?	(4)?
_		. /

A Thank you.

Thanks. Could you (1) ___

your (2) _____, please?...

Thank you. Here's your watch and your

B Money in adverts 60



Pay your gas bill online and save 5%.



Earn £30 an hour in your own home. Ring 0990 557731.

Play the Lottery and win €1,000,000!

- Circle the correct answer.
 - I bought this table online free.
 - 1 What's the price/bill of these shoes?
 - 2 I don't spend/pay a lot on food.
 - 3 I bought ten bottles and earned/saved €3.
 - 4 I won/earned £100 in the lottery.

Glossary

sell PT sold give something to someone who pays you money for it opp buy pt bought price the money you have to pay for something (If something is half price, you pay 50%.)

spend money on something PT spent pay money for something

free If something is free, you don't pay for it. bill a piece of paper which shows how much you need to pay

online on the internet

save If you save 5% on a bill, you pay 95% of the bill.

fare the money you pay to go by plane. train, etc.

earn get money for the work you do lottery game where you buy tickets and can win money

win PT won get money etc. in a game

- 5 How much was the train bill/fare?
- 6 Doctors win/earn a lot of money.
- I bought/sold my old car and got a new one.
- 8 She paid the restaurant bill/receipt.
- Test yourself. Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.
 - pay paid

6 save

buy _____ 4 earn _____

spend ______ 5 win _____

Complete the questions with a word from the box. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

fares online price earn spend / free

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

► How much do you spend on food every week? I spend about £20. Do you ever shop _____? 2 Is your phone _____ expensive? 3 Is water _____ in restaurants? 4 What's the _____ of a litre of milk?

Are train _____ cheap? Do women _____ more than men?

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 or ask another student.

21 I can talk about the weather

A What's the weather like? 6

	Adjectives	Verbs	Nouns
- <u>*</u>	It's sunny.	The sun's shining.	sun/sunshine
4	It's cloudy.		cloud
<u> </u>	It's wet.	It's raining.	rain u
	It's windy.	The wind's blowing.	wind
***************************************	It's icy.		ice u
*	It's foggy.		fog u
		It's snowing.	snow t

Match 1 − 9 with a − j.

9 What's

It's d a of cloud today. 1 It ____ b it foggy outside? 2 The wind _____ c isn't raining. 3 It isn't d cold this morning. < 4 The sun e snow on the roads. 5 ls f rain a lot here. 6 There's a bit _____ g the weather like? 7 There's a lot of _____ h very windy. 8 It doesn't _____ blew my hat off.

spotlight a lot (of)/a bit (of)

a lot of/a bit of + noun We had a lot of rain. There's a bit of fog.

verb + a lot/a bit It snowed a lot. It's raining a bit.

a bit + adjective
It's a bit foggy today.
It was a bit windy.

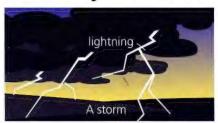
Rewrite the sentences using the correct word.

	There was a lot of ice.	It was very icy.	
1	It isn't raining.	There's no	
2	Is the sun shining?	ls it ?	
3	We often have snow.	It often	
4	She doesn't like fog.	She doesn't like weather.	
5	It was very windy on Friday.	There was a lot of on Friday.	
6	There are no clouds	It icn't	

is shining.

Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and look at the pictures. What's the weather like?

B Wet and dry weather 6.



In my country, the weather in spring is very **changeable**. It can be **pleasant** and **dry**, but we often have **showers**. It can get **hot** in the summer for two or three months. and in the cities it is often humid, especially before a storm. It's cooler on the coast, where there is usually a sea **breeze**. In autumn, we get some **heavy rain**, perhaps with thunder and lightning. In winter, it can be dry, sunny and **freezing**, or grey and **damp**.

Glossary

changeable changing a lot pleasant nice dry OPP wet shower a short period of rain hot opp cold humid warm, wet and uncomfortable storm see picture breeze a light, pleasant wind cool not hot or warm, but pleasant heavy rain a lot of rain thunder the loud noise of a storm lightning see picture freezing very, very cold damp cold and a bit wet

Circle the correct word.

- ► Humid weather is very pleasant uncomfortable
- 1 There was a bit of sunshine between the showers/lightning.
- 2 Do you like watching the lightning/thunder when it's stormy?
- The air in the Sahara Desert is dry/humid, and it's very hot/cool at midday.
- 4 Showers usually last a few hours/minutes.
- In cold, wet weather, your clothes feel damp/humid.
- 6 By the sea you get a nice breeze/wind.

5	Rewrite t	he sentences	using the	words in	brackets.
	MENNITE C	The Sellicelices	using the	WOLGS III	DI ackets.

- It's wet outside. (rain) It's raining outside.
- 1 It rained a lot last night. (heavy) There was _____
- 2 It was warm and damp yesterday. (humid) It ______
- 3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. (shower) There _____
- 4 The weather changes a lot. (changeable) The weather _____
- 5 It isn't wet today. (dry) It _____
- 6 We had heavy rain and thunder. (storm) We had ._____

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Make the sentences true for your country.

- ► We often have storms in July. We never have storms in July.
- 1 We have a lot of showers in the spring.
- 2 In winter it's always freezing at night.
- 3 The weather is always the same in the summer.
- 4 We sometimes have heavy rain for 24 hours.
- 5 It often snows in the winter.
- 6 Our winters are usually dry.
- 7 We often have thunder and lightning.
- 8 It is usually hot and dry in summer.

A Common problems 6.





flu

a temperature





backache

a pain in my leg also my leg hurts

I feel sick

Circle the correct answer.

- I'm(I've got)a temperature.
- 1 My back pain/hurts.
- 2 I feel/'ve got a cold.
- 3 He doesn't feel/be well.
- 4 I feel/'ve got toothache.
- 5 Do you feel/be sick?
- 6 My knee feels/hurts.

- 7 He's got flu/a flu?
- 8 Is/Has she got a temperature?
- 9 I hurt/'ve got a pain in my eye.
- 10 Is/Has she got a temperature?
- 11 She is/'s got a sore throat.
- 12 I don't feel/haven't got a cough.

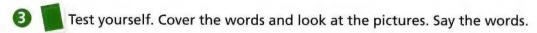
spotlight be ill/sick

Ill means 'not well'. Rafa's not here today; he's ill. Be sick usually means to bring up food from your stomach (also vomit). If you feel sick, you think

you are going to be sick.

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I had to stand up for ten hours; now I've got backache
- 1 She has always smoked a lot, and now she's got a bad ...
- 3 I walked 20 kilometres today, and my feet.
- 4 What's the ? You look terrible. ~ I don't feel
- 6 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels
- 7 I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got



B What should I do? 60



Glossary

go and see go to, visit GP (General Practitioner) family doctor chemist's shop where you get medicine (also pharmacy) lie down



for a while for a short time stay in bed go to bed and not get up for a day or two for a short time (not more than three days)

spotlight should + verb

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. Should is used for giving advice.

I feel terrible. ~ You **should** go to bed. You **shouldn't** go to work today.

There are more practice exercises on the CD-ROM.

- Cross out one word you don't need in each sentence.
 - I don't feel me very well.
 - 1 You should to go to the chemist's.
 - 2 Go and lie you down for a while.
 - 3 Go and see your GP doctor.
 - 4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.
- 5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
- 6 You should go and to see your doctor.
- 7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
- 8 Lie down for the a while.
- Write some advice to people using should and the word in brackets.
 - ► I've got a cold. (chemist's) You should go to the chemist's.
 - 1 I've got backache. (lie)

 - 2 My ear hurts. (pharmacy)
 - 3 I've got a sore throat, a cough and a temperature. (stay)
 - 4 I feel sick. (while)
 - 5 I've got flu. (GP) _____

23 I can get help at the chemist's 60 Do Unit 22 first

In a chemist's shop, a chemist (Ch) is talking to a customer (C).

- Ch Can I help you?
- Yes, I cut1 my finger yesterday, and it really hurts.
- Ch You need some antiseptic cream² for it.
- Right. Could I have some plasters3 and some cotton wool4, please?
- Ch Yes, of course. That's €5.60, please.
- Ch Yes?
- C Er, I **need something for** a cold.
- Ch Right, well, try these tablets5 they're very good.
- C OK, and how often do I take them?
- Ch Take two tablets every four hours with water.
- C Thanks. And I'd like a box of tissues6, please, and some cough medicine7.



Glossary

need If you need something, it's necessary or important for you to have it.

antiseptic You put antiseptic cream on a cut to clean it. try use something (e.g. a tablet, medicine) to see if it helps

take a tablet eat a tablet (also take medicine)

spotlight Asking for things in a chemist's

You can ask for something for a problem or an illness in a chemist's. Could I have something for a headache, (please)? means 'please give me some medicine because I've got a headache.' I need something for a cold.

1	Correct the	spelling.	Be careful:	one	is correct.
---	-------------	-----------	-------------	-----	-------------

- ► chimist <u>chemist</u> 3 something 6 farmacist _____ 1 coton wool _____

 - 4 anteseptic 7 creme ----
- 2 tissus _____
- 5 plastres _____ 8 medicin _____

Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.

for toothache, please help you a sore throat some plasters, please take these tablets wool this medicine – it's very good cream tablet three times a day for your finger a box of ✓

Customer

- ► I'd like <u>a box of</u> tissues, please.
- 1 Have you got something for ______? 7 Try ______.
- 2 How often do I _____?
- 3 I need something _____.
- 4 I need some cotton ______. 5 Could I have _____?

Chemist

- 6 You need some plasters _____.

- 9 Do you need antiseptic ?
- 10 Can I?



Test yourself. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and say the words.

Review: Everyday life



Unit 17

1		Put the preposition in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.				
		We often go on Saturday night. (out) We often go out on Saturday night.				
	1 We sometimes go a walk after lunch. (for)					
	2	Do you usually play tennis the weekend? (at)	\$14335×200×403			
	3	I usually go the gym, and then I go home. (to)				
	4	She listens music on her MP3 player when she go	oes	es shopping. (to)		
	5	On Sundays I often stay and watch TV. (in)	colorada prima di			
	6	I talk my parents every evening. (to)				
	7	My sister occasionally comes and we have dinner	r to	together. (round)		
	8	What time do you get work in the morning? (to)				
2	Co	omplete Jana's daily routine below using ph	ras	ases a – k.		
	a	the shopping	g	g to bed at midnight		
	b	breakfast together	h	h home		
	C	up at 6.30 a.m ✓	i	i before breakfast		
	d	to work at about 9.30	j	a shower		
	e a shave k dinner together					
f work at 6.00 p.m. and go home						
		ly husband, Marco, and I have the same routine eve	-			
	(1)), and Marco alway	s ha	has a shower and (3) We have		
	(4)	l), then Marco and I leave (5) I go to	o th	the town centre and do (6) on		
	my	y way to work. I get (7) I finish (8)	We	Ve have (9), and I go (10)		
1	In	nit 18				
	, , ,	110				
1	Co	omplete the sentences with words from the	bo	oox.		
		tie watch hat socks T-shirt belt ju	ump	<mark>mper tights sandals ✓ gloves boo</mark>	ots	
	>	You wear them on your feet in summersandals	5			
	1			You wear it round your neck		
	2			You wear it over a shirt.		
	3					
		-		You wear them over your legs and feet	***************************************	
		•		You can wear it under a shirt.		
	5	You wear it on your wrist 10	Y	You wear it round your waist		

2 Label the colours.

1		
2	Manufacture and the second	
3		
4	6-MANAGEMAN STREET	

			-1
6	On the state of th	***************************************	
7	AN NO MANAGEMENT AND ADDRESS OF THE PROPERTY O		
8	Marries (State Control of Control	3)	
9	OUTSPANISON STATEMENT STAT		
40			

3 Write a, some or a pair of.

<u>a</u>	hat
some	jumpers
a pair of	gloves

2	\$356.00mm0100000000000000000000000000000000	jeans
3	***************************************	ties
4		trousers

6	 jacket
7	trainers
2	candalo

5 shirts

Unit 19

1 Complete the puzzle. Answer 1 – 16. Follow the arrows.

►U						T			
N						10 M			
С	2 L	3 C		7 P				14 A	
0							13 C		16 N
M									
F			6C	8 H					
0	1T				9 C				
R	E	45				11 H			
T	L		5 T				12 W		15 L
A ,	B								

	Opposite	of	comfortable.
--	----------	----	--------------

- OK, I'll _____ it.
- 2 Opposite of tight.
- 3 Opposite of expensive.
- 4 What _____ are you? ~ I'm a 14.
- 5 Can I ______ it on?
- 6 The _____room is over there.
- 7 I'd like to _____ in cash.
- Synonym for awful.

- 9 The place where you pay in a shop is the _
- 10 Small, _____ or large?
- 11 Can I _____ you?
- 12 It's the _____ size. It's too small.
- 13 Opposite of smart.
- 14 A person who works in a shop is a shop ___
- 15 No, thanks, I'll _____ it. It's too expensive.
- 16 Do you _____ any help?

2 C	omplete the conversation	between the shop assistant (SA) and the cu	stomer (C).
SA	Hello, do you need any ▶ he	<u> </u>	
C	Yes, I'm (1)		
SA	Right. What size do you (2)	?	
C	Oh, size 10, I think.		
SA	OK, well, how about these?		
C			?
SA	The changing (5)	is over there.	
Late			
SA	Hmm, they (6)	•	
C		small. Can I try on a (8)	12, please?
Late			
C		_! I'll take (10) Where do I (1	1)
SA	At the (12)	desk.	
Hr	nit 20		
OI	111 20		
1 Ti	rue or false? Write T or F.		
-	You pay a receipt. F		
1	You can pay for things by ch	eque or bill	
2	You can use a credit card to	pay for things you buy online	
3	If you pay in cash, you use no	otes and coins.	
4	If you buy three things for €	60 altogether, they cost €180 each	
5	If you use a credit card in a s	hop, they usually ask you to enter a PIN	
6	If you win a car, you don't ha	ave to pay for it. It's free	
2 C	omplete the text.		
La	ast year, I ▶ won €10,000	on the I(1). I was so excited! The first d	ay, I went out and
		(3) a new one. It only c(4) €30	
	•	(6) another 5% because I p(7)	, ,
		some money. He doesn't e(9) very much	
		(11) for him, and then I gave him the plane f irlfriend. And I've still got some money in the bank	
20	that he could go and see his g	illinend. And I ve still got some money in the bank	
H	nit 21		
UI	IIL Z I		
1 V	rite a lot, a lot of, a bit, or	a bit of.	
-	It rained a lot	yesterday – I couldn't go out.	
1	lt's wet		
2	There was	fog this morning. I couldn't see where I was dr	iving.
3	It snows	in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centing	metres a day.
4		rain, but it's not much. You don't need your umbr	ella.
5	It snowed	_ last night – only two centimetres.	
6	We had	sun yesterday - from morning to evening. It was	lovely.

2 Complete the crossword.



Across

- 2 The wind _____ more in autumn.
- 5 Noun from icy.
- 8 Warm and damp weather feels _____
- 9 You need good _____ for skiing.
- 11 Very cold.
- 12 It rained a lot we had _____ rain.
- 13 Opposite of wet.

Down

- 1 We had a _____ of rain.
- 3 Heavy rain with black clouds and wind.
- 4 Adjective from wind.
- 6 Rain for a short time.
- 7 The noise you hear in storms.
- 10 The sun _____ more in summer.
- 11 Adjective from fog.

Unit 22

Find the illness words in the square. Write them in 1-9.

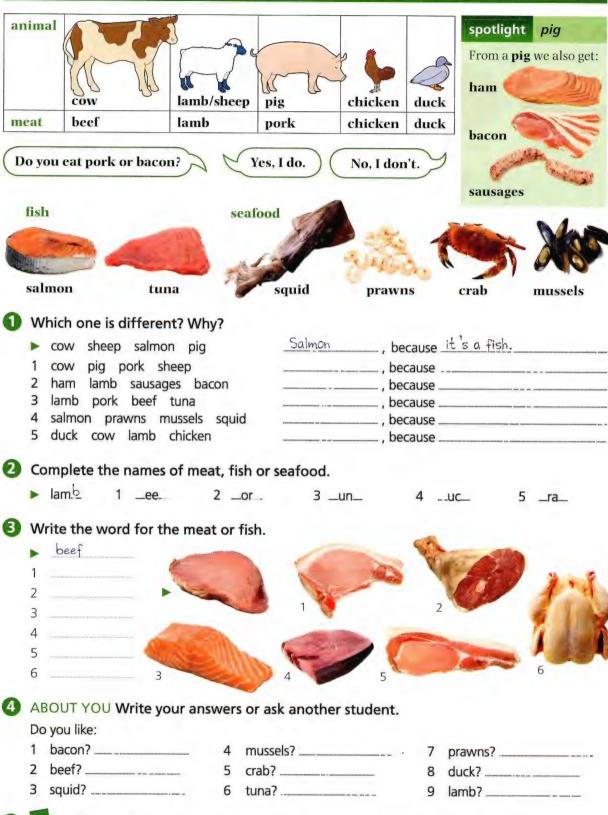
Т	M	X	E	Α	R	Z	Н	0	S
В	A	C	K	A	(C)	H	E A	J	0
Q	S	0	1	D	0	Υ	Α	M	R
R	1	F	L	U	L	Y	D	Z	E
U	C	J	Α	H	(D)	E	Α	K	T
1	K	W	E	S	В	1	C		Н
T	0	0	T	H	Α	C	Н	E	R
Α	S	V	E	C	E	G	E	L	0
F	H	U	R	T		D	E	M	Α
R	S	K	E	٧	W	E	L	L	T

Unit 23

Complete the conversation between the Chemist (Ch) and customer (C).

- Ch Good morning, can I ▶ help you?
- C I need (1) ______ for a sore throat.
- Ch Right. (2) _____ these (3) _____ they're excellent.
- C OK, how (4) _____ do I (5) ____ them?
- Ch (6) _____ one now, and then every two hours.
- C OK, and (7) _____ I have a (8) _____ of tissues, and some cough (9) _____ please?
- Ch Yes, of course.

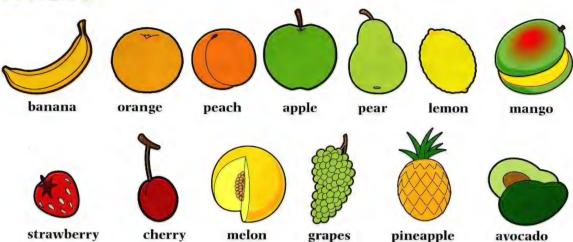
24 I can name meat and fish 6



Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.

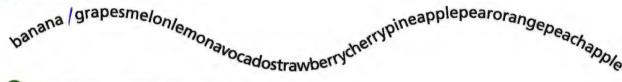
25 I can name fruit and vegetables

A Fruit 6



Word	Example	Meaning		
taste	This juice tastes of orange and lemon.	= it's like orange and lemon when you drink it		
sweet	Strawberries are very sweet .	tasting of sugar		
bitter	Lemons are very bitter .	OPP sweet		
fresh	I eat a lot of fresh fruit.	not old and not from a tin		

Find the end of each word.

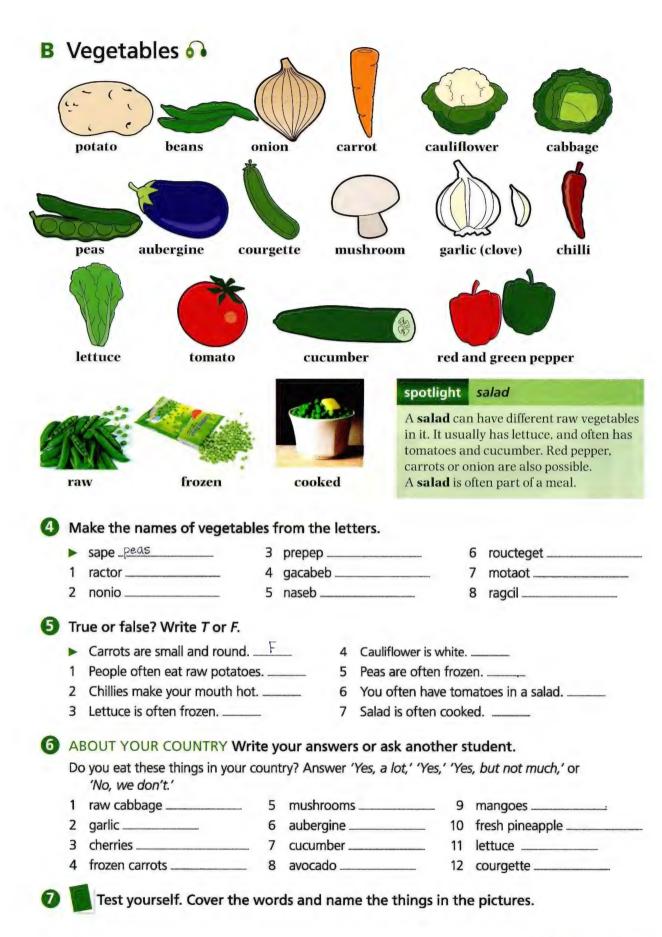


- Answer the questions.
 - ► Are strawberries red or green? <u>red</u> 5 Are grapes big or small? ___
 - 1 Are peaches sweet or bitter?
 - 2 Are lemons sweet or bitter?
 - 3 Are cherries red or green?
 - 4 Are avocados red or green?
- 6 Is fresh fruit good or bad?
- 7 Do mangoes taste sweet or bitter?
- 8 Are melons big or small? ___

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

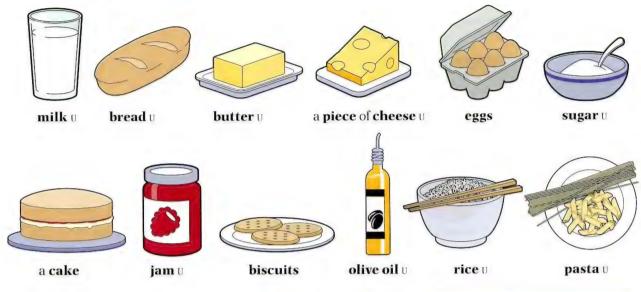
Use the cover card to test yourself.

Write down new words in a notebook.



26 I can buy food in a shop

A Food 6







noodles



spotlight

Uncountable nouns

The nouns with a U are usually uncountable: butter or some butter NOT a butter/butters
This bread is nice. NOT These breads are nice.
We can make uncountable nouns countable: a piece of cheese a bar of chocolate

 $\mathbf{0}$ Tick (\checkmark) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong.

a bar of chocolate U

- some oil ✓
 a milk X milk/some milk
 biscuits
 a piece of cheese
 a butter
 cakes
 a cheese

- 2 Complete the words.
 - br e a d
 1 mi ___
 2 some ch ____
- 4 bis ______
 5 some olive ____
 6 six e ____
- 8 ri ___ 9 a large bar of ch ______ 10 noo _____

3 sug __

- 7 but ____
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

B Containers and quantities 6.





a carton of juice

a **packet** of rice and a packet of biscuits



a jar of jam and a jar of olives









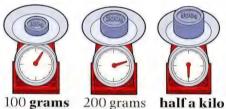
spotlight

a tin of tomatoes

a can of soda

a bottle of wine

a box of chocolates and a box of matches



100g









a litre

a kilo 1 kg 500 ml

11

there is food inside, and we say can when there is something to drink inside.

We usually say tin when

tin and can

A tin of tuna. A can of beer.

Study the pictures for 30 seconds. Cover the pictures. True or false? Write T or F.

- ► There's a jar of jam.
- 1 There's a box of chocolates.
- 2 There's a bottle of water.
- 3 There's a packet of sugar. ____
- 4 There's a can of cola.
- 5 There's a jar of coffee. ____

- 6 There's a box of matches.
- 7 There's a carton of milk.
- 8 There's a jar of olives.
- 9 There's a tin of peas. ...___
- 10 There's a packet of rice.

Complete the phrases with a suitable word.

- ► Can you buy a packet of rice at the shops, please?
- 1 I bought my sister a lovely _____ of chocolates.
- 2 Can I have a ______ of strawberry jam, please?
- 3 We need a of olive oil.
- 4 There's a _____ of orange juice in the fridge.
- 5 For four people, we'll need a _____ of chicken.
- 6 Can I open this of chocolate biscuits?
- 7 I'd like 200 _____ of ham, please.
- 8 I think there's a _____ of noodles in the cupboard.
- 9 He drinks half a _____ of milk for breakfast.
- 10 I went out and bought a _____ of wine.



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

C Buying food 60



Shop assistant (SA)

Customer (C)

- Could I have a kilo of onions, please?
- SA Right.
- C And have you got any peaches?
- SA Yes. How many would you like?
- C I'd like four, please. Are they ripe?
- SA Yes, they're lovely. Anything else?
- No, that's all, thanks.



- C I'd like some cheese, please.
- SA Sure. What would you like?
- C Oh, that Brie looks nice.
- SA Yes, it is. How much would you like?
- C About 200 grams.
- SA Right. This piece is just over.
- C That's fine.
- SA OK. Anything else?
- No, that's it, thanks.

Complete the dialogues.

- A Yes?
 - B I'd like six pears, please.
- 1 A Have you _____ any apples?
- B Yes. How ____ would you like?
- 2 A I'd like some ham, please.
 - B How _____?
 - A Oh, about 200 grams.
 - B Of course. Anything _____?
 - A No, it, thanks.
- 3 A ______ I have half a kilo of onions?
 - B Sure. That's _____ under half.
 - A Yeah, that's fine.
- 4 A I'd _____ a melon, but these don't look ______.
 - B No, they need two or three more days.
 - A OK.

Glossary

Could I have ...? This is another polite way to say 'I want'.

Have you got any ...? = Do you have any ...? ripe If something is ripe, you can eat it now. that's it or that's all = I don't want any more things.

I'd like = I would like (This is a polite way to say 'I want'.)

just over a little more than OPP just under Anything else? = Do you want any more things?

how much and how many spotlight

We use how much with uncountable nouns and how many with countable nouns:

How much butter do you want? How many apples do we need?

Make sentences from the words.

- ▶ it/that's/thanks That 's it, thanks.
- 1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I / ? _______
- 2 please / some / like / I'd / sugar ______
- 3 got / ham / you / any / have / ? _____
- 4 much / would / cheese / how / like / you / ? ______
- 6 oranges / many / like / would / how / you / ? ______

27 I can order in a café 6 Do Unit 26 first

- 1 (white) coffee
 2 black coffee
 3 cappuccino
 4 espresso
 5 tea (with milk)
 6 bet charelete
- 6 hot chocolate 7 orange juice
- 8 baguette
- 9 sandwich (white bread)
- 10 sandwich (brown bread)
- 11 toasted sandwich
- 12 roll

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C) in a café.

- W Yes, please?
- C I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.
- W Is that to eat here or take away?
- C To eat here.
- W OK. Anything else?
- C Yes, two coffees, please, and a cappuccino.
- W OK. The food will be a couple of minutes. Have a seat.

Glossary

I'd like = I would like. (a polite way to say 'I want') take away eat in another place (not in the café) two coffees two cups of coffee (also two teas, etc.) a couple of minutes two or three minutes have a seat sit down

spotlight Yes, please? and Yes, please.

Yes, please? = 'What would you like?'
Yes, please is a polite way to say 'yes'.

- Find the end of each word.
 - 1 You can have a rollbaguettesandwichtoastedsandwich.
 - 2 You can have a cappuccinoteaorangejuiceespressoblackcoffee.
- 2 Complete the phrases.
 - ▶ a ham sandwich
 4 black
 8 black or _____ coffee?

 1 brown ______
 5 eat here or _______
 9 ______ a seat, please.

 2 a toasted _______
 6 a _______ of minutes

 3 hot _______
 7 brown or _______ bread?
- Add one word to each line of the conversation.

W	Please?		Yes, please?
C	I like two coffees please.	1	,
W	To drink here or away?	2	numerous de la company de la c
C	To drink here. And a toasted ham.	3	MI IS NOT IN CONTROL IN THE SEA SEASON WHEN HE IS NOT THE OF THE SEA SEA SEASON IN SEA SE EXPERIMENTAL REPORTS TO A SEASON OF THE SEASON OF TH

W OK. It will be a couple minutes. 4
Have seat, please. 5

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

A The table 6



- 1 glass of red wine
- 4 oil

- 7 napkin
- 11 knife

- 2 salt and (black) pepper
- 5 vinegar
- 8 bowl
- 12 spoon

- 3 bottle of mineral water
- 6 glass of white wine
- 9 plate 10 fork
- Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a $k^n = if$ e, (1) f = k, and (2) s = n, and a (3) n = n for their hands and face. They each have a white (4) p $_$ e and a (5) b $_$ l. To drink, there's a (6) b _ _ _ _ e of (7) m _ _ _ _ I w _ _ _ r , and two (8) g _ _ _ _ s of (9) w _ _ e: one (10) r $_$ d and the other (11) w $_$ $_$ e. There is also some (12) s $_$ $_$ t and (13) b $_$ $_$ $_$ k p $_$ $_$ $_$ r, and little (14) b _ _ _ _ s of (15) o _ l and (16) v _ _ _ r.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about 1 – 12 in the picture and complete the sentences.

On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have

We don't usually have __

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

B What shall we have? 6



boiled rice



fried eggs



grilled fish



roast chicken



Steak can be:

well done

MENU

Starters

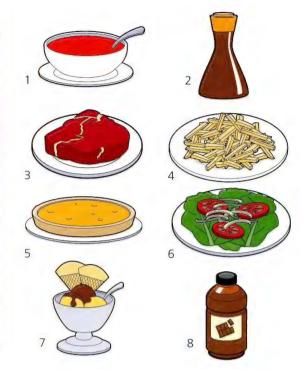
Tomato soup1 Grilled prawns in soy sauce 2 Mussels in white wine and garlic

Main courses

Pan fried tuna with green beans Fillet steak3 with chips4 and mushrooms Roast duck with cabbage and peas Grilled chicken with boiled potatoes Cheese tart5 with mixed salad6

Desserts

Apple tart Ice cream7 with chocolate sauce8



True or false? Write T or F.

- You eat the starter after the main course.
- 1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork.
- 2 You eat the main course before dessert
- 3 Mixed salad can have lettuce and tomato in.
- 4 You eat soup and chips in the same bowl.
- 5 The list of food to eat is called a menu.
- 6 Dessert is the first thing you eat.
- 7 You can roast a chicken or a duck.
- 8 You can boil rice or potatoes.
- 9 Fillet steak comes from a pig.
- 10 You can have cheese tart or apple tart.

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.

Complete the sentences.

- 1 I love ice c_____ 2 Could I have fillet s ? 3 I'd like a mixed s______.
- ► I'd like roast chicken 5 What's your main c ?

 - 7 Do you like your steak well d_____?
- 8 I had chicken with b_____ rice. 4 My starter was tomato s_____

6 ABOUT YOU Look at the menu. Write your answers or ask another student.

Which starter would you like? Which main course would you like? Which dessert would you like?



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

C Customer and waiter 6

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C).

- W Are you ready to order?
- C Yes. I'll have the fillet steak.
- W And how would you like your steak?
- C Rare, please. And I'd like a glass of red wine, and some mineral water.
- W Still or sparkling?
- C Sparkling.
- W Fine.

Later in the meal ...

- C Could I have another glass of wine?
- W Yes, of course.
- C Oh, and some more water, please.
- W Certainly.
- W Would you like to see the dessert menu?
- C No thanks, but I'll have a coffee. And could I have the bill, please?
- W Yes, sure.

8 Circle the correct word.

- ► I like(I'd like)a coffee.
- 1 Could I have some more/another potatoes?
- 2 Are you ready order/to order?
- 3 Do you want another/some more bottle?
- 4 We had a delicious meal/food last night.
- 5 Yes, course/of course.
- 6 Could I have a/the bill, please?
- 7 I/I'll have the prawns, please.
- 8 Yes, certainly/certain.

Omplete the conversations.

Conversation 1

- W Are you ▶ ready to order?
- C Yes, I'll (1) ______ the steak.
- W And (2) _____ would you like it?
- C Rare, please. And a bottle of mineral water.
- W Yes, of (3) ______ . Still or (4) _____ ?
- C Still, please.

Conversation 2

- C Could I have (5) _____ more water, please?
- W Certainly. And would you like a (6) ______?
- C Yes, I (7) ______ have the ice cream. Then could I have the (8) ______?
- W Yes, (9) _____.



Glossary

Are you ready to order? = Do you know what you want to eat?

I'll have steak = I'd like steak. OR I want steak. How would you like your steak? = Would you

like your steak rare, medium or well done? still water water without gas

sparkling water water with gas

meal Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals.

of course/sure/certainly These phrases all mean

'Yes, no problem.'

the bill a piece of paper which shows the money you must pay for the meal

spotlight

another or some more

Say another (= one more) with countable nouns,

e.g. another glass/biscuit/apple.

Say some more with uncountable nouns,

e.g. some more water/wine/bread.

Review: Food and drink

Unit 24

Put the words in the correct column. Some words go in two columns.

chicken 🗸	sq	uid	crab	beef	duck	pig	tuna	mussels	pork	
sheep	lamb	salm	non	COW	prawns	ham				

Animal	Meat	Fish	Seafood	
chicken	chicken			

Unit 25

1 Write three examples of a fruit or vegetable for each colour.

red	yellow	orange	white/cream	green
red pepper	and the second of the second o	**************************************	Persentant and an accommission of the control of th	Ministrative and the second second section in the second s
	MARINA MA	Ground and a second sec	\$65.50.00 (\$2.50.00 (\$2.50.00 \$2.50 \$10.00 \$	* 1999 0600451-9-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1
######################################		12/12/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/11/1	SOCOOCOCCASEDAS SOCIO CONTRACTO CONT	00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-

2 Find four more adjectives, five fruits, and five vegetables in the word square.

Т	Α	Е	L	F	R	E	S	н)
M	U	S	H	R	0	0	M	C
Α	В	1	P	0	T	Α	T	0
N	E	R	1	P	E	M	В	0
G	R	Α	P	E	S	E	E	K
0	G	W	U	N	Α	L	A	E
T	1		L	E	M	0		D
0	N	1	0	N	Α	N	S	E
P	E	A	R	S	W	E	E	Т



Unit 26

1 Put these foods and drinks into the correct column below. Some words can go into more than one column.

sugar ✓ tomatoes	orange juice wine rice	matches wa milk olives	eter butter chocolates	olive oil p	asta jam eggs tuna
Packet	Carton	Вох	Bottle	Jar	Tin
sugar					

2 Complete six more phrases or sentences you say or hear in a shop. Use words from the circle. You can use the same word more than once.

	Yes, we have.
1	Could
2	l'd
3	Have
4	Anything
5	That's

like							
	any	ha	ve				
1	got	it	please				
SC	me	you	much				
S	ugar	else	we				
	thank	s w	ould				

Unit 27

6 How

Write the words in the correct order in the dialogue between a waiter (W) and a customer (C).

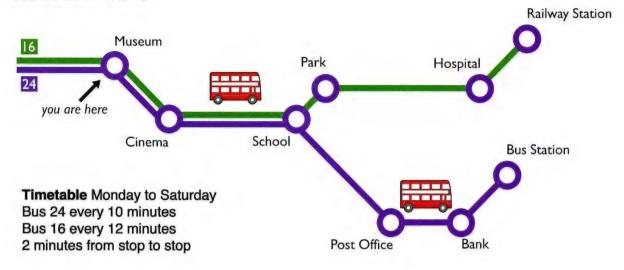
	W	please / yes /? Yes, please?
1	C	sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / I'd
2	W	that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / ?
		away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take
4	W	else / fine / anything / ?
		coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas
		be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple
		seat / a / have

Unit 28

1 C	omplete the sentences.	
-	Three meals in the day: breakfast, lunch and	dinner
1	Three things you eat with: knife,	, and
2	Three parts in a meal: starter,	, and
3	Three ways to cook food: grilled,	, and
4	Three ways to cook steak: rare,	, and
5	Two things you find on a restaurant table: salt	and
6	Two things you put on salad: oil and	притименти политичници
7	Two things people drink: red wine and	wine.
8	Two types of mineral water: still and	-
1	C Yes, I have the tomato soup.	
	W Right. And for your course?	
	C Fillet with chips.	
2	W Do you want red wine or wine?	
	C Red, please.	
	W OK. Is that a or just a glass?	
3	THE CITE OF CITE AMERICAN AND ADDRESS OF THE CITE OF T	
	C Could I have the, please?	
	W Yes, of	
	Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.	
	Test yourself, using the cover card.	

29 I can get around on buses 6.





Questions	Answers
Excuse me, which bus do I get to the park?	The 16.
Does the 24 go to the railway station?	No, it doesn't.
Does the 24 stop near the bank?	Yes, it does.
Does the 16 stop outside the park?	Yes, it does.
How often does the 16 run?	Every 12 minutes.
How many stops is it to the park?	Three.
Which is the last stop for the 24?	The bus station.
Where do I get off for the cinema?	At the next stop.
How long does it take to the bus station?	It takes about ten minutes.

Glossary

excuse me We say excuse me when we start talking to someone we don't know.

get a bus, train, etc. travel on a bus, train, etc. (also take) go travel

near



outside



run travel on a route (bus, train) every (12 minutes) e.g. at 1.00, 1.12, 1.24, etc. (bus) stop the place where you get on or off a bus last stop the bus stop at the end of the route get off leave the bus opp get on next stop the first stop after now

How long does it take? spotlight

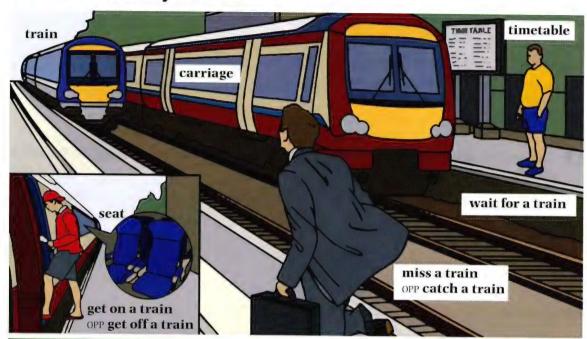
How long? = How much time? How long does it take (to get) to the station?

- ~ It takes about 10 minutes.
- ~ It doesn't take long. = It takes a short time.

U	VV	rite the words in the correct of	order to make questions.						
		near / bank / stop / does / the 24	4/the/? Does the 24 stop	p near the bank?					
	1								
	2								
	3								
	4								
	5								
	6	9							
	7								
	8								
2	yc	nswer the questions in Exercisou are at the museum.		ition on page 78. Remember,					
		Yes, it does	5	stop.					
	1		6						
	-		7	minutes.					
	2								
	3		ninutes. 8						
8	3								
3	3 4 Co Th (1)	omplete the text, using the because are two bus routes is the museum,	us map information on pag : the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2)	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the					
3	3 4 Co Th (1) (3)	omplete the text, using the businere are two bus routes is the museum,	us map information on pag : the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) so station, where everybody has t	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4)					
3	3 4 Co Th (1) (3)	omplete the text, using the because are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus the bus. The 16 sta	us map information on page: : the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has the arts at the museum too, but it (ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4) (5) to the					
⑤	3 4 Ccc Th (1) (3) raii bu	omplete the text, using the busere are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus the bus. The 16 statistical transfer is the filter than	us map information on page: : the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has the arts at the museum too, but it (2) tells you how often the but	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4)					
3	3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu fro	omplete the text, using the bestere are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus the bus. The 16 statistically station. The (6)	us map information on page: the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has the arts at the museum too, but it (2) tells you how often the but ten minutes. It (10)	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4) (5) to the uses (7) . The 24					
	3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu fro	omplete the text, using the between are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus the bus. The 16 statilway station. The (6) is (8) (9) om the school to the park.	us map information on page: the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has tearts at the museum too, but it (10) ten minutes. It (10) are or ask another student.	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4) (5) uses (7) two minutes to get					
	3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu fro	omplete the text, using the between are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus the bus. The 16 states way station. The (6) as (8) (9) om the school to the park. BOUT YOU Write your answer is there a bus stop near your hor	us map information on page: the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has the arts at the museum too, but it (10) tells you how often the butten minutes. It (10) ars or ask another student.	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4) (5) uses (7) two minutes to get					
	3 4 Cc Th (1) (3) raii bu frc	omplete the text, using the between are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus the bus. The 16 statement the bus. The 16 statement the	us map information on page: the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has tearts at the museum too, but it (10) ten minutes. It (10) ars or ask another student. use? If yes, where is it exactly?	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4) (5) to the uses (7) . The 24 two minutes to get					
	3 4 Co Th (1) (3) raii bu fro	momplete the text, using the because are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus. The 16 statement is the series of the bus. The 16 statement is the series of the series of the bus. The 16 statement is the series of the series of the series of the park. BOUT YOU Write your answer is there a bus stop near your how Which buses stop there? How often do they run?	us map information on page: the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has the arts at the museum too, but it (10) tells you how often the butten minutes. It (10) ars or ask another student. use? If yes, where is it exactly?	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4) (5) to the uses (7) The 24 two minutes to get					
	3 4 CCC Th (1) (3) raii bu frc	momplete the text, using the because are two bus routes is the museum, stop is the bus. The 16 statement is the series of the bus. The 16 statement is the series of the series of the bus. The 16 statement is the series of the series of the series of the park. BOUT YOU Write your answer is there a bus stop near your how Which buses stop there? How often do they run?	us map information on page: the 24 and the 16. For the and the (2) station, where everybody has the arts at the museum too, but it (10) tells you how often the butten minutes. It (10) ars or ask another student. use? If yes, where is it exactly?	ge 78. 24, the first top is the cinema; the to (4) (5) to the uses (7) . The 24 two minutes to get					

Practise the questions using the CD-ROM.

A Train vocabulary 60



Glossary

get/take a train travel by train the 12 o'clock train the train that leaves at 12.00 journey when you travel from A to B fare money you pay to travel a fast train OPP a slow train (railway) station a place where trains stop and people get on and off

spotlight

Last has different meanings:

- 1 final The last train leaves at 11.30 p.m. = There are no trains after 11.30 p.m.
- 2 most recent My last train journey was two weeks ago.

Answer the questions.

- ▶ What's another verb for get a train? take a train
- 1 What's the opposite of a fast train?
- 2 What's the opposite of get on the train?
- 3 What's the opposite of miss a train? ______
- 4 What's another way of saying the train that leaves at 7?
- 5 What do you sit on in a train?
- 6 Where do you catch a train?

2 Complete the sentences.

- ► We can get the 7.45 <u>train</u> 5 The _____ train is at 12.00p.m.
- 1 How much was the train _____?
- 2 Our seats are in the second 3 Sorry I'm late. I _____ the train to Zug.
- 4 We can _____ a train.

- 6 We _____ for the train in the café.
- Have a look at the I think there's a train to London at 6.15.
- It's a long _____ from Lisbon to Paris.

B Buying a ticket 60

It's now 9.30. A **passenger** (P) is talking to someone at the **ticket office** (O) at Bristol Station.

- P A single to Cardiff, please.
- O That's £10, please.
- P Right, and when's the next train?
- O There's one at 10.07.
- P Fine. Do I have to change?
- O No. it's direct.
- P That's good. And when does it get to Cardiff?
- 0 10.56.
- P OK. And which platform is it?
- O Platform 6.
- P Right, thanks.

Platform

Glossary

passenger a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, car, etc.

ticket office the place where you buy tickets in a station

single or single ticket a ticket for a journey from A to B (A return is a ticket for a journey from A to B, and from B back to A.)

next The next train is the first one after now.

change trains get off one train and get on another direct A journey is direct if you don't need to change

direct A journey is **direct** if you don't need to change trains.

get to arrive at or in orr leave

platform the part of the station where you get on and off the train

spotlight book something in advance

London Paddington

If you **book a seat (in advance)**, you buy a ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. In a hotel, you can **book a room (in advance)**, and in a restaurant you can **book a table**. You can also say **reserve a seat** or **room** or **table**.

Complete the questions using words from the box.

	direct	London	office	train	is it ✓		return	advance	seat	
•	Which pla	atform is it	Her Manuscha philis (Heronova cha s oce annucha sagu	7		4	When d	o we get to	***************************************	?
1	Can I boo	k in	Antonio di ciù ciù ciù ciù ciù ciù ciù ciù ciù ci	?		5	Where's	the ticket		?
2	Do you w	ant a single	or	######################################	?	6	When's	the next	MANAGEMENT	?
3	Is the trai	n	***************************************	?		7	Can I re	serve a	and the state of t	?

4 Look at the timetable and complete the text.

Cheltenham

2	8.35	≥ 9.089.18	≥ 10.40	
			isn't a ▶ <u>direct</u> Chelter	train, so I have
(3)	2, and it (4)		to Kemble at 9.08. Th	nen I have to catch the
			gton at 10.40. A (6) _ n (7)	

Kemble

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 3 What was the fare? ______
- 4 Did you book in advance?
- 5 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains?

31 I can ask for and give directions 6.

Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?

Excuse me. Do you know the way to the railway station?

Excuse me. Is there a hotel near here?

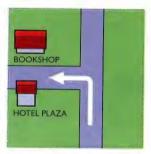
spotlight

Excuse me...

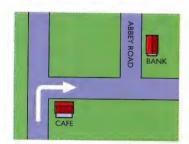
It is polite to say excuse me to someone you don't know when you ask them a question.



Go straight on. OR Just keep going. It's about ten minutes.

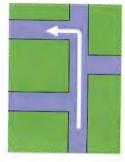


Go along here and turn left. The bookshop is **opposite** the Hotel Plaza.



Turn right at the café, then left into Abbey Road, and the bank is on your right.





Go along here and take the second turning on the left.



It's the third turning on the right. There's a cinema on the corner.



Thanks very much.

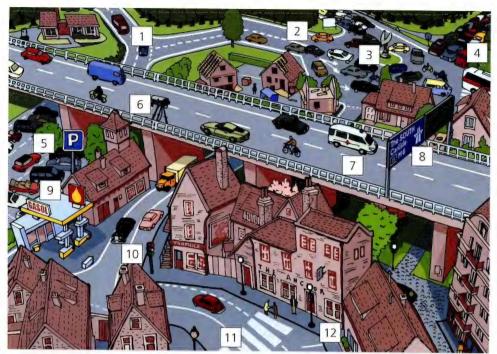
1	M	ake sentences from the words.							
	•	turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right.							
	1	excuse / I / get / do / bank / the / me / how/ to / ?							
	2	here / left / along / and / turn / go							
	3	bank / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here / ?							
	4	the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third							
	5	way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / bank / the / you / ?							
	6	left / Road / into / Foster / turn							
2	Co	omplete the phrases.							
	•	Turn left or right 5 Keep							
	1	Take the second 6 Go straight							
	2	Thanks very 7 Go along							
	3	On the 8 Do you know the							
	4	Excuse							
3	Co	omplete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.							
	1	A Excuse ► me . How do I (1)to							
		the cinema from here?							
		B OK. Go (2) on, and it's the second no, the							
		third (3) on the (4)							
		A Thanks very (5)							
		B You're welcome.							
	2	A (1) me. Is there a post office							
		(2) here?							
		B Yes. Go (3) here and (4)							
		the second (5) on the (6)							
		The post office is (7) the bank.							
		A (8) very much.							
		B That's OK. No problem.							
	3	A Excuse me. Do you know the (1) to the							
		Bonham Hotel?							
		B No, I'm sorry, I don't.							
		A OK. Thanks Excuse me. Do you know the Bonham Hotel?							
		C Yes. (2) left (3) Frith Street							
		and the hotel is on the next (4) on your							
		(5)							
		A Thanks very much.							
		B Not at all.							

Test yourself. Cover the words on page 82, and look at the maps. Can you remember the directions?

?

32 I can talk about roads and traffic

A In town 6



- 2 trafficu
- 5 car park
- 1 junction 4 traffic jam 7 main road
- 8 road sign 3 roundabout 6 speed camera 9 petrol station
- 10 traffic light(s)
- 11 pedestrian crossing
- 12 pavement

Circle the correct answer.

1 petrol station/jam

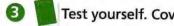
► traffic park(light) 3 speed light/camera

2 main sign/road

- 4 road camera/sign
 - 5 pedestrian crossing/park
- 6 car road/park
 - 7 traffic jam/crossing

Complete the sentences.

- ➤ You can go the traffic <u>light</u> is green.
- 1 Where's the nearest petrol _____?
- 2 We live on a noisy _____ road.
- 3 Can you read that road _____?
- 4 The car _____ was full, so we parked on the street.
- 6 Be careful! There are _____ cameras on the main road.
- 7 At the _____, do we go left, right or straight on?
- 8 The _____ is always bad between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m.
- 9 Walk on the, not in the road!
- 10 Drive slowly and turn left at the next ______.



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Out of town 6

Beth (B) and Marco (M) are talking.

- How far is it from London to Bath?
- It's about 115 miles. That's 185 kilometres. B
- M And what's the best way to get there?
- Right. Take the M4 motorway from London. At junction 18, take the A46. It's ten miles from there.
- M Thanks. And what's the speed limit on motorways here?
- B 70 miles an hour. That's about 110 kilometres an hour.
- OK. And are they very busy? M
- Yes, and you get traffic jams in the rush hour B - especially when there's an accident.
- But you still use the motorway? M
- Yes, because there are three lanes on most motorways in Britain, so it's easy to overtake. Oh, and Marco - remember to drive on the left!

Glossary

How far is it? = How many kilometres or miles is it? take the M4 go on to and travel on the M4 motorway a large, fast road between towns speed limit the fastest speed you are permitted to go busy A busy road has a lot of cars on it. opp quiet rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work

accident lane

overtake pass another car by going faster drive go somewhere in your car

4		Cover the glossary. Write the words for the mea	anings.
	•	The part of the road where cars travel, with white lines.	lane
	1	A large, fast road between two towns.	ALIAN MARKATANAN MARKATANANAN MARKATANAN MAR
	2	The busy time when people go to work.	
	3	Pass another car by driving faster.	
	4	The fastest speed you are permitted to go.	
	5	When something bad happens, e.g. cars crash.	
	6	The opposite of a busy road	
5	Co	omplete the sentences.	
	•	You can take a country road, but the motorway	is quicker.
	1	It's a very road in the rush hour.	
	2	Go into the fast when you	other cars on the motorway.
	3	How is it from Paris to Marseille? ~	It's 740 kms.
	4	The best way to get to the airport is to	the M25. Oh, remember to
		on the left!	
6	Al	BOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask	another student.
	1	How many lanes do motorways have?	
	2	What's the speed limit on motorways?	
	3	Do you have speed cameras on roads?	
	4	Do you drive on the left in your country?	
	5	When's the rush hour?	

33 I can understand signs and notices 60

Sign or notice	Where?	Meaning		
ladies gents toilet	in a bar, restaurant, train, plane, etc.	₩C WC		
entrance or way in	in a car park, museum, cinema, etc.	Go in here.		
exit or way out		Go out or leave here.		
no entry		You can't go in here.		
no exit		You can't go out here.		
no smoking	in a cinema, restaurant, etc.	You can't smoke here.		
no parking	in the street, or in front of a garage or entrance	You can't leave your car here.		
please do not disturb	hotel room door	I'm sleeping, so don't come in.		
queue here	at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office	Wait in a line here.		
nothing to declare	at an airport	you have no tax to pay		
sale	in a shop window	period when a shop sells things at a lower price than normal		
out of order	on a public telephone, drinks machine, etc.	This isn't working. or It's broken.		
please ring for attention	at reception in a hotel, office, etc.	Ring the bell and somebody will come.		
no vacancies	in the window of a small hotel	The hotel is full.		

	Match	1	_ a	with	2 -	i
ALL D	Match		- 9	with	a -	J.

	No smokingd_	a	in a hotel reception
1	No parking	b	on a hotel room door
2	Toilet	C	on a drinks machine
3	Queue here	d	in a café ✓
4	Out of order	е	in a shop window
5	Please do not disturb	f	in front of a garage
6	Sale	g	in a hotel window
7	Entrance	h	at the back of a restaurant
8	No vacancies	i	at the front door of a museum
9	Please ring for attention	j	inside a post office

Complete the signs in different ways.

	No smoking	3	Please	6	Please
1	No	4	No		Nothing to
2	Way	5	Way		

Test yourself. Cover the signs and look at the meanings. Say the signs.

Review: Getting around

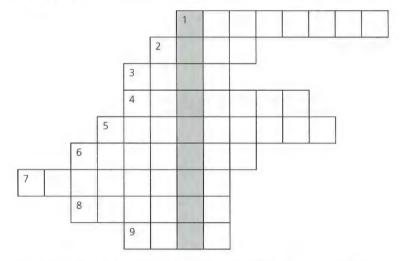
Unit 29

Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ Where do I get out the bus for the park? Where do I get off the bus for the park?
- 1 This bus go to The National Museum?
- 2 How many stopping is it to the railway station?
- 3 Excuse, does this bus go to Alfred Road? _____
- 4 How long does it make to get to the centre?
- 5 Does the 31 stop next the post office?
- 6 Does the 9 stop outside from the school?
- 7 The which bus do I get to Queen Street? ______
- 8 Do the buses run all ten minutes?
- 9 How long time does it take to the centre?
- 10 What often do the buses run?

Unit 30

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?



- The part of the station where you get on or get off a train.
- 2 The opposite of slow.
- 3 If you get to the station late, you could _______ your train.
- 4 Book (a seat).
- 5 This tells you when the trains arrive and leave.
- 6 When you travel from one place to another.
- 7 Part of the train where people sit.
- 8 A single or return _____.
- 9 Money you pay to travel.

The letters in the grey squares make the word

t	complete the dialogue between the passenger (P) and the assistant (A) about the train journey from Bristol to Manchester. It's 9.30. The passenger is in Bristol.	Bristol - Manchester (change at Birmingham)
Р	6. 1	9.58 (platform 4) gets to
Д		Birmingham 11.26
Р	When's the (1)?	train leaves Birmingham 11.48
Д		- arrives Manchester 1.23
Р	ls it (2)?	Single £40, return £75
А		
Р	OK. And when does the Manchester train (4)	2
Α		f
Р	And when does it (5)	Manchester?
Α		. War energe
P	Right, and which (6) is that?	
Α	Four.	
1 2 3 4 5	Take the second turning the left. On The bank is on right. How do I get the river? Go along and turn left. Go straight and turn right. Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank?	
6	Yes, it's the corner of this street.	
2 6		22-24
2 (ross out one word in each sentence to make the sentence	es correct.
1	Turn right into the Duke Street.	
2	The bank is opposite of the hotel.	
3	Go straight on and keep to going. Is there a post office near from here?	
4	It's on the your left.	
5	Turn to left and go straight on.	
6	It's the third turning on the right side.	
,	and tarning on the right side.	

Unit 32

1	Tick	(/)true	or false.

		TRUE	FALSE
	You put money in a traffic light.	**************************************	
1	A motorway is bigger than a main road.	***************************************	to manufactions and a second
2	You walk on a pedestrian crossing.	Givenmental plantations or a resource and a resource	
3	You drive your car on the pavement.		***************************************
4	Road signs tell you what to do.		
5	Roads are quiet in the rush hour.	400000000000000000000000000000000000000	temperatus paradores as the streets in
6	You can get a train at a petrol station.	Name and the desired the constraint of the const	and the formation of the appropriate and the same and the
7	If there's a traffic jam, the roads are busy.	#0000000000000000000000000000000000000	451111111111111111111111111111111111111
8	Motorways have more than one lane.	•	GP-1007752-FG-0000318813-070-070-070-070-070-070
9	It's a good idea to overtake at a junction.	666 685,000.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00.00	
10	Cars drive round a circle at a roundabout.	\$100 \$110 \$100 \$100 \$100 \$100 \$100 \$100	<i>-</i>

2 Complete the radio traffic information.

We are getting reports of an ▶ accident on the M40 m	(1) near
Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the s	
L(2) lost control when it was trying to o(3) a	ous, and hit
two other cars. The police are now at the scene of the a (4), at	nd say the fast
(5) of the motorway will be closed for at least an hour. This will	ill mean long
t j (6) during the r h	
and the police are telling drivers to keep away from the motorway if possible an	d to
t (8) a different route into Oxford.	

Unit 33

Comp	lete	the	dia	logues.
				-3

	Do we pay for things here? ~ I think so. It says 'queue here'	
1	Can I leave my car here? ~ No, the sign says	
2	Can we go in here? ~ Yes, that sign says	
3	Let's stay in this hotel. ~ We can't. Look, it says	
4	Can we clean this bedroom now? ~ No, it's says	
5	Is everything cheaper here this week? ~ Yes, look, it says	in the window.
6	Can I use that telephone? ~ No, it says it's	
7	Can we go out here? ~ No, that sign says	
8	Can I have a cigarette? ~ No. It says	

34 I can talk about my country 60



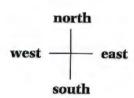
Brazil is enormous. The Atlantic coast is more than 3,000 kilometres long, and in the north, south, and west, there are borders² with ten different countries. The longest river³ is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres high: it's the highest mountain4 in Brazil. The capital, Brasilia, is inland, but many of the major cities are on the coast. The most famous is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugar Loaf mountain, Corcovado, and some great beaches. It is very popular with tourists.

► The town in the north is _Recife.

Study the map of Brazil for one minute, then complete the sentences.

Glossary

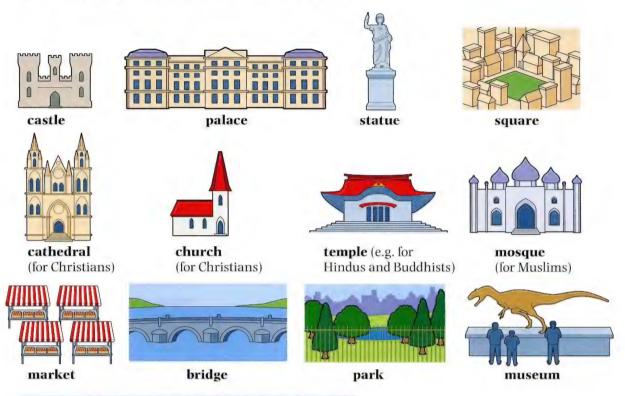
enormous very big 3,000 kilometres long 3,000 kms from one end to the other 3,000 metres high 3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is high NOT tall.) capital a city where a country has its government inland not near the sea major large and important famous If something is famous. many people know about it. (Rio is famous for Carnival.) beach area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana popular If something is popular, many people like it.



		The town in the north is Keci	e.	6	1	n the r	north, it has a bo	order	with
	1	The town in the south is	***************************************				lar city with tou		
	2	The capital is					ous for Sugar Lo		
	3	The longest river is the					isn't near the se		
	4	The highest mountain is					n the		
	5	In the south, it has a border wit	th						
2		Test yourself. Don't look a					u say about th	ese	places?
		Recife (It's a town in the)	1	The Amazon		3	Brasilia	5	Argentina
		Recife It's a town in the north of Brazil.	2	Pico da Neblina		4	Porto Alegre		
3	AE	OUT YOUR COUNTRY Write	yo	ur answers or a	sl	k ano	ther student.		
	1	What's the capital, and where i	s it?	***************************************					
	2	What are some of the other ma							
	3	Does it have borders with any o							
	4	Which places are popular in sur	nme	r?		***************************************			
	5	What are the famous places in							

35 I can talk about my town Do Unit 34 first

A Buildings and places in a town 60



building e.g. shop, church, castle NOT square, park, etc.

1	Correct	the	spelling	mistakes.
---	---------	-----	----------	-----------

- museom museum
- 1 brige _____
- 2 scuare _____
- -
- 3 castel____
- 4 catedral
- 5 parque _____
- 6 musque _____
- 7 bilding _____

spotlight place

We can use **place** as a general word for a town, part of a town, a hotel, etc.

Prague is **a nice place**. The Ritz is **a great place** to stay.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ► My sister got married in our little <u>church</u>
- 1 I think Buddhists use that _____
- 2 The _____ is the best place to see the river.
- 3 The _____ is the cheapest place to buy food.
- 4 You can learn about the history of the town in the local _____
- 5 You can see children playing in the ______ from my hotel window.
- 6 There is a _____ of Nelson Mandela in the main _____
- 7 The _____ and ____ are both open to visitors from 10 until 5.
- 8 The square is a nice ______ to sit and watch people.



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Facts 6

size	It's a	big/large medium-sized small	city town village
location	It's	West	North-east East South-east
population	It's	over about just under } 10,000	
interesting facts	It's	famous for its cathedral modern industrial	
	It has	lots of historic buildings	

Glossary fact a piece of true information

size how big or small something is

city a very large town, e.g. 2 million people

town smaller than a city, e.g. 30,000 people

village smaller than a town, e.g. 1,000 people, and in the countryside.

location the place where something is, e.g. 50 kms from Rome

population the number of people who live in a place

over 1 mile more than 1 mile opp under

just under a little under (also just over)

modern of the present opp old industrial having a lot of industry, e.g. making cars or steel

historic important in history

4 Write the phrases in the correct columns.

in the north-east ✓ on the coast famous for historic buildings over two million an industrial town just under 50,000 on the River Duero a small village south-west of the capital about 3,000 a large city a medium-sized town

Size	Location	Population	Interesting facts
	in the north—eas	t	

5	Comple	ete the	text	about	Turin.
---	--------	---------	------	-------	--------

ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write a similar text about your city/town/village.

C Opinions 6.



Word	Example	Meaning
opinion	What's your opinion of the new cathedral? ~ I think it's wonderful.	Your opinion is what you think about something; it is not a fact.
busy	It's busy in the summer when the tourists arrive.	If a place is busy , it is full of people, cars, and activity. opp quiet
crowded	The bars get very crowded in the evenings.	full of people or too full of people
polluted dirty	It's very polluted because of all the industry. The buildings are very dirty .	a polluted place has dirty air, water, etc.
cosmopolitan	London and New York are very cosmopolitan cities.	having people from many different countries living there
there's lots to do	There's lots to do in the evening — discos, cinemas, and so on.	= there are many activities and places to visit OPP there's nothing to do
nightlife	The nightlife in my town is very good.	places to go in the evening: bars, clubs, etc.
safe	It's safe during the day but can be dangerous at night.	free from danger. If a town is safe , you don't need lots of police. orp dangerous

	De	o the speakers like the places they	're talking ab	oou	t? Tick (✓) yes or no.		
			YES NO				YES NO
		'The streets are very dirty.'	/	4	'There's nothing to do	at night.	,
	1	'I think it's very polluted, don't you?'		5	'It's so clean on the co	ast.'	
	2	'There's lots to do during the day.'		6	'I always feel safe at ni	ight.'	
	3	'I think the nightlife is great.'		7			
8	Co	omplete the dialogue.					
	Α	What's your ▶ opinion of	Walton?				
	В	Well, there are people from all over th		s ver	v (1)	I love	that.
	Α	Yes, but is it safe?			, . ,		
	В	Well, every city is a bit (2)	at nig	ht, k	out there's a lot to (3)		
		here, and the (4)	is very good –	lots	of bars and clubs.		
	Α	And is it very busy in the centre?	, ,				
	В	It's OK on weekdays, but it gets very (5	5)	300-1111-1011-1011-1011-1011-1011-1011-	at the weekends, wi	th all the	tourists.
		The centre is also quite dirty; the river is					
9	AE	BOUT YOUR TOWN Write your opi	nions, or ask	an	other student.		
	1	Is your city/town/village a safe place to	o live, or is it da	ange	erous?		
	2	What is there to do during the day?					
	3	Is it usually busy or quiet?					
	4	What about the nightlife?					
	5	Is it a very cosmopolitan place?					
	6	Is it a nice place to live?					

36 I can describe the countryside

A On the farm 60

- 1 sky 2 wood
- 3 hill
- 4 farmer
- 5 valley
- 6 tree
- 7 field
- 8 farm (the house and fields)
- 9 lake
- 10 horse
- 11 boat
- 12 grass
- 13 **dog**
- 14 path

	1 2 3
4	5 6 7
9	11
T2	13
Suc Min M	Glossary

Jack Robson is a farmer. He **owns** Eatwell Farm. He **grows** fruit and **a few** other **crops**.

own If you own something, it is yours.

grow Farmers grow potatoes, rice, etc. to sell.

a few some; not a lot

crop a plant a farmer grows and sells, e.g. rice, apples

1	Look at the	picture	and the	text.	True or	false?	Write	Tor	F.
---	-------------	---------	---------	-------	---------	--------	-------	-----	----

- ► There's a lake near the trees. ______
- 1 There is nothing in the field.
- 2 The farmer's in the boat.
- 3 The path goes to the lake.
- 4 The wood is on the hill.
- 5 The dog lives on the farm.
- 6 The horse is eating the grass.
- 7 The sky's grey.
- 8 There are a lot of chickens.
- 9 The farmer grows fruit.

Complete the words. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)

ABOUT YOU

•	Do you live near a w <u>○</u> <u>○</u> d?	Yes, I do. It's 200 metres from my home.
1	Do you live in a $v \perp II \perp y$ or on a $h \perp II$?	
2	Can you see any gra where you are now?	н м нижимини
3	Can you see a f _ w tr s where you are now	?
4	Are there any $f _ _ _$ ds near your home?	
5	Do you _ wn a d _ g or a h _ rs _ ?	the state of the s
6	What cr _ ps do people gr _ w where you live?	Programmy and the Programme and the Control of the
7	Do you know any f _ r _ e _ s?	and the second s

- ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Can you remember the words?

B In the countryside 6.

I live alone in a beautiful area in the countryside. In the mornings, it is so quiet, I sit and listen to the birds — it's wonderful. I've got a garden with lots of flowers and I grow all my fruit and vegetables, so I only eat fresh food, which is very healthy. The big problem is that public transport is terrible, but I've got a bike if I need to go to town. And it's a bit lonely too, but I can always talk to Jack at Eatwell Farm, and sometimes I look after his chickens for him.



Glossary

area a part of a town, country or the world the countryside a place with fields, woods, farms, etc. that is outside towns or cities

bird 🍆

wonderful very good OPP terrible

fresh food food taken from the tree or plant; not old or from a tin

healthy If something is healthy, it helps to keep you well. If a person is healthy, they are well. public transport system of buses and trains

bike (also bicycle) you ride a bike or go somewhere by bike

A DOLLT WOLL

look after If you **look after** an animal, you give it food and see that it is healthy.

Is the meaning of the underlined words/phrases the same or different? Write S or D.

•	We always use public transport/the buses and trains here.	S
1	These carrots are fresh/clean.	
2	She's looking at/looking after the dog.	
3	I think city life is wonderful/terrible.	
4	Have you got a bike/bicycle?	
5	Are you alone/lonely at the moment?	
6	She's healthy/very well.	
7	He lives in the countryside/on a farm.	
8	He rides his bike to work/goes to work by bike.	

spotlight alone and lonely

Alone and lonely mean 'not with other people'. If you are lonely, you aren't happy about it. If you are alone, you can be happy or unhappy.

She likes living alone. NOT She-

likes living lonely.

She's lonely = She would like

She's **lonely**. = She would like to have more friends.

6 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some sentences have two mistakes.

		ABOUT YOU
	I sometimes have to look afer children. after	I look after my children every day.
1	I often buy floweres.	W 1 MARKET MARKE
2	I love the contryside	
3	I'm very helthy	- Management of a 10 Management of the Control of t
4	I see lots of brids in my aerea.	# : M : # : M : M : M : M : M : M : M :
5	Our public transporte is wonderfull.	
6	I'm often alon in the evening.	
7	l eat fraish fruit every day.	
8	I never feel lonley.	

ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 6 true about you? If not, change them to make them true.

37 I can talk about shops

A Places to shop 6.

Places	What they sell					
market (a number of stalls, outdoors or indoors)	food, sometimes furniture, CDs, books, flowers					
shopping centre (a number of shops, usually indoors)	everything					
department store (a large shop)	almost everything, but not usually food: beds, books, televisions, clothes, perfume					
supermarket (a large shop)	food, drinks, cleaning products for the house, shampoo, things for the kitchen					
hypermarket	the same as a supermarket, but also clothes, TVs, furniture. Hypermarkets are outside towns.					
butcher's	meat					
baker's	bread and cakes					
chemist's	medicine, e.g. aspirin, also soap, shampoo					
deli(catessen)	sandwiches, bread, cheese, ham, coffee					
paper shop or newsagent's	newspapers, chocolates, cigarettes					



An indoor market

spotlight

Noun + shop

For many shops, we often use noun + shop: shoe shop, clothes shop. bookshop, music shop (for CDs and DVDs), fruit and vegetable shop, etc.

- Three answers are correct. Circle the wrong answer.
 - ▶ I got the vegetables from the... supermarket (baker's) market fruit and vegetable shop
 - 1 I got the bread from the... hypermarket deli baker's butcher's
 - 2 I got the meat from the... supermarket baker's market butcher's
 - 3 I got these jeans from a... market paper shop department store clothes shop
 - 4 I got this shampoo from the... deli chemist's supermarket department store
 - 5 I got the cheese from a... supermarket market stall deli chemist's
 - 6 I got these CDs from the... shopping centre newsagent's department store music shop
- Write two things you can buy in each of these places.
 - ▶ department store <u>bed</u> <u>television</u> 4 newsagent's

 - deli ._____
- 5 baker's
- 2 chemist's
- 6 music shop _____



3 market _____

Test yourself. Cover 'Places' and look at 'What they sell'. Can you remember the names of the shops and shopping places?

B Shopping habits 6.

Hypermarkets are so **convenient** – you can **get** everything in one place.

I do the supermarket shopping on Thursdays when it's quiet.

Supermarkets are so busy at the weekend.
I don't like **queueing** at the **checkout**!

You can **choose** from a lot of different things in a supermarket, but I **prefer** markets.

They're friendlier.

There are six of us in my family, so I fill two trolleys every week!

I **get** a lot of things on the internet. They always **deliver** to your home.

Glossary

convenient easy and quick to use get buy

do (the) shopping buy food and things you need often, e.g. soap

queue wait in a line of people

checkout the place in a supermarket where you pay **choose** decide which thing you want

prefer like something or someone more than another

fill make something full (The trolley in the picture is full.)

trolley



basket



deliver take things to a person or a place

4	Tr	ue or false? Write T or F.
	•	If you have a car, supermarkets are very convenient
	1	You can't get CDs in a hypermarket.
	2	You can fill a trolley or a basket.
	3	You go to clothes shops to do the shopping
	4	You sometimes have to queue when you want to pay.
	5	You can choose from a lot of different things in small shops.
	6	You pay at the checkout in a supermarket.
	7	At a supermarket, you put the things you want to buy in a trolley or basket
	8	All shops will deliver the things you buy to your home
5	Co	emplete the words in the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)
		ABOUT YOU
	1	When do you or your family usually do the s?
	2	Do you pr supermarkets or small shops?
	3	Do you often have to q at the checkout?
	4	Do you think supermarkets are co?
	5	Do supermarkets in your town d things to your home?
	6	Where do you g your fruit and vegetables?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5 or ask another student.

38 I can talk about my home

A Flats 6

I live in a block of flats near the town centre, in an area called Montpellier. I really like the flat, and my neighbour, Simon, is very friendly.

- 1 (on) the top
- 2 (on) the second floor
- 3 (on) the first floor
- 4 (on) the ground floor
- 5 garden
- 6 steps
- 7 (in) the basement
- 8 rubbish u
- 9 front door
- 10 stairs
- 11 lift
- 12 flat
- 13 balcony



1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ► Helen lives on the second floor. ... T
- 1 John and Lucy live on the ground floor. ____
- 2 Miki lives on the top floor.
- 3 Anna lives on the first floor.
- 4 They put their rubbish in the lift. _____
- 5 Simon lives in the basement.
- 6 Ferdy's flat has got a balcony.
- 7 Rob's flat has got a garden.
- 8 The steps are at the front door. _____.
- 9 Ferdy needs to use the stairs or lift. _____

2 Complete the words.

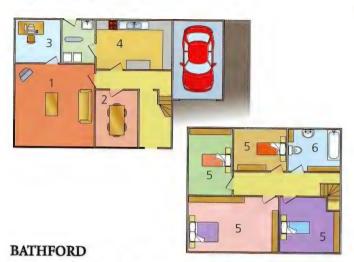
- ▶ | i ft
- 1 b____t
- 2 b___k of f___s
- 3 g____d f___r
- 4 f___t d__r
- 5 s____s

- 6 g____n
- 7 s___s
- 8 n_____r
- 9 b____v
- 10 t__n c___e



Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

B Houses 6



Modern family house in this quiet village with lovely views of the countryside. Large living room¹, dining room², study³, modern kitchen⁴ and utility room. Upstairs there are four good-sized bedrooms⁵ and a family bathroom⁶. Outside there is a large garden, a garage, and further parking for two cars.

4 Find the end of each word.

studyviewmodernlivingroomtoiletkitchenhomeparking diningroomupstairsbedroomutilityroombathroom

Glossary

modern of the present time or old view what you see from the house utility room a room where you do the washing, ironing, etc.

upstairs



OPP downstairs

outside not in a house or other
building OPP inside

garage a building where you park
your car

parking U a place where you can park
(leave) your car

spotlight flat, house and home

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

A **house** is a building with rooms on two or more floors.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

__ room, dining

9	Complete the text.
	I live in a ▶ _modern house – it's only four years old. It's got a (1)
	room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) It's in the town centre

room, kitc	hen, two bedrooms and a	2) It's in the town centre, and from the living
		of the railway station, which isn't very nice. I leave my car on
		, but it's got a small (5), so I can ea
	when it's warm.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
My brothe	er's got a house in a village	near me, and from the house he's got fantastic
		Downstairs there's a living room, dining room, large
		where my brother works. (10) there are four
		, so there's lots of space when I visit with friends.
		cars, and a large garden. In the summer they eat
	all the time.	

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 3 Have you got a garden? If so, how big is it? _____
- 4 What's the view? Is it nice? _______

 5 Have you got parking? ______
- 6 What rooms have you got in your home? _____

39 I can describe a kitchen

A In the kitchen 60

- 1 shelf plural shelves
- 2 tap (turn the tap on/off)
- 3 cup(s)
- 4 microwave
- 5 frying pan
- 6 freezer
- 7 sink
- 8 saucer(s)
- 9 hob
- 10 saucepan
- 11 **(rubbish) bin**The bin is **full** OPP **empty**
- 12 oven
- 13 fridge
- 14 washing machine
- 15 cupboard
- 16 dishwasher
- 17 cooker



- Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.
 - ► Put the milk in the fridge
 - 1 Put those dirty clothes in the w_____ m____
 - 2 Put the dirty plates in the d._____ or the s_____ .

 - 4 Put the books on the s_____
 - 5 Put the empty packets in the b______.
 - 6 Put the meat in the o______.
 - 7 Cook the eggs in the f_______p____.
 - 8 Put the ice cream in the f_____
 - 9 Is the rubbish bin f_____?
 - 10 Heat the soup in the m_____ or on the h____
 - 11 Could you turn the t______ off?
 - 12 Boil the potatoes in that s______.
- ABOUT YOU Write down anything in the picture you haven't got.
 - ► I haven't got a microwave, and my washing machine isn't in the kitchen.

 I haven't got ______
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.

B Using the kitchen 6.

Housework

- 1 do the shopping
- 2 put the shopping away (= in the cupboards, fridge, etc)
- 3 put the dirty clothes in the washing machine; turn it on
- 4 clean the cooker
- 5 take the washing (= the clothes) out of the washing machine
- 6 make a sandwich
- 7 empty the bin
- 8 do the ironing
- 9 cook lunch for the family
- 10 do the washing-up





















10

spotlight

do + noun

These phrases are very common in spoken English: do the shopping, do the washing-up, do the housework, do the ironing

Be careful!

housework = cleaning the house

homework = work teachers give students to do after class

Complete the text.

Saturday is my day for doing the ▶ housework . First, I go to town and do the (1) _____. Then I come back, (2) ______ everything (3) _____ in the cupboards, and (4) _____ the bin. If the kitchen's dirty, I (5) _____ it, and then I (6) _____ a cup of tea. My sister usually helps me. She (7) _____ all the dirty clothes in the washing machine and (8) _____ the washing out when it's finished. I (9) _____ lunch, but afterwards, we do the (10) ______ together. When the clothes are dry, I do the (11) _____.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

In your home ...

- 1 Who does the shopping? 4 Who cleans the kitchen?
- 3 Who does the washing-up? ______ 6 Who does the ironing? _____
- 2 Who cooks the dinner? _____ 5 Who empties the bin? _____

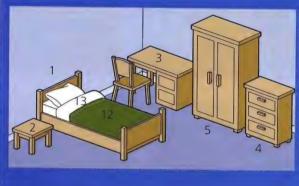


Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.

40 I can describe a bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom and bathroom 6.

International student house Our rooms are all newly furnished, and include: a single bed¹, bedside table², desk³ and chair, chest of drawers⁴, and wardrobe⁵.



There are three bathrooms on each floor: each has a bath⁶, shower⁷, washbasin⁸, mirror⁹, toilet¹⁰, and bidet¹¹.

We provide **blankets**¹², but students must bring their own **sheets**¹³ and **towels**¹⁴.



Toilet is different. The other two are in a bedroom.

is different. You can wash in the other two.

is different. You put clothes in the other two.

is different. The other two are pieces of furniture.

is different. The other two are in a bedroom.

is different. The other two are in a bathroom.

is different. The other two are on a bed

-			
	Ongword	ic different	Which one?
ALL DE	One word	is different.	. vvnich one?

- ▶ bedside table toilet wardrobe
 - 1 bath shower mirror
 - 2 wardrobe desk chest of drawers
 - 3 blanket desk chest of drawers
 - 4 bed chest of drawers bidet
 - 5 wardrobe toilet washbasin
 - 6 towel blanket sheet
- Write in the missing letter.
 - ► dek desk
 - 1 beside table _____
 - 2 miror _____
 - 3 ath ______
- 5 wasbasin
- 6 tolet
- 7 wadrobe _____
- 8 bide _____
- 9 blanke _____
- 10 seet _____
- 11 twel_____
- 12 shoor
- 12 shoer ____
- 3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about your bedroom and bathroom.

Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the pictures. Say the words for 1-14.

B In the bathroom 60



spotlight

have + noun

Notice these phrases with **have**: I have a shower every day.

Do you have a shave every morning?

I don't have a bath very often.

I have a wash after work.

You can also put on or wear



Circle the correct word.

- I wash (clean) my teeth with toothpaste) a comb.
- 1 I do/put on my hair with a razor/a brush.
- 2 Do you have/do a bath every day?
- 3 She puts on/has make-up when she goes out.
- 4 Do you often have a shave/wash with an electric razor?
- 5 He washes/cleans his hair with expensive perfume/shampoo.
- 6 When you take off make-up you use tissues/a comb.

6 Write a, an or nothing (-).

▶ I don't use ____ make-up.
1 I need ____ new comb.
2 Do you want ____ tissue?
3 I never use ____ perfume.
4 I must buy ____ brush.
5 I buy ____ shampoo every week.
6 Have you got ____ electric razor?
7 I just use ____ soap.
8 I need ____ new toothbrush and ____ toothpaste.

ABOUT YOU Tick (✓) a or b. Then if possible tell another student your answers.

1	a I usually have a bath. 5 b I usually have a shower.	5	For women: a I often wear perfume.	
2	a I clean my teeth before breakfast.		b I don't wear perfume very much.	
	b I clean my teeth after breakfast.		a I usually wear make-up.	
3	a I wash my hair twice a week or less.		b I don't wear make-up very much.	
	b I wash my hair more than twice a week. 6	ŝ	For men:	
1	a I usually use a brush on my hair. b I usually use a comb on my hair.		a I use an electric razor. b I don't use an electric razor.	

41 I can describe a living room 6



- 10 cushion
- 11 DVD player
- 12 lamp
- 13 armchair
- 14 coffee table
- 15 fireplace
- 16 floor
- 17 sofa
- 18 rug
- 19 carpet

An armchair, a sofa and a coffee table are furniture U, or pieces of furniture.

1	Look at the	picture.	True or	false?	Write	Tor	F.

In the living room, there is only one...

- ▶ TV ____ 3 cushion ____ 7 rug ____ 11 picture ____ ▶ picture _____ 4 carpet _____ 8 radiator _____ 12 wall _____

1 window

2 light

4 wall

3 ceiling

curtains

picture

radiator

- 1 light ____ 5 curtain ____
- 9 armchair _____ 13 DVD player ____

- 2 lamp _____ 6 fireplace _____ 10 sofa ____ 14 piece of furniture ____
- Complete the words.

 - $\sim \frac{\omega \ln n}{1}$ dow 4 ____iator
- 8 ___ ht
- 12 ____ place

- 1 ___ or 2 ___ pet
- 5 ___ fee ___ le 9 ___ tains 6 ___ ling
 - 10 ____ hair

- 3 ___ hion

- ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers or ask another student.
 - 1 How many windows have you got in your living room? _____
 - 2 Have you got radiators, a fireplace or both? ______
 - 3 What have you got on the floor?
 - 4 What's on the walls?
 - 5 Are the lights on the ceiling or the walls?
 - 6 What furniture have you got?

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.

Review: Places

8 Not with other people.

Unit 34

UI	111.54								
Cor	mplete the sentences.								
-	Moscow is in the west of Russia.	6	Paris is the		D-1-040-Courses	of F	ranc	e.	
1	Milan is in the of Italy.	7	The Nile is the	lon	gest	***************************************		ir	the
2	Bangkok is in the of Thailand.		world.		_				
3	San Francisco is on the west and	8	Fujiyama is th	e hig	hest	ido mila a successivo a su		i	n Japar
	New York is on the east of the USA								-
	China is an (very big) country.		Brazil is	_					
	Geneva is near the between Switzerland and France.		and Carnival.						
Ur	nit 35					•			
1 V	Write the opposite.								
	north south 3 south-west	Married Commission of the Comm	O+112900004000231020033405334044d	6	a bu	sy st	reet.		######################################
1	an old city 4 safe	***************************************	***	7	pollu	rted.		nettitalittaliikaskal	allimon assessment
2	2 under a million 5 there's lots	to do	Company of the Compan	8	opin	ion _		/~	
	Complete the texts. A Granada is quite a ▶ large town abou								
	(2) of about 300,000 people. It's and a famous (4) called The Alha								
E	New York is a big (6), which is	(7)	the	Atla	ntic co	oast.	lt's		
	(8) for a number of things: the ((9)	of L	ibert	y, Tim	es (1	0)_		
	and Central (11) It is a (12)	AND PROPERTY OF STREET	city, with p	eop	le of n	nany	nati	onali	ties.
Ur	nit 36				A	R	E	Α	
1 (Complete the crossword.			1	Α				
	Part of a town, country or the world. area		2		A				
1			3				-		
2			3		Α				
3	3			4	Α				
4			5		A				
5		************		6					
6					Α				
				7	A				
7	A laide area of water with land around it								

	omplete the crossword.		W	0	0	D						
	A place with a lot of treeswood		1		U	V						
1	An animal you can ride.		Ľ	0								
2	Farmers potatoes, rice, etc.	2		0								
3	Plants that farmers look after and then	3		0			1					
	sell for food.		4	0					1			
4	Unhappy because you are not with		4	0								
	other people.			50								
5	If yousomething, it		6									Т
	is yours.			0								_
6	A place with fields, farms, woods, etc. outside	de to	owns	and (cities		00-0:0: .b					
Jn	it 37											
C	omplete the words.											
-	A shop where you get sandwiches, coffee, b	oreac	d, etc.	is a	deli.		6000 0000 000a · 800					
1	A place with shops which is indoors is a s											
2	A shop where you buy newspapers, chocola											
3	A shop where you get medicine, shampoo,											
4	A large shop which sells food, things for clea								or a	S		
								W	Oi d	J		
5	A Shop where you get bread and caves is a i											
5	A shop where you get bread and cakes is a l			18 - 606 182 - 406 - 0	M 800 800							
6	A place where you buy books is a b		***************************************	*# : 000 NA 000 . 0								
6 7	A place where you buy books is a bA shop where you buy meat is a b	00000000000000000000000000000000000000	00000000000000000000000000000000000000			· oto	is a	d				
6	A place where you buy books is a b	00000000000000000000000000000000000000	00000000000000000000000000000000000000			s, etc	. is a	d	**************************************	- 10 - 1 - 100 (· 100 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
6 7 8	A place where you buy books is a b	rthing	 g: clot	hes,	beds						· #888. #066. #068. #1	
6 7	A place where you buy books is a b	rthing	 g: clot	hes,	beds							1444 1444
6 7 8	A place where you buy books is a b. A shop where you buy meat is a b. A large shop where you can buy almost any s. A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc.	rthing	g: clot	hes,	beds	***************************************	S	······································	b - 1 85- 8000-400 1000	***************************************		
6 7 8 9	A place where you buy books is a b	rthing	g: clot	hes,	beds es m	nake	s	ffer	ent	wor		
6 7 8 9	A place where you buy books is a b. A shop where you buy meat is a b. A large shop where you can buy almost any s. A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. complete the crossword. The letters in the that is it?	rthing	g: clot	hes, quar	beds es m	nake	s	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 2 C W	A place where you buy books is a b	rthing	g: clot	hes,	beds es m	nake	s	ffer	b - 1 85- 8000-400 1000	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 2 Ccv	A place where you buy books is a b. A shop where you buy meat is a b. A large shop where you can buy almost any s. A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. complete the crossword. The letters in the that is it? where you buy books bookshop wait in a line of people	is a r	g: clot	hes, quar	es m	nake	s	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 CC W	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	hes, quar	beds es m	nake	s	ffer	ent	wor	d.	-
6 7 8 9 W	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	hes, quar	es m	nake	s	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 W	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	quar	es m	nake	s	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 CW	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake	sK	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 CW	A place where you buy books is a b. A shop where you buy meat is a b. A large shop where you can buy almost any s. A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. In the letters in the latters in the latter in a line of people buy the things you need: do the leasy and quick to use like something more than another thing a shopping place outdoors where different p	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake	sK	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 9 CC W	A place where you buy books is a b. A shop where you buy meat is a b. A large shop where you can buy almost any s. A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. complete the crossword. The letters in the hat is it? where you buy books bookshop wait in a line of people wait in a line of people buy the things you need: do the easy and quick to use like something more than another thing you food, books, etc.	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake	sK	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 9 W 1 1 2 2 3 2 4 6 6	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake O	sK	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 9 CC W	A place where you buy books is a b. A shop where you buy meat is a b. A large shop where you can buy almost any s. A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. I properly the crossword. The letters in the latter in a line of people by the things you need: do the by the things you need: do the by the something more than another thing a shopping place outdoors where different proposition in a market by you find these in a market the opposite of 'outdoors'	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake O	sK	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 9 CC W	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake O	sK	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 9 CC W	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake O	a di	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 9 CC W	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake O	sK	ffer	ent	wor	d.	
6 7 8 9 9 CC W	A place where you buy books is a b	is a r	g: clot	quar B	es m	nake O	a di	ffer	ent	wor	d.	

Unit 38

2

1 H	lere are some defi	nitions. \	What are the words?					
•	The room where y	ou talk an	d watch TV. living room					
1 The room where you wash and have a shower.								
2 The room where you cook food.								
3 The room where you sleep								
4 The room where you do work/homework.								
5			car					
6			n one floor to another floor.					
7			e where there are trees and flowers.					
8			lat or a house)					
2 N	/latch 1 – 8 with a	- i.						
•	quietd_	а	floor					
1	front	b	views					
2		C						
3		d	village ✓					
4		e	centre					
5		f	door					
6	2	g	house					
7	block	_	for two cars					
8		i	room					
	nit 39 Vrite your answers							
			Saucedan					
1			this or					
2	You wash clothes in							
3	You put rubbish in							
4			this.					
5			nd saucers here.					
6			s in this.					
7	You put ice cream i							
8	You cook meat slow							
2 C	omplete the sente							
			on the word have					
1	Come home and	ie si ioppin	ng on the way home.					
2			the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.					
3			shing in the machine, and it on.					
4			the machine off and take the washing					
-	Einally.		-up and the bin.					

Unit 40

1 Put these words in two groups, and give a name to each group.

wardrobe shower	towel washbasin	toilet bla single bed		nest of drawers bidet
1			2	

2 Complete the questions, then answer them.

	What do you use when you wash your hair?	shampoo
1	What do you use when you make-up?	***************************************
2	What do you use when you a shave?	**** ** ** ****************************
3	What do you use when you your teeth?	
4	What do you use when you your hair?	5 17710000000000000000000000000000000000
5	What do use when you a wash?	*** THE 691 Is NOT COMMISSIONAL STREET, CO. CO.

Unit 41

Look at the two pictures. Write down ten more differences.

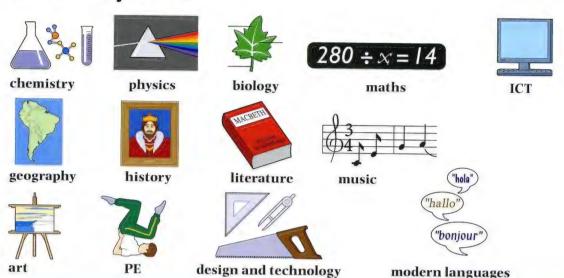




	Picture 1 has got a sofa, but picture 2 has	n't.	
1		6	~
2	The state of the s	7	
3		8	
4	W. W. W. L. W. Branch and Co.	9	
5		10	

42 I can talk about my school

A School subjects 60



Chemistry, physics, biology, etc. are school **subjects**.

ICT = information communication technology PE = physical education

RE = religious education

spotlight

be good at something

If you are **good at** something, you do it well. If you are **terrible at** it, you do it very badly. I'm (quite) good at languages. I'm terrible at maths.

Complete the words.

 ▶ a rt
 3 b _ l _ g _
 6 m _ th _

 1 h _ st _ ry
 4 d _ s _ gn
 7 m _ s _ c

 2 g _ gr _ ph _
 5 ph _ s _ cs
 8 l _ t _ r _ t _ r _

2 Write the name of a school subject.

 ▶ Beethoven, jazz, _music
 4 Spanish, German _______

 1 football, gym _______
 5 church, mosque, etc. ______

 2 computers ______
 6 CO₂, H₂O _______

 3 Shakespeare _______
 7 Picasso, Monet ______

ABOUT YOU Circle the correct verb form. Complete the sentences about yourself.

- 1 At school, I'm/I was good at
 2 I'm/I was quite good at
 3 I'm/I was terrible at
 4 We don't/didn't study
 5 The subject I like/liked most is/was
- Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the subjects.

B The education system 6.

Education in England and Wales

You can ...



sta	irt nursery sc	hool at 3	go to prima	ary school at 5		o secondary ate school or	school at 11 private schoo
						*	
go	to university	4	stay at sc	hool until 18	4	leave scho	ol at 16
				1		1	
						A	
			ge	et a job	go t	o college	get a job
					alossary		
						go to a new	school for the
Som	ne pupils (= sch r a uniform .	noolchildren u	p to the age of I	16)	first time		
wea	ra unnorm.					vate school wh	ere education is
5 F	out the story i	n order.		St	tay at scho	ol go to scho	ol for a period of
a	where he lea	arnt to read an	d write.			continue at so	chool) as there until
b	He stayed th	ere until he wa	as sixteen,		3.00,' mea	ns 'after 3.00	, I went away.')
C	When Tom w	vas three,		T CC	ollege plac	e where you	can study after
d	and then he	went to colleg	e.		you leave s ave schoo	cnoor Istop going t	o school
е		e went to seco		g	et a job fir	nd a job	
f		ge when he wa	-		niform spe wear in a s	ecial clothes t	hat children
g							
h				5	potlight	at (the age	of)
i		rimary school,		C	hildren go	to school at 5	or at the age
j	and got a job			W W	(1.5). = Chil	ldren go to pr tre five (years	imary school old).
a •							
6 C	omplete the	questions, bi	ut don't write	e answers.			
	At what ago	do children an	to bluccar.	1 12	ABOUT	YOUR COU	NTRY
1	At what age		primary scho		/#	14-500-901-929-8 11-10-00000	
2				rimary school?		M-sendence service 6: MARKETERS 9: 11 / 64	
3			art s			· * **** *********** *****************	
4		ey I		JC11001;	- 80 200 2000000000000000000000000000000	THE 18	# RE - 1 - 500000000 - 100 - 1 - 1 - 100000000
	g					1 6 404444444444444444444444444444444444	
5			schools, pr	20 C. Const. 1980 - 198			
	schools, or bo					MI .BERGERAME NO	AMAZERO (1911

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 or ask another student.

C Exams 6

When I was at secondary school, I went to all the **lessons** and **did** my **homework**, but I didn't **work** very **hard**. So, when I **took exams** at 16, my **results** weren't fantastic. I **passed** six, which was good, but I **failed** maths. My **worst** result was physics—I got a **grade** E, which was terrible. After that, I went to a sixth form college where I worked hard and **did well**. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.



Glossary

lesson a period of time (about an hour) in school when you are learning something

do homework u do work the teacher has given you to do at home (NOT homeworks)

work hard work a lot

result what you get in an exam, e.g. 80%, A, or 8/10 (the) worst superlative of bad opp (the) best superlative of good grade you get a grade (e.g. A or B) or a mark (e.g. 15/20) in an exam

do well be good at something and get better at it OPP do badly

spotlight exam (examination)

An **exam** is an important test at the end of a period of study. **take an exam** = sit down and write your answers in the exam **pass an exam** = take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A or 85% **fail an exam** = take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D or 35%

8	Look at Rafael's exam	results on the	right and	answer the	questions.
---	-----------------------	----------------	-----------	------------	------------

- ► How many exams did he take? ______
- 1 Did he take an exam in chemistry? _____
- 2 How many did he pass?
- 3 How many did he fail?
- 4 What was his best grade? _____
- 5 What was his worst grade? _____
- 6 What did he get in English? _____

Exam	Grade	A, B, C – pass
French	В	D, E – fail
IT	С	
Geography	D	
Biology	A	
English	C	
History	В	
Maths	Е	

9 Complete the questions.

- ► Six out of ten isn't a very good mark . . .
- 1 I have to ______ an English exam tomorrow.
- 2 Did you ______ your homework last night?
- 3 Paula did very ______ in her German exam; she got a .____ A.
- 4 I got my exam ______ yesterday. I passed all of them.
- 5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing ______ at school, and last week he _____ an important maths exam.
- 6 Maths is my _____ subject. I'm terrible at it.

10 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions or ask another student.

- 1 How long are/were your lessons at school? ______
- 2 Do/Did you work hard at school most of the time?
- 3 At what age will/did you take important exams? ______

A A university degree 🕠

I started university two years ago. when I was nineteen, and I'm doing a degree in Spanish and French. The course lasts three years, and there are three terms a year. I work in the library a lot because - like many undergraduates - I have to write lots of essays. I also have to take exams. and last term I failed one and had to take it again. I got the result two weeks ago; fortunately I passed this time. When I've got my degree - a BA-I want to do research for a PhD.



Circle the correct word.

- She did an English (course) term.
- 1 I want to do/make a degree in maths.
- 2 A term/degree lasts about ten weeks.
- 3 I've got a BA/BSc in physics.

Glossary

do a degree study at university for three or four years course a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English course

term a period of study, usually about ten weeks library a place where you can read and borrow books undergraduate a student doing a first degree (A graduate has a degree.)

write an essay do a piece of writing on a subject again one more time

fortunately We say fortunately when we give good news, opp unfortunately

BA/BSc Bachelor of Arts/Science MA/MSc Master of Arts/Science

do research study a subject for a long time to learn new information

PhD Doctor of Philosophy

spotlight

How long does it last?

To last is to continue for a period of time. How long does the film last? ~ Two hours. The Masters course lasts two years.

- 4 I study a lot in the library/bookshop.
- 5 A graduate/An undergraduate has a degree.
- 6 Fortunately/Unfortunately, I failed the exam.
- 7 You can do research before/after a degree.

Complete the dialogues.

	How long does the term <u>last</u> ? ~ About twelve weeks.
	Have you got a? ~ Yes, a BSc.
	Did she have to an essay? ~ Yes, three, in fact.
	Can you research next year? ~ Yes, I want to do a
	Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, he passed.
	Can he take the exam? ~ Yes, next summer.
6	How long does the course? ~ It's only one term.
AE	SOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student

If you fail exams, can you always take them again? _

1	How long do you need to study for a degree in chemistry?
2	How long do you need to study for a Masters degree?
3	How long does a university term last?
4	How long does a school term last?

B University subjects and people 6.

	Degree subject	Person
1	medicine	a doctor
2	psychology	a psychologist
3	economics	an economist
4	law	a lawyer
5	politics	a politician
6	engineering	an engineer
7	architecture	an architect
8	computer science	an IT manager a software engineer
9	journalism	a journalist a reporter
10	business studies	a businessman/woman a manager



4 Complete the sentences. Use the degree subject on the right to help you.

	He always wanted to be a lawyer .	LAW
1	She wants to be a	MEDICINE
2	When did he become an?	ENGINEERING
3	She's studying to become an	ARCHITECTURE
4	Why does he want to be a?	PSYCHOLOGY
5	She works as an	ECONOMICS
6	I don't know anyone who wants to be a	POLITICS
7	Is it difficult to become a?	JOURNALISM
8	I knew he'd become a	BUSINESS STUDIES

5 Complete the words. 'Degree subject' or 'person'? Write DS or P.

-	jo <u>u</u> rnal <u>i s</u> m	DS	7	p_l_t_c_	
1	l _ wy _ r		8	eng _ n r	**************************************
2	ar it _ ct	384944-864-54850000-019	9	m = d = c = n =	1 MI 1 M Table Mid Managing and
3	c = mp = t = sci = c =		10	ec _ n _ m _ c _	201111111111111111111111111111111111111
4	s = -tw $r = e = g = ne = r$	MARK CHARGE THE CHARGE OF THE CO.	11	$IT m_n_g_r$	age three reservers and up to
5	ps _ ch _ l _ g _	\$6.114.848.888.866.60000000	12	r = p = rt = -	URLEGE - M. MIN 1990 - 1995
6	h s n ss st d s				

Test yourself. Cover the subjects and people and look at the pictures. Can you remember the subjects and people?

44 I can name jobs 6

What do you do?

What's your job?

I'm ...

spotlight

a/an with jobs

We use **a/an** when we say what people's jobs are. He's **a builder**. NOT He's builder.

She's a teacher and he's an engineer.



a police officer



a businessman/ businesswoman



a secretary



a dentist



a vet



a shop assistant



a nurse



a hairdresser



a soldier



a pilot



a builder



a teacher



a chef



a cleaner



a lorry driver also a train/bus/taxi driver

Word	Example	Meaning		
self-employed	Are you self-employed?	working for yourself, not for a company		
unemployed	I'm unemployed, but I'm looking for a job.	with no job, but wanting to work		
retired	My grandfather is retired now.	= My grandfather has stopped work because he is over 65.		
housewife or househusband	She's a housewife now, but she was a lawyer.	a woman or a man who looks after the house and family and doesn't go out to work		
boss Who's the boss in this company?		a person who tells people what to do in their jobs		

C	rcle the correct answer.								
-	The most important person in the	e company	is the boss	/hairdresser.					
1	A police officer/vet works with de								
2	A shop assistant/dentist sells thin	gs.							
3	A housewife/nurse works in a hospital.								
4	Retired people are usually young/old.								
5	An unemployed person has/hasn	t got a job).						
6	A businesswoman/soldier can be	self-emplo	yed.						
7	A businessman usually has a secre	etary/hous	ehusband.						
8	A pilot/dentist looks after people								
9	A lorry driver/chef works in a kitch	hen.							
10	A builder/cleaner works outdoors	a lot.							
C	orrect the spelling mistakes.								
-	teecher teacher 5	polis off	icer	10	houswife				
1	bisnessman6		***************************************		self-emploied				
2	shop asistant7	bilder			solder				
3	airdresser 8	lory driv	er						
4	secretairy9	-							
C	omplete the sentences.								
	Does she stay at home with the o	hildren? ~	Yes, she's	a housewife.					
1	Could she cut my hair? ~ Yes, she	's		• 100 tima alaman annonconomico					
2	Does he work for Alitalia? ~ Yes,								
3	Has she got a job? ~ No, she's								
4	Does he tell people what to do?	Yes, he's	P1-1-11-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1						
5	She's seventy – has she got a job?								
6	Does he work for other people?	-							
7	Does she work with students? ~ `								
8	Does he work in that restaurant?								
		,		to the same and th					
A	BOUT YOU Think about your f	amily and	people y	ou know. W	rite their names if th				
d	the jobs below.								
	a nurse my friend Christa		5	someone w	ho is retired				
	a vet I don't know anyone who's			***********************	95.0000930000000000000				
	a soldier Mr Rosakis		6	a teacher	C 97 -91- 0000000000000000000000000000000000				
4	a secretary	************************	7	a pilot					
1		MARKE 500 A	8	a dentist	18 Mt to 40 Miles (18 Mt 18 Miles (18 Miles (1				
2	a chef								
	a chefa hairdresser		9	a businessm	nan or woman				
2			9		nan or woman				

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. What are the jobs? Then cover the words and examples in the table and look at the meanings. Can you say the words?

45 I can describe a job Do Unit 44 first

A Basic information 6 Where does he work? Who does she work for? a car company, e.g. Toyota She works for an airline, e.g. Cathay Pacific Glossary What hours does he work? earn receive money for the work a full-time job, e.g. 40 hours a week that you do He's got a part-time job, e.g. 15 hours a week salary money you receive every month for the work that you do long hours, e.g. 12 hours a day He works wages money you receive every from nine to five week for the work that you do How much does she earn? low If you earn low wages, you She earns a lot. Her salary is \$80,000 a year. earn less than is normal. He doesn't earn very much. He gets low wages. OPP high Complete the sentences with words and phrases in the box. office an American airline she work hours a day work for long hours 🗸 🦠 earn much iob ten to six a factory does he earn He works long hours 6 Where does _____ ? She works ten ______. 1 7 She works for _____ I work in _____. 8 She doesn't _____. Who do you? 10 I work from 5 How much _____? Complete the text. My sister's a nurse in our local ▶ hospital . She only works (1) _____-time – about 15 hours (2) _____ week – and she doesn't (3) ____ much money. Nurses in our country generally get (4) _____ wages. Her husband is a doctor, and he works very long (5) ______ - sometimes 14 hours a (6) _____ . He earns about \$90,000 a (7) _____ in our country. ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write answers to the questions. If you don't, ask someone who has a job. 1 What's your job? 2 Who do you work for? _____ 3 Where do you work?.... 4 How many hours do you work?

B What do you have to do? 6.



Daniel Alessi, architect

I design buildings1, but I also have to:

- meet² clients and discuss problems with them
- · go to meetings3 with colleagues
- write reports

I spend a lot of time talking to people.

Eliane Sotano, secretary

I only work part-time now. I have to:

- · make phone calls4
- · send letters, faxes and emails
- organize meetings for my boss
- type⁵ reports

I spend a lot of time answering the phone!

spotlight Spend time doing something

Spend time means to do something for a period of time: I **spend a lot of time** work**ing** and travell**ing**. I **spent** a week writing the report.

- There are mistakes in six sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.
 - I spent a day to meet clients. meeting
 - 1 He does a lot of phone calls.
 - 2 I have a meet this afternoon.
 - 3 She spends a lot of time type.
 - 4 She designs offices.
 - 5 Could you organizate a meeting?
 - 6 I wrote the report last night.
 - 7 We discussed about our problems.
 - 8 I answered to the phone.

Glossary

have to do something must do something

client a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for his or her work and help

discuss something talk about something NOT discuss about something

colleague a person who works with you **report** a piece of writing giving

information about work you have done send You write a letter, then you send it

send You write a letter, then you send it to the person.

organize If you organize a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.

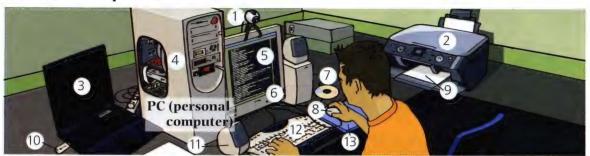
answer the phone pick up the phone when it rings and speak

6 Complete the text.

I have a really interesting new job in the office of a language school. It's a ▶ full-time	
job and I work from nine to five. I (1) new students when they arrive at the	
school, and of course, I (2) the phone and (3) letters and	
emails. I (4) a lot of time (5) phone calls to help students	
who don't speak much English. I really like my other (6) in the office – they're	
very friendly, and if I have any problems we can (7) them. I also	
(8) meetings for my boss with important (9) from other	
countries. Sometimes, I (10) to go to meetings with her. It's a nice place to wor	k

46 I can talk about using a computer

A The computer 60



- webcam
- printer
- laptop
- screen
- hard drive
- monitor
- 7 disk 8 mouse
- 9 hard copy/printout
- 10 memory stick
- 11 speaker
- keyboard
- 13 mouse mat

spotlight keep

Keep means 'to put something in a place so that you know where it is'. Where do you keep your passport? ~ I keep it in a box under the bed.

1	Correct	the	spelling	mistakes.
	-011666		Spenning	IIIIstakes

- hard copie hard copy
- 1 screan _____
- 2 maus _____
- 4 memory stik _____

- 5 moniter .____
- 6 keybord _____
 - 7 disque _____
- 3 personal commuter _____ 8 webcame ___

Complete the sentences.

- ► You type information using the keyboard . .
- 1 You listen to music using the ______.
- 2 You get _____ using the printer.
- 3 The information in your computer is on the
- 4 A small computer you can carry is called a ______.
- 5 You can keep a copy of information from your computer on a

or a ______

- 6 You move the _____ with your hand.
- 8 You read your emails on the _____.

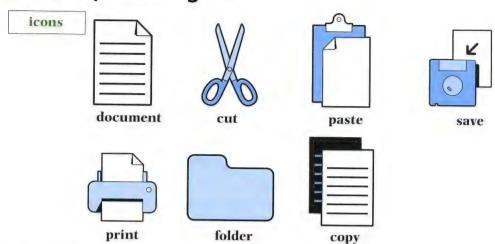
ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it? _____
- 2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it?
- 3 Have you got a laptop? If so, where do you keep it?
- 4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos?
- 5 Have you got a webcam? If so, what do you use it for?



Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.

B Word processing 60



- 1 I opened a new document and typed a letter.
- 2 I cut a sentence from the beginning of the letter.
- 3 I moved it to the end. (I clicked on the 'paste' icon.)
- 4 I saved the document in my 'letters' folder.
- 5 I printed it out. or I did a printout.
- 6 I made a backup copy on a disk.

Match 1 – 7 with a – h.

- You type __d a a paper copy of your letter.
- 1 You open _____ b a backup copy.
- 2 You print out _____ c the letter you typed in a folder.
- 3 You cut ____ d your letter or report. ✓
- 4 You click on _____ e a word or sentence from your document.
- 5 You make _____ f a sentence to a different place.
- 6 You move _____ g a new document.
- 7 You save _____ h an icon.

Glossary

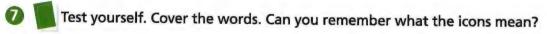
beginning the first part of something opp end (The middle is between the beginning and the end.) move something take something and put it in another place click on something



a backup copy a copy of a document or folder that you can use if you lose the first one (You make a backup copy.)

6 Complete the sentences.

- ► Which folder did you <u>save</u> the document in?
- 1 She _____ on the copy icon.
- 2 You can write 'Hello' at the ______ of an email, and 'best wishes' at the
- 3 I always _____ a backup copy of my work.
- 4 I typed a letter to my boss and then I ______ a printout.
- 5 My letter wasn't very interesting, so I ______ a few sentences.
- 6 Did you ______ your work in the correct folder?
- 7 When you ______ a new document, you can start writing.
- 8 The beginning and the end of the letter were good, but the _____ part was terrible.



I can use email and the internet

A Email 6



Have you checked your emails this morning? JAN Yes, Karl sent me an email with an attachment, and I have to forward it to Mark. LUCY And I got an email from Alice about her new car. I'll reply to it later.

True or false? Write T or F	1	True	or	false?	Write	T	or	F.
-----------------------------	---	------	----	--------	-------	---	----	----

	There are two messages in Lucy's inbox. F
1	Lucy received two junk mail messages.
2	Lucy has to send an attachment to Mark
3	There's an attachment with Alice's email.
4	Lucy sent Karl an email.
5	Lucy hasn't deleted Alice's message.
6	Lucy will reply to Walkers' email.
7	Lucy got an email from Karl.
8	Karl has not Mark's email address

Glossary

check your emails look and see if you have any email messages send PT sent If you send someone an email, you write it, and then send it to the person. get an email If someone sends you an email, you get it. (also receive) reply to an email write an answer to a message and send it

One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the	end of the sentence.
--	----------------------

	I have to the junk mailaelete
1	I must reply Jean's email.
2	Did you my message?

- 4 Have you checked your? ___
- Forward the attachment John.
- 3 I received an from Li today. ...
- 6 She Tia an email yesterday.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 How often do you send emails? 2 Who do you send them to? ____
- 3 What kind of junk mail do you receive?
- 4 Do people send you attachments? What's in them?

B The internet 60

Questions	Answers	ABOUT YOU
What's your email address?	It's louella@yahoo.co.uk	1
Do you buy things on the internet?	Yes, I buy books.	2
What's a web address for news in your country?	It's www.bbc.co.uk/news	3
Which websites do you visit most?	eBay and MySpace.	4
Have you got broadband?	Yes, it's very fast.	5
How often do you go online?	I use the internet every evening.	6
Do you visit chatrooms?	Yes, I often chat online.	7
Do you download music onto your computer?	Yes, or I download it onto my MP3 player.	8
Which search engines do you use?	I use Google and Yahoo.	9

4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write 5 or D.

>	online	on the internet	S
1	web address	email address	
2	visit a website	go to a website	
3	a search engine	a website	
4	fast	quick	
5	MP3 player	CD player	
6	download songs	copy songs from the internet	
7	go online	use the internet	
8	visit a chatroom	chat online	
9	broadband	download	
10	data	computer information	

6 Complete the sentences.

- ► Have you got an MP3 <u>Player</u> ?
- 1 We use different _____ engines.
- 2 It's not very expensive to _____ music from the internet.
- 3 Do you spend a lot of time _____ the internet?
- 4 I'd like to get _____ because my internet connection is very slow.
- 5 My favourite ______ is eBay.
- 6 You can websites or chatrooms.

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the 'about you' column in the table, or ask another student the questions.

Glossary

on the internet (NOT on internet)
web address = internet address
broadband With a broadband
connection, you can get
information from the internet
very fast.

fast (also quick) opp slow (150 kph for cars is fast; 20 kph is slow.)
online on the internet

chatroom a place on the internet where people read and reply to messages, usually about a subject, e.g. cars, music (The verb is chat.)

download If you download information from the internet, you copy it to your computer. (The information is called data.)

MP3 player a small machine you can listen to music on, e.g. an iPod

Review: Study and work

Unit 42

s Riete's daughter at ps s Jao the worst at mate 43 nplete the text with month my sister start . T	h a wor ed unive he cour every ye o take tl	rd in the correct for ersity. She's doing se (2) ear. She has to (4) hem (5)	rm. three , an	a degree years, and then wait	in computer there are three ten of essays and pass t for the results. If	n-week s exams she
s Jao the worst at mainst the start with month my sister start . T	h a wor ed univer the course	rd in the correct foersity. She's doing se (2)	orm. three	He's very of a degree years, and to	good at it. in computer there are three ten of essays and pass	ı-week s exams
s Jao the worst at man	ths? ~ N h a wor ed unive	rd in the correct foersity. She's doing	orm.	! He's very of the series !! He's very of the series !!	good at it. in computer there are three ten	-week
s Jao the worst at man	ths? ~ N h a wor ed unive	rd in the correct foersity. She's doing	orm.	! He's very of the series !! He's very of the series !!	good at it. in computer there are three ten	-week
s Jao the worst at mainst the state of the state of the text with the state of the	ths? ~ N	lo! He's the	orm.	! He's very (good at it.	ol.
s Jao the worst at mai	ths? ~ N	lo! He's the	The second secon	's at	scho good at it.	ol.
s Jao the worst at mat	orimary s ths? ~ N	school? ~ No, she's o lo! He's the	nly 4 – she'	's at ! He's very (good at it.	ol.
s Riete's daughter at p s Jao the worst at mat	orimary s ths? ~ N	school? ~ No, she's o	nly 4 – she'	's at ! He's very (good at it.	ol.
s Riete's daughter at p	orimary s	school? ~ No, she's or	nly 4 – she'	's at	scho	ol.
D'						
Are you good at chem	nistry? ~					
					school.	
stay	j	an exam				
	i	hard				
get	h	homework				
	g	university				
work	f	a job				
go	е	to school				
eave	d	at school until 18				
be good	С	secondary school 🗸	•			
take	b	a uniform				
start	a	at PE				
tch 1 – 9 with a – j.						
m		10	m		Interior materials	
p		9	d		and t	······································
		8	•			
h						
b		6	a		_	
maths						
rkhi kr t tttl	maths b h l p tch 1 – 9 with a – j. start take be good leave go work wear get do stay bid he stay on at school of you do well in you she passed the exam, Nico didn't go to a pri	maths b h l p tch 1 – 9 with a – j. start a take b be good c leave d go e work f wear g get h do i stay j nplete the dialogues with Did he stay on at school? ~ No Did you do well in your exam? She passed the exam, didn't sl Nico didn't go to a private sch Are you good at chemistry? ~	b 6 h 7 L 8 p 9 m 10 tch 1 – 9 with a – j. start a at PE take b a uniform be good c secondary school of a school until 18 go d at school until 18 go g university wear g university get h homework do i hard stay j an exam nplete the dialogues with one word. Did he stay on at school? ~ No, he Did you do well in your exam? ~ No, I did She passed the exam, didn't she? ~ No, she Nico didn't go to a private school. ~ That's right, he have you good at chemistry? ~ No, I'm	b 6 a 7 g 8 c 9 d 10 m 10	### ### ### ### #### #### ###########	Section Sec

2 Complete the words in the table.

People	Subjects	Phrases
journalist	medic	do resea
undergradu	econom	do a deg
engin	architect	write an es
law	bus studies	
politic	polit	

Unit 44

Complete the sentences with words from the box. You can use each word more than once.

	•		retired unemployed	nurse vet		nan/businessv hairdresser				
			d up or walk shop assist	. 1		irse, a police			sser, a so	oldier,
1	You prob	ably hav	ve to go to ur	niversity t	o be	THE DAY OF S. S. SC. S. S. SER. S. S. SERV. PRINCE AND ADDRESS.		***************************************		**************************************
2	You need	to be g	good with you	ur hands	to be		******* ** *** *** *** *** ***	tes 200 791 7797 000 tes Sandianistas 0003	· 144 1880 33311480333334114833333411483333	,
3	You need	You need to be good at maths or with numbers to be								
4	You probably have a lot of free time if you are									
5	You usually have to wear a uniform if you are									
6	You work in an office most of the time if you are									

Unit 45

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

	writeb_	а	the phone
1	send	b	reports ✓
2	make	C	problems
3	answer	d	clients
4	organize	е	buildings
5	discuss	f	long hours
6	work for	g	meetings
7	design	h	phone calls
8	meet	i	a computer company
9	work	j	emails

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.

2	Comp	lata	the	conver	ation
4	Comp	lete	me	conver	sation.

What's your ▶ _iob ? ~ I work (1) _____ an office.

Do you work long hours? ~ No, it's part-_____ (2).

How many hours is that? ~ Three hours (3) _____ day.

And what do you have to do? ~ I (4) _____ a lot of time sending emails.

Do you get a good salary? ~ No, I don't (5) _____ very much.

What about the people you work with? ~ Oh, my (6) _____ are very nice.

Unit 46

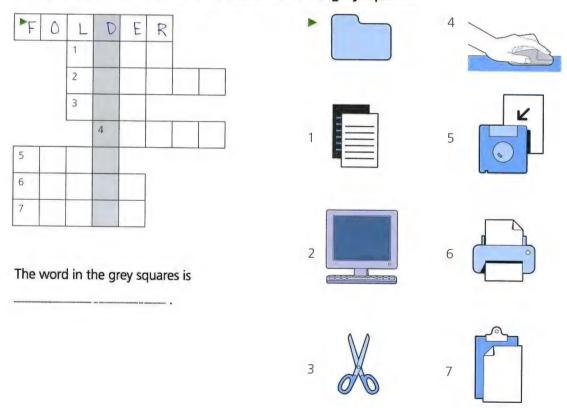
1 Complete the words and phrases.

- Do you need hard <u>copy</u>?

 Did you bring your lap ?

 It's a nice key.
- 3 I need a new mouse _____.
- 4 What's a memory____?
- 5 Did you make a back_____ copy?
- 6 The information is on the hard _____.
- 7 Can you do a print_____, please?
- 8 Have you got a ____cam?

2 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?



Unit 47

1 Find eight more words or phrases in the		Find eight	more	words	or	phrases	in	the	circle
---	--	------------	------	-------	----	---------	----	-----	--------

MP3 player	
wasternoon to the control of the con	Harmonian and the company of the com
Consider Manda Sala and Application of Commission of the Astronomy was confirmed until the Constraint Sala Sala Sala Sala Sala Sala Sala Sal	Special school control of the second school of the second property control of the second school of the second scho
944-144-164-164-164-164-164-164-164-164-1	1903/03930/0400000130100000000000000000000000000

2 Complete the crossword.

				▶R	Е	P	L	Y	
1					M				
	2				А				
		3			1				
			4		L				
-				5	А				
		6			D				
	7				D				
Character	8				R				
		9			Е				
				10	S				
			11		S				

	I must reply	to her email.
1	Send it as an	
2	Did you get my	7
3	Do you often go	7
4	l always	junk mail.
5	My computer is very	
6	How many emails do you.	?
7	Have you got	?
8	I spend hours on the	
9	Did you	my email?
10	He doesn't	email very much
11	Do you often	chatrooms?

chat
broad down
web player ✓ on
band engine in
search box junk
load room line
site mail
MP3 ✓

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.

48 I can say what I like

A Love it or hate it? 6 I love football. Hike it. I think it's OK. I don't like it. I quite like it. I don't like it very much. I really like it. I hate football. spotlight like/love/hate + -ing After like, love, and hate, use a noun, a pronoun, or -ing form. playing football. football. Hike/love/hate Hike/love/hate learning English. Who likes it more? A or B? B likes coffee more. A quite likes coffee. B really likes coffee. (A likes coffee less.) 1 A doesn't like studying. B thinks studying is OK. ____ likes studying less. 2 A likes chocolate. B loves chocolate. likes chocolate more. 3 A really likes sport. B thinks it's OK. likes sport more. 4 A doesn't like shopping very much. B doesn't like shopping. likes shopping less. 5 A hates pop music. B doesn't like pop music very much. __ likes pop music less. 6 A really likes tea. B quite likes tea. likes tea more. Correct the mistakes. Do you like watching tennis? Do you like watch tennis? I hate it chocolate. 2 They don't like to doing homework very much. 3 He doesn't like very much speaking English. 4 I like quite shopping. 5 She doesn't like drive. 6 I think tennis OK. 7 I like really going out with friends. 8 She loves watch sport. ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student your answers. I watching TV. I _____ cleaning the house. 6 I _____ writing emails. I _____ studying English. I ______ talking on the phone. I _____ driving. I _____ shopping for clothes. 8 I going to the cinema.

B It's my favourite thing 6.

meetpeopleweb.com

Name Mirko Zitec

Work I work for a TV company.

It's a wonderful job - I love it.

Study I'm learning to play the guitar.

It's good fun and my teacher's fantastic.

My favourite sport is tennis, but I also Sports

enjoy playing football.

TV/cinema I don't watch TV - it's very boring, but I'm interested in old films from the

1960s. I prefer old films to modern

ones, in fact.

Music I'm very keen on jazz; I go to a club

every Friday.

Glossarv

wonderful/fantastic very good

fun If something is fun it makes you happy. favourite Your favourite thing or person is

the one you like most.

enjoy doing something If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is enjoyable.)

boring opp interesting

prefer ... to ... like someone or something more than another person or thing

be keen on something like or be interested in something

spotlight

interesting/interested

I think modern art is interesting means 'I'm interested in modern art.' NOT I'm interesting in modern art.

Write eight more sentences using words from columns 1, 2, and 3.

	1	2	3	
>	It's ✓	not interested	boss.	It's a wonderful city.
1	1	the party	city. ✓	
2	l'm	favourite	watching TV.	
3	Му	enjoy	film is 'Tootsie'.	
4	She	fantastic	on tennis?	
5	He's a	a wonderful 🗸	in politics.	
6	Was	you keen	programme.	
7	lt's	prefers reading	good fun?	
8	Are	a boring	to writing.	

Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

	interesting	fun	interested	keen	enjoy	favourite	prefer	enjoyable 🗸
						ABOUT '	YOU	
	Do you think	flying is	s <u>enjoyable</u>	?				
1	Is learning Er	nglish go	ood	PM - 1818-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-	?			
2	Do you meat to fish?							
3							***************************************	
4	Are you in sport?						***************************************	
5							***************************************	
6	Do you		walkin	g in the co	ountryside?			
7	Do you think	history	is	?				

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 5, or ask another student.

49 | can talk about sport

A Games 60

game	place	equipment = special things you need for the game	score = the number of points or goals you have	
football	pitch	goal football	1-0 one nil $2-1$ two one or two goals to one	
rugby	pitch	rugby ball	10 – 6 ten six or ten points to six	
ice hockey	rink	goal stick puck	3-2 three two or three goals to two	
volleyball	court	net	15–10 fifteen points to ten	
tennis	court	net racket tennis ball	6-3 six three or six games to three $6-2$ is one set in tennis	
basketball	court	basket	60 – 44 sixty points to forty-four	

1	Combine words to	find games,	places, equipment and scor	res.
---	------------------	-------------	----------------------------	------

volley 🗸	pitch	tennis	ice	▶ volleyball	
football	ball 🗸	basket	nil		
racket	three	hockey	ball		

F

\bigcirc True or false? Write T or F. Change the false sentences and make them true.

	Tou score goals in basketball.		Tou score points in buskerbuil.
1	Sticks and rackets are equipment.		
2	You have a net in tennis and volleyball.	***************************************	
3	You score points in ice hockey.		
4	You play football on a court.	***************************************	
5	You play ice hockey with rackets.		
6	You play volleyball on a court.		
7	You score points in rugby.		10.10
8	You play rugby with a puck.		

Complete the sentences.

	I need to get a new tennis.	racket.	
1	I watched a fantastic	of ice hockey on TV last night.	
		are usually very tall.	
3	It was six	to four to Federer in the second	***************************************
4	What was the football	? ~ It was three	(3–0).
		is next to the tennis	

B Football 6

ITALY	
Cagliari 1	Torino 1
Lazio 3	Livorno 1
Palermo 3	AS Roma 3
Sampdoria 1	Parma 2
Treviso 1	Fiorentina 3
Played Friday: AC Milan 1	Inter Milan 0

League ta	ble						
	played	won	drawn	lost	goals for	goals against	points
AC Milan	34	24	9	1	63	22	81
Inter Milan	34	24	4	6	75	27	76
AS Roma	34	22	5	7	61	26	71

On Friday, AC Milan won their important match against Inter Milan. Khaladze scored the only goal in the 70th minute. This means they are still top of the table but now lead Inter by five points. On Saturday, Cagliari could

only **draw** their match **with** Torino. At Palermo, Roma were leading 3 - 0 at **half-time**, but Palermo came back in the **second half** to make the **final score** 3 - 3. Lazio **beat** Livorno 3 - 1, while Treviso **lost** 3 - 1 **to** Fiorentina.

4	Correct	the	bold	words.

- ► Shevchenko did two goals. scored
- 1 Lazio have a play next Saturday.
- 2 Inter are playing with Parma.
- 3 AC Milan are number one of the table. _____
- 4 Treviso lost 3 1 with Fiorentina.
- 5 Parma beated Sampdoria.
- 6 Milan win their game last week.
- 7 Palermo draw with AS Roma.
- 8 Lazio won Livorno 3 1.

5 Complete the sentences.

- ► They scored in the second half
- 1 It's an important ______ next week.
- 2 We are playing ______ Valencia.
- 3 Seville ______1 2 to Barcelona.
- 4 Bilbao ______ 2 2 _____ Villareal.
- 5 It was 0 0 at half-___
- 6 On Sunday Espanyol _____ Real Betis 2 1.
- 7 Ronaldinho ______ the goal.
- 8 We _____ our last match 4 1.
- 9 They were ______ 1 0 at half-time.
- 10 What was the final _____?

Glossary

match a game between two teams, e.g. Parma and Lazio

against One player or team plays against another player or team.

score get a goal or points in a

top of the table/league number one in the table/league

lead be in front of others in a game or sport

half-time a period of rest between the first and second half

first half/second half The game is in two halves. (Each half is 45 minutes long.)

final score the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 3-2

spotlight Irregular verbs

win PT won

We won 2-1 against Sampdoria.

beat someone PT beat

We **beat** Sampdoria 2 – 1.

draw with someone PT drew PP drawn

We drew 3 - 3 with Roma.

lose to someone PT **lost** We **lost** 1 - 0 to Milan.

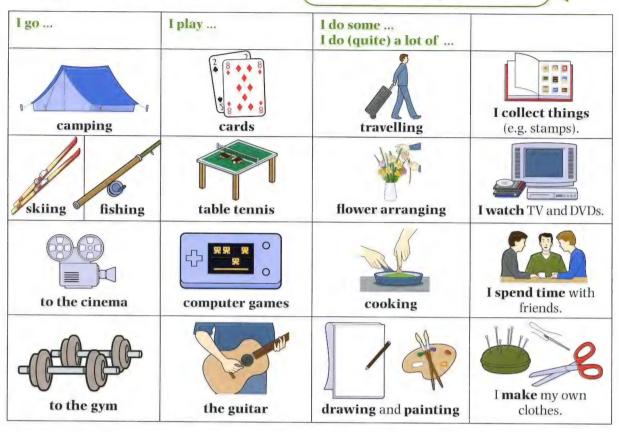
6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Look at the football scores in a newspaper this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

▶ Bayern Munich beat Borussia Dortmund 1-0. Ballack scored in the 34th minute.

50 I can talk about my free time

A Common activities 6

What do you do in your free time?



- Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?
 - watch TV inside
 - go to the gym another place
 - go fishing

 - 3 do flower arranging ______ 8
- 4 do some drawing
- 5 go camping
- 6 play cards _____
 - 2 do a lot of cooking ______ 7 do a lot of travelling _____
 - play computer games _____
- Complete the sentences with go, play, do, collect, or spend.
 - ► I never play cards.

 - 2 My brother _____ old clocks.
 - 3 I'd like to _____ the guitar.

 - 4 She _____ a lot of cooking.
- Do you _____ table tennis?
- 1 Do you often _____ to the cinema? 6 Do you _____ time with your family?
 - 7 They _____ skiing every February.
 - 8 She _____ quite a lot of travelling in spring.
 - 9 She _____ all her own dresses.
- ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Write 'yes' by the ones you do now. Tick (✓) the ones you would like to do. Put a cross (X) by the ones you aren't interested in.
- Test yourself. Cover the words and say the names of the activities.

Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many hobbies. Older people enjoy gardening, fishing, and repairing cars. For younger people, there are various clubs in school where children can learn many activities. Popular hobbies include sport, playing musical instruments, computers, listening to music, cooking, and collecting different things.



Alexandra: "I like listening to rock and classical music, I also

like playing football with my friends. But my favourite hobby is **shooting** (you can see me in the

photo), and I'm quite good at it."

Veronica: "I have many hobbies: cooking, reading, drawing,

and **singing** in the shower. My favourite is drawing. It's wonderful to see pictures appearing on paper."

Dima: "I play the guitar, and I can **sing** Russian and English

songs. I'm good at swimming, snowboarding and

skiing. I also like travelling very much."

Glossary

hobby PLURAL hobbies an activity that you like doing in your free time

gardening working in your garden

repair cars make cars work when they have a problem

various (places) a number of different (places)

club a group of people who do something together

popular If something is **popular**, many people like it.

musical instrument a thing used for playing music, e.g. a guitar

listen to something



classical music e.g. music by Bach and Mozart (NOT classic music)

read



sing



Robbie Williams is a singer. He sings songs.

	_			_			
5	True	or	talse?	Correct	the	talse	sentences.

	Alexandra doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.					
1	Older people enjoy gardening.					
2	Playing a musical instrument isn't popular in Russia.					
3	Dima plays the piano.					
4	Veronica's favourite hobby is reading.					
5						
6	Veronica's quite good at shooting.					
7	Veronica dances in the shower.					
8	Younger people like repairing cars					

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write	your answers or ask another student
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

1	What's your favourite hobby?
2	What hobbies are popular with older people?

5 Can you play a musical instrument? If so, what?

6 Are you a good singer? ______

A Pop and rock 60

Arctic Monkeys are a four-piece band from Sheffield, England. They first became well known in 2004 when people were able to download their music from the internet. Their first two singles went to number 1 in the UK singles chart in 2005, and their first album, 'Whatever People Say I Am, That's What I'm Not', sold over 350,000 copies in its first week.

The group are: Alex Turner, who is the lead singer and plays the guitar, Jamie Cook and Nick O'Malley, who both play the guitar, and Matthew Helder, who is the drummer and also sings.



What can you remember? Circle the correct answer.

- ► There are four/five people in the band.
- 1 They first became well known in 2004/2005.
- 2 People were able/unable to download music in 2004.
- 3 Their first two/three singles went to number 1.
- 4 Their first single/album sold over 350,000 copies in the first week.
- 5 Alex Turner/Jamie Cook is the lead singer.
- 6 Matthew Helder plays the guitar/drums.

Complete the sentences.

	Paul McCartney plays the guitar .
1	Another word for a band is a
2	The most important singer is the singer.
3	Someone who plays the drums is the
4	A CD with one song on it is a
5	A CD with about ten songs on it is an
6	The is the list of singles that sell most in a week.
7	The Beatles first became well in the 1960s.
8	You can music from the internet.

Glossary

band e.g. Coldplay, Franz Ferdinand, U2 (also group) well known SYN famous be able to If you are able to do something, you can do it. opp unable download music copy music from the internet onto a computer, MP3 player, etc. single one song on a CD number 1 the single that sells the most in one week the singles chart the list of pop music singles that sell the most in one week album a number of songs, usually about 10, on a CD lead singer the most important singer

3	ABOUT '	YOU	Write	your	answers,	or	ask	another	student.
---	---------	-----	-------	------	----------	----	-----	---------	----------

1	Who's your favourite group?
2	Who's in the band, and what instruments do they play?
3	When did they first become well known?
4	What's the name of one of their singles?
5	What's the name of one of their albums?
6	What's your favourite song by this band?

B Classical music 6



A concert of classical music.



Sir Simon Rattle, conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra. by Mozart.



Vanessa Mae, violinist, playing a violin concerto



Pianist Sviatoslav Richter, Opera singer Cecilia playing one of Beethoven's piano sonatas.



Bartoli, performing in Cosi Fan Tutte.



Cellist Yo Yo Ma, playing the cello concerto by the English composer, Edward Elgar.

	spotlight by
	We say a book by (Tolstoy a song by (Robbie Williams), a symphony by (Mozart), a painting by (Picasso), a film by (Martin Scorsese), etc.
The second second	

4) C	orrect the spelling mistakes	i.						
>	violinista violinist	3	clasical	NA BANGGORMANAMAN MANAMAN AN	6	composor		
1	conducter	4	conciert	EEE000a3388440000955a3300000000	7	performe		
2	orchestre	5	celo	1000-1400-1400-170	8	pianiste		
5 c	omplete the sentences.							
-	Music by Bach, Brahms or Mo	zart	is classical	music.				
1	A large group of people who play classical music together is called an							
2	The person who stands in fro	nt of	f them is the					
3	A person who plays the piano	o is a	411444444444444444444444444444444444444	-				
4	A person who plays the violin	is a	***************************************	манадарушнага ·				
5	A person who plays the cello	is a .	······································	**************				
6	A person who sings opera is a	BEEREISS shaannan na sanan		•				
7	A person who writes music is							
8	'Carmen' is an opera	*************	Bizet.					
9	Last night we went to a classi		cido	o Domingo was				
	with the	Long	don Symphony O	rchestra. It wa	as f	antastic.		

Cover the texts and look at the pictures. What can you see in each one?

52 I can talk about films

A Describing films 6.



A thriller is often exciting.



A comedy is funny.



A war film is often violent.



A love story is romantic.



A action film is exciting.



A horror film is frightening.



A cartoon is often funny.

spotlight	What kind of?
What kind	of film is it?
~ It's a thrill	
What kind	of music do you like
~ Rock musi	

- Make kinds of film from the letters.
 - rwa milf war film 1 rillerht
 - 2 moyecd
 - 3 tanico ifml

- 4 onacrot
- vole rostv
- 6 rohror limf

- Match 1–5 with a–f.
 - ▶ an exciting d a war film
 - 1 a romantic ____ b comedy
 - 2 a frightening ___ c love story
 - 3 a violent
- d action film 🗸
- 4 a funny
 - e thriller an exciting ____ f horror film

- Write down new words in a notebook.
- Write one adjective to describe each picture.













Test yourself. Cover the words and name the different kinds of film in the pictures at the top of the page.

B What's on?



Mercedes (M) and Enrique (E) are talking.

- What's on at the cinema?
- There's a film on called Rumor Has It. E
- M Mmm. What kind of movie is it?
- E It's a romantic comedy. It's about a woman and her relationship with her boyfriend and family. It's had good reviews.
- OK. Who's in it?
- Er. it stars Kevin Costner and Jennifer Aniston.
- Oh, I like Kevin Costner he's a good actor. Who's
- Rob Reiner. He made When Harry Met Sally. E
- Right. And where's it on?
- The Odeon.
- M OK. Let's go and see it.

Glossary

What's on? = 'What film can we see?'

cinema a place where you see films movie a film

It's about ... = The subject is ...

review an opinion of a film in a newspaper or on the radio. TV or internet

star be one of the main actors in a film

(The person is a star.)

actor e.g. Kevin Costner or Jennifer Aniston

(A female actor can also be called an actress.)

director person who makes a film, e.g. Steven Spielberg

Where's it on? = 'Where can we see it?'

see a film at the cinema (NOT watch a film at the cinema)

5	Complete	the	conversation.

A		What	S	On	at	the	cinema?
---	--	------	---	----	----	-----	---------

- B A film called The Constant Gardener
- A Oh, what (1) _____ of film is it?
- B It's a thriller.
- A What's it (2) _____?
- B I'm not sure, but it's had good
- A Oh, and who's (4)______it?

- B It (5) _____ Ralph Fiennes and Rachel Weiss.
- A They're both good (6) _____. Who's the (7) _____?
- B A Brazilian called Fernando Meirelles.
- A OK. And where's it (8) _____?
- B At the ABC cinema.
- A Let's go and (9) _____ it.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- 2 What was the last film you saw? ______
- 3 Where was it on?
- 4 Who are the stars of the film?
- 5 Who's the director?
- 6 What's it about?

53 I can talk about the media



A What is the media? 6.

Word	Example	Meaning
media	The media often write about famous people.	TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet
magazine	Do you read women's magazines ?	Something you can buy every week or month, often with stories and coloured photos e.g. <i>Time</i> , <i>Hola</i> .
opinion	What's your opinion of the events?	what you think about something
report	Journalists report the news from all over the world.	give information on the news; the person is a reporter (= journalist)
event	The Olympic Games is a very big event .	something important that happens. It can be good or bad.
die	Fortunately, nobody died in the accident.	stop living
war	The two countries were at war for ten years.	If a country is at war , it is fighting with another country; when a war ends, there is peace .
disaster	The tsunami was a terrible disaster .	something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die
celebrity (plural celebrities)	There were a lot of celebrities at the first night of the film.	famous person, usually from TV, film or sport
advertisement (also advert)	There are too many adverts on TV and in the papers.	text, picture or short film which tries to sell you something

Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

	What do the media say about him?	What does the advert say about him?	D
1	There is peace between the two countries.	There is war between the two countries.	
2	What's your opinion of the news?	What do you think of the news?	
3	It was a great event.	It was a great advertisement.	
4	He is reporting from Seoul.	He is giving the news from Seoul.	
5	I read it in an article.	I read it in an advertisement.	
6	She's a TV celebrity.	She's on TV a lot.	
7	Where did he live?	Where did he die?	

2	Complete the	text with	words from	n the table	in the	correct form	٦.
---	--------------	-----------	------------	-------------	--------	--------------	----

The media	is TV, radio, newspapers, (1)	, and the internet. The media
(2)	on important (3) from around	the world; for example,
(4)	like the Asian tsunami, or (5)	between different countries. As well as
reporting the nev	vs, the media give their (6) of	events round the world. And reporters
also like to write	about (7) such as Tom Cruise	and Angelina Jolie.

3 Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Say the words.

B Your media 60

,	1	adia accastiana atua		Glossary		
	1 2 3	Why do you read a newspaper? a to find out what has happened b because it has interesting articles c for the sports results d for the business news What do you watch on TV? a the news b soaps c films d nothing much What do you listen to on the radio? a the news b music programmes c the weather forecast d nothing much Do you believe what you read or hear in the news?	newspaper e.g. The Times, The Herald Tribune, Le Monde (also paper) find out get information or facts happen take place, e.g. 'We don't know what wil happen tomorrow.' article a piece of writing in a paper or magazine on TV/on the radio Nor in TV/in the radio, but in the paper the news a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world soap a story on TV two or three times a week about the lives and problems of a group of people nothing much nothing important programme a TV or radio show, e.g. the news weather forecast a description of the weather for the next few days believe think that something is true all = 100%, most = 80 - 95%, some = 30 - 50%, none = 0%			
		a yes, all of it		spotlight watch, see, listen, hear		
		b yes, most of it c yes, some of it d no, none of it		We watch TV, but we see or watch a programme. We listen to the radio, but we hear or listen to a programme.		
4	C	ircle the correct answer.				
	•	See — Ito the film.	5	See the programme/article on TV.		
	1	Read an article on/in the paper.	6	Did you hear –/to the sports results?		
	2	Let's listen to the/a news.	7	I heard all -/of it on/in the radio.		
	3	Watch a programme in/on TV.	8	Don't believe/listen what you see.		
	4	Find -/out what has happened.	9	I watched most -/of it.		
5	C	omplete the dialogues.				
		I always <u>read</u> a paper at the wee	ekend	. ~ But do you read <u>all</u> of it?		
	1	Did you TV last night? ~ Ye	s, I	a programme about dogs.		
	2	I read the story but I don't	it's tru	ue. ~ No, of it is true. It's all false.		
	3	Have you heard the? ~ No.				
	4			g? ~ Yes, I the 8 o'clock news.		
	5	What's in the this morning				
	6	Have you seen the weather				
	7	What did you on TV? ~ Oh	, noth	ning		

6 ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. Ask another student the questions.

Review: Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1 Write the phrases in the correct column.

1 🙂	2 🙂	3	4 ::	5
I really like it.			I think it's quite boring.	

I really like it. 🗸

I think it's quite boring.

I love it.

I think it's OK.

I really hate it.

It's my favourite thing.

I quite enjoy it.

I'm not very keen on it.

I don't like it very much.

It's wonderful.

I think it's fantastic.

I'm not very interested in it.

It's quite enjoyable.

2 Circle the correct word.

- ► Who is/does your favourite actor?
- 1 My mother isn't interested/interesting in tennis.
- 2 Our teacher is very keen in/on classical music.
- 3 Do you enjoy drive/driving?

- 4 We prefer swimming to/that running.
- 5 I think that film's very bored/boring.
- 6 Sue quite likes/likes quite studying English.

Unit 49

1 Look at the games in the box. Write the answers below.

	football	rugby	ice hockey	volleyball	tennis	basketball			
			(C) Y	1					
1	These gar	mes use a l	round	ball: ▶	football,				
2	Players us	e their har	nds more than t	heir feet in th	ese games:				
	This game					o) sticks			

2 Read Chelsea's results for last year, and complete the sentences below.

	played	won	drawn	lost	goals for	goals against	points
Chelsea	38	29	4	5	72	22	91
Chelsea ▶	played	38	(1)		. They won 2	29, they (2)	four,
and they (3)	***************************************						, and finished
the season ((6)						

Unit 50

1 0	omplete the dialogues.			
	Does he like gardening	? ~ Yes, he's always in the	e garden.	
1			I every year.	
2	Does she like cooking? ~ Yes			
3	Does he have a hobby? ~ Yes			
4	Do you play a musical		and and pixes.	
5	Do you listen to		eally like Mozart	
6			r to time with friends.	
2 Co	omplete answer 'd' in each our country.	question. Then choose	the answers that are true for you	or
1	I enjoy			
		c collecting things d	time with friends	
2	My favourite activity of these		and menas	
	a travelling b camping c		to the gym	
3	I'm quite good at	9	to the gym	
	a swimming b cooking c	drawing d computer		
4	I would like to		To an analysis of the second s	
	a paint well b play the guit	ar c sing well d	the piano	
5	is popular in my country.	a. congre	the plane	
	a Table tennis b Skiing c	Fishing d Flower		
	it 51 at the words from the circle	e into two groups. Give	each group a title.	
*****	AMALAMANA (1970)	en-satisfacence process and the same state of th	band 🗸	
Ь	and		violin drummer	
***********		hetendarian construction of the state of the	orchestra cello	
***************************************			lead singer composer	
-		And the second s	a single conductor	
		and the control of th	guitar	
		### 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1		
2 W	rite a different name to co			
1	ministration and the statement of the st			
2	Macrossage at Section (Control of Section (Con	is lead singer v	vith	
3				
4	The	orchestra e	comes from my country.	
5	Management of the second secon	is a great piani	st.	
6	Management of States	by	is one of my favourite albums.	
-7	is numbe			
8	commenced in the second	is the drumme	r with	

Unit 52

1 Complete the sentences.

It's an action	film and it's very exciting .
	film and it's very v
	and it's very f
	film and it's quite f
	and it's very e
	story and it's very r

2

Co	omplete the conversation.
В	There's a good film on at the Odeon cinema. It's called <i>Brokeback Mountain</i> . I've never heard of it. What's it (1) ? A relationship, a love relationship, between two cowboys.
	Oh. Who's (2)it?
Α	It (3) Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger.
В	Oh, I like Jake Gyllenhaal. He's a very good (4)
	Yeah, and it's had great (5) in all the papers. The (6) is Ang Lee He made Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon. Would you like to go and (7) it?

Unit 53

1 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it, and where does it go?

I usually buy/newspaper every day to find what has happened, but yesterday I listened the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it TV. As usual most it was bad news: more than twenty people in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting about a television news who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

	A
1	*** - *********************************
2	. 1. 10. 100
3	**************************************
4	AL MANDROSPHILIPPING TO . A AMADEMPENDENCE TO S. DO GARDANA MANDROSPHI
5	***************************************
6	
7	

2 Match 1-6 with a-f.

- an opinion 2 a news report _____
- 3 an event
- 4 an advertisement
- 5 the media
- 6 celebrities _____



54 I can arrange a holiday 6.

Things you might do or arrange before you go abroad on holiday:

- · book the flight
- book the accommodation
- · find your passport
- get a visa
- · get travel insurance
- · get foreign currency
- · pack your suitcase
- hire a car

spotlight

might + verb

Might means 'it is possible that' or 'perhaps'.
Might is the same in all forms.
You might be ill on holiday.
He might forget his passport.
It might be cold in March.

Circle the correct word.

- ► I have to get/find a visa.
- 1 We went abroad/holiday last summer.
- 2 I had to hire/arrange accommodation.
- 3 We might/have go to Japan in June.
- 4 I need to hire/get travel insurance.
- 5 Can we pack/hire a car here?
- 6 I must hire/find my passport.
- 7 Have you made/packed your suitcase?
- 8 Did you book/have the flight to Paris?

Glossary

arrange something plan and organize something go abroad go to another country on holiday If you are on holiday, you are not at

book arrange the plane ticket, e.g. buy it before

work and you are away from home.

you travel

flight a journey by plane
accommodation a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
find look and see where something is
passport



visa a document or note in your passport
which means you can travel to certain countries
travel insurance You pay a company for travel
insurance so they will help you if you lose
something or are ill on holiday
foreign of another country
currency the money of a country, e.g. \$ (dollars)
or € (euros)
pack put clothes in a suitcase
suitcase



hire pay to use something for a short time, e.g. a car, a bike

2 Complete the text.

I'm going on holiday	for two weeks this Saturda	y. I wanted to go (1) t	his
year, perhaps to the Far East, and I finally decided to go to China. I booked the (2)			
with China Airlines. I needed (3)too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in			
Beijing. I found a nice one and (4) to stay there for the first week. I also had to (5)			
a visa,	and I got some foreign (6)	– Chinese Yuan. I paid €30 for	,
travel (7)	; you never know, I (8)	be ill or lose my things. Tomorro)W,
I'm going to (9)	my suitcase. I know I put r	ny passport somewhere, but where? I'll	
have to (10)	it before Saturday!		



Test yourself. Cover the list of things you might do before you go abroad. Can you remember the phrases and write your own list?

55 I can book a hotel room

A Describing a hotel 60

travelog.com

Atlanta Hotel (Vilnius, Lithuania)

We stayed in this hotel near the Old Town where we had a beautiful bedroom with good facilities: minibar¹, internet access², satellite TV³ and air conditioning. The hotel has a great gym⁴. There was 24-hour room service and the staff were very helpful with tourist information. The café bar was a very pleasant place to meet other guests, and we had a delicious breakfast there too. We recommend both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short stay.



Circle the right answer.

- ► The bar was pleasant/delicious.
- 1 The staff/guests work in the hotel.
- 2 It was a lovely hotel so I recommended/didn't recommend it to my sister.
- 3 The dinner was delicious/helpful.
- 4 A lot of tourists/guests visit our city.
- 5 Internet access and satellite TV are room service/facilities.
- 6 You can get drinks from the gym/minibar.

2 Complete the questions.

		ABOUT YOU
	What was the last hotel you stayed _in?	
1	How long did you there?	
2	Were the helpful?	
3	Did the room have good, e.g. internet access?	
4	Did it have a with drinks in your room?	
5	Did it haveTV?	
6	Did it have air and central?	
7	Did you talk to other in the hotel?	
2	Would you this hotel to other people?	

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.



Glossary

stay in a hotel live for a short time in a hotel (also a stay)

facilities things you can use, e.g. internet, gym air conditioning makes a room colder, central heating makes a room warmer

room service when a waiter brings food or drinks to your room

staff U people who work for a company helpful wanting to help

tourist someone who goes to a place on holiday **guest** a person staying in a hotel or your home **delicious** very good to eat

recommend say something is good

B Booking a room 60



double room



single room





twin room

shower

Katja (K) is talking to the receptionist (R) at a hotel.

- Hotel Metropole. Can I help you?
- K Oh, good morning. I'd like to book a double room with a bathroom for May 24th, please.
- R That's fine. All our bedrooms are en suite.
- K Right, and how much is that?
- R It's €60 a night, and breakfast is included in the price.
- That's great. And has the hotel got parking? K
- R No, I'm afraid not.
- K Oh, what a shame. OK, well, never mind. I'll take it.
- R Right, can I have your credit card details please?...

Answer the questions about the dialogue.

- Is Katja staying for two nights? No
- 1 Does she want a room for one person?
- 2 Has the room got a bathroom?
- 3 Is she happy about the price?
- 4 Will she pay more for breakfast?
- 5 How much is the room for one night?
- 6 Can she leave her car at the hotel?
- 7 Is she angry about the parking?
- 8 Do they want her credit card number? ___

Glossary

book a room ask a hotel to keep a room for you for a future date en suite a bedroom with a bathroom

right OK

€60 a night = €60 for one night included If breakfast is included. you don't pay any more for it. (that's) great fine; very good parking a place to leave a car I'm afraid not = I'm sorry, but no. never mind = it isn't important details information, e.g. the card number

spotlight

That's a shame/ What a shame

You say this when someone tells you something which is a little sad, or you don't want to hear. I can't come this evening.

- ~ Oh, what a shame.
- ~ Oh. that's a shame.

Complete the dialogue.

	Regent Hotel, can I help you?	
В	Dh, hello, I'd (1) to (2) a room for two next Tuesday, please.	,
Α	s that a (3) ?	
В	A double, please.	
Α	All our rooms are (5), with bath or (6)	
	hat's (7) How much is the room?	
Α	r's €45 (8) night, and breakfast is (9)	
В	DK, and does the room have (10) conditioning?	
Α	m (11) not.	
В	hat's a (12) Oh, well, never (13) I'll take the room	n.
Α	14) Could you give me your credit card (15), pleas	se

_, please?

56 I can communicate in an airport

A Check-in 60

When passengers¹ get to the airport, they put their luggage² (suitcase³ and bag⁴) on a trolley⁵ and go to the check-in desk⁶. There, they show their ticketⁿ and passport, and put their luggage on the scales⁶. They can take hand luggage³ on the plane with them. The person at the check-in desk often asks, 'Do you want a window seat¹o or an aisle seat¹¹?' They give the passenger a boarding card¹², and they often say, 'Have a good flight.'



12

Complete the words.

▶ p	<u>a</u>	5	5	enger
-----	----------	---	---	-------

$$4 h_ndl_gg_ge$$

Time now: 10.30

$$9 t_ck_t$$

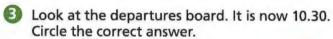


Test yourself. Cover the text. Name the things in the picture.

B Departures 60

Departures from Bristol Airport

Flight	Destination	Departure time	Notes
EZY 6025	Barcelona	10.25	departed
KL 1048	Amsterdam	10.35	flight closed
BA 4021	Munich	10.50	last call gate 5
FR 483	Dublin	11.00	boarding gate 7
BA 7643	Milan	11.05	delayed until 11.50
BA 4084	Paris CDG	11.35	check-in desk 22



- ► Can you get on the Dublin flight now? (Yes/No
- 1 Can you get on the Barcelona plane now? Yes/No
- 2 Can you get on the Amsterdam plane now? Yes/No
- 3 Can you get on the Munich plane now? Yes/No
- 4 Is the Milan flight on time? Yes/No
- 5 How many flights are boarding now? 1/2/3/4/5

Glossary

departed If a plane has departed, it has left the airport. (The noun is departure.)

flight closed = You can't get
 on the plane now.

last call = You must get on the plane now.

gate the place where you leave the airport building to get on the plane

boarding If the flight is boarding, people are getting on the plane.

delayed If a plane is delayed, it is going to be late. (It isn't on time.)

		Flight	KL 1048 to	Amsterdam is now closed		
	1			_ for passengers on fligh	t BA4021	to Munich. Please go to
	•	Mineral Control of the Control of th		,		
	2			ublin: this flight is now		
	3			7643 to Milan is .		
	4			084 to Paris please go to		desk 22.
	5	Flight BA 7643 to M	lilan will now	at 1	1.50.	
C	T	ake-off and	landing	960		
		1 4				
		TO GOLLIZA				
	Vo	ou get on the plane ar	ad	The last terms of the control of the	-44-5.3	
		sten your seat belt.	ılu	The plane takes off.		The plane lands and you get off .
						you get on.
	- Constitution					4
		7900				
		u go through passp				You go through customs
	30	meone checks your	passport.	from baggage reclai	m . a	and leave the terminal .
5	PL	at the phrases in or	der. Write	numbers in the boxes		
5	Pu			numbers in the boxes.	g get on	the plane
5	a	collect your luggage	d 1	the plane lands		the plane
5	a b	collect your luggage go through customs	d d	the plane lands	h the pla	ne takes off
5	a	collect your luggage	d d	the plane lands	h the pla	
6	a b c	collect your luggage go through customs	d 1	the plane lands	h the pla	ne takes off
6	a b c	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt	d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d d	the plane lands	h the pla	ne takes off
6	a b c	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt omplete the phrase You leave the term	d the grant of the	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal	h the pla	ne takes off
6	a b c	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term The plane takes off a	d fe general ferminal	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal	h the pla i someo	ne takes off ne checks your passport
6	a b c Cc	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term The plane takes off a	d the grant of the	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal	h the pla i someo	ne takes off ne checks your passport
6	a b c C c 1 1 2	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term The plane takes off a You fasten You go through	d fe general description of the second descr	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal and	h the pla	nne takes off nne checks your passport
6	a b c C C C 2 3	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term The plane takes off a You fasten You go through You collect your	d the grant of less.	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal and and and from	h the pla	ne takes off ne checks your passport
6	a b c C C C 2 3 4 5	go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term. The plane takes off a You fasten You go through You collect your Passengers	d fe general ferminal	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal and from and and	h the pla	nne takes off nne checks your passport the plan
6	a b c C C C 2 3 4 5	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term The plane takes off a You fasten You go through You collect your Passengers	d to e g	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal and from and and and and and	h the pla	nne takes off ne checks your passport the plan
6	a b c C C C 2 3 4 5	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term. The plane takes off a You fasten You go through You collect your Passengers How often do you tree as the collect your How often do you tree go through How often do you tree go through You collect your How often do you tree go through How often do you tree go through How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through Collections How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How often do you tree go through You write as How You write as How You write as How You write	d to e get f less. and nswers to the avel by plane	the plane lands get off the plane eave the terminal and from and and ne questions, or ask and	h the pla	nne takes off ne checks your passport the planudent.
6	a b c C C C 2 3 4 5 5 AE 1 2	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term. The plane takes off a You fasten You go through You collect your Passengers BOUT YOU Write as How often do you to the You do you do in the Poster Post of the You what do you do in the You you do in the You you do in the You with you will you you do in the You will you	d to e get f less. In and	the plane lands get off the plane get off the plane eave the terminal and from and	h the plati someo	nne takes off ne checks your passport the plan udent.
6	a b c C C C 2 3 4 5 5 AE	collect your luggage go through customs fasten your seat belt complete the phrase You leave the term. The plane takes off a You fasten You go through You collect your Passengers How often do you to the You you like to sit in a you hastom You you like to sit in a you hastom You you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you seat to hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like to sit in a you hast do you like you like you you like you like you like you hast do you like you li	d to e get f less. and nswers to the avel by plane the airport what window sea	the plane lands get off the plane get off the plane eave the terminal and from and ne questions, or ask are en your flight is delayed? t or an aisle seat?	h the pla i someo	nne takes off ne checks your passport the planudent.

57 I can describe a beach holiday 6.

We spent ten days in Hyères, a holiday **resort** in the south of France. We **flew** to Nice, then **got a bus** to Hyères. We **rented an apartment** near the **beach**¹, and that's where we spent most mornings. I was happy to **lie** on the beach and **sunbathe** in my new **swimming costume**²; my husband preferred a T-shirt and long **shorts**³. He went swimming a lot – the **sea**⁴ was lovely and warm. We had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for **an hour or so**. In the late afternoon we usually **went for a walk**, and in the evening, had dinner in one of the restaurants near the beach. It was a **perfect** holiday.



Glossary

resort a place where a lot of people go for a holiday fly PT flew travel by plane get a bus travel by bus (also take a bus)

rent an apartment, house, etc. pay to use an apartment, house, etc.

apartment rooms you rent for a
holiday (also flat)

lie PT lay the woman in the picture is lying on the beach sunbathe take off your clothes and sit or lie in the sun relax do nothing and enjoy yourself

an hour or so about an hour go for a walk have a short walk to enjoy yourself perfect If something is perfect it can't be better.

1	Write	the	words	for	the	meanings.
---	-------	-----	-------	-----	-----	-----------

- 2 Women often wear one on the beach. s_____c____
- 3 Men often wear these on the beach. s
- 4 Rooms you rent for a holiday. a_____
- 5 You can swim in this, and it's not a pool. s._____
- 6 Very good; cannot be better. p____
- 7 Do nothing and enjoy yourself. r_____
- 8 Lie in the sun in a swimming costume or shorts. s_____

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I went for a swim in the <u>sea</u>.
- 1 We sat on the _____ and looked at the sea.
- 2 We _____ a bus to the mountains, and then _____ for a walk.
 3 We _____ an apartment in a small holiday _____ near Malaga.
- 4 It takes an hour or ______ to get to the beach.
- 5 We spent two days near Paris, then ______ from Charles de Gaulle Airport to New York.
- 6 I want to relax, so I'm just going to ______ on the beach and sunbathe.



Test yourself. Cover the text and name 1 – 4 in the picture.

58 I can describe a sightseeing holiday 6.

Word	Example	Meaning
map	You can get a map in Tourist Information.	
guide guidebook	Our guide was very good. A guidebook is useful.	A person (guide) or book (guidebook) which describes a place for tourists.
typical	Look – a typical tourist, with a guidebook and camera.	A typical thing is a good example of its kind.
go sightseeing	We went sightseeing yesterday.	go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places
art gallery	I'm going to an art gallery this afternoon.	a place where people can look at paintings
visit museums or art galleries etc.	You should visit the British Museum in London.	visit go and see a place for a short time museum a place where you look at old or interesting things
look round	I want to look round the town.	walk round a place to see it
go on a (guided) tour	We went on a tour of the old town.	a short visit to a town, museum, etc. sometimes with a guide
get lost	I got lost so I asked for help.	If you get lost or are lost , you don't know where you are.
take photos	I took lots of photos.	

Circle	the	correct	Word
CITCIC	CITC	COLLECT	WOI U.

- art museum(gallery)
- 4 make/take photos
- 1 go/do sightseeing
- 5 guide/guided tour
- 2 guide map/book
- 6 go on/make a tour
- 3 visit/go a museum

spotlight should + verb

You should go to that museum means 'it is a good idea to go to that museum'. Should is the same in all forms.

If you go to Peru, you **should** visit Machu Pichu. It's fantastic.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ► We went on a guided tour.
- 1 She _____ a lot of photos of some ____ old French villages.
- 2 You ______ go and look _____ the museums they're very interesting.
- 3 I ______lost because I didn't have a _____.
- 4 We went to the _____ gallery to see those Picasso paintings.
- 5 We ______ on a tour of the centre and the _____ was interesting and funny.

B ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

When you visit new towns/cities, do you:

- 2 take a map with you? _____ 6 look round the shops? _____
- 3 buy a guidebook? _____
- 4 take photos?
- 1 go sightseeing? ______ 5 visit museums and art galleries? _____

 - 7 often get lost? _____
 - 8 go on a guided tour?

59 I can use the bank and post office

A At the bank 60

Questions	Answers	Meaning
Can I use this card in this cash machine?	If it's a Visa card, yes.	also ATM
Where can I change dollars into euros?	In a bank, a hotel, or a bureau de change.	change (money) e.g. give someone dollars and get the same in euros
Is there a bureau de change near here?	Yes, there's one at the station.	an office where you can change money
Which currency do I need for Argentina?	You need pesos.	the money that a country uses, e.g. dollars in the USA
I've got Japanese yen. What's the exchange rate for the euro?	It's 142 yen to the euro.	exchange rate how much money from one country you can buy with money from another country, e.g. US\$10 = €12.40
Where do I sign this?	Just here.	
What commission do you charge?	We charge 1%. (% = per cent)	commission the money you pay a bank, e.g. for changing currency charge ask someone to pay a certain price for something

1	Match	1 –	5	with	a-	- f	to	make	questions.
---	-------	-----	---	------	----	-----	----	------	------------

► Where can I change my euros __f__ a for Brazil? 1 What currency do I need _____ b for the peso? 2 What commission _____ c do you charge? 3 Can I use this card _____ d in this cash machine? 4 What's the exchange rate _____ e in the station? 5 Is there a bureau de change f into dollars? <

Complete the sentences.

► The banks <u>charge</u> 1.5% commission. 4 What's the exchange _____? 5 You pay one _____ cent to the bank. 1 _____ the cheque at the bottom. 2 _____ dollars into euros. 6 You get money from a _____ 3 The _____ in China is the yuan. machine.

A	BOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
1	What's the currency in your country?
2	Do you know the exchange rate for the US dollar?
3	When you travel, where do you get or change money?
4	Do you use a cash machine to get your own currency?
5	Where do you find cash machines in your country?

B At the post office 6.

1 You want to send a letter to a friend



You write the name. address and postcode on the envelope.



You put a stamp on it.



You post it in the letter box or postbox.



The postman or postwoman delivers it in the next day or two.

2 You want to send a parcel to Germany.



You take it to the post office.



How much is this parcel to Germany. please?'



'Put it on the scales. please, 350 gms - that's £3.43.



'That's fine. And can I have two stamps for postcards to Germany?'

4	Answer	the questions.	Choose	answers	from	the b	ox.
---	--------	----------------	--------	---------	------	-------	-----

- ▶ Where do you post letters? in a postbox, in a letter box
- 1 What do postmen do?
- 2 What do you write on an envelope?
- 3 Where do you take a parcel?
- 4 Where do you put the parcel?
- 5 What do you put on an envelope/parcel?
- 6 Who takes parcels to people's homes?
- 7 Which three things can you send? ____

to the post office a postcard in a postbox / deliver letters a stamp the postman a letter the name, address and postcode in a letter box 🗸 a parcel on the scales

Use the words to make questions. You need to add one more word.

- ▶ please / Japan / to / parcel / is / how / this /? How (much) is this parcel to Japan, please?
- box / is / near / there / here / a / ? _____
- 2 scales / can / it / you / the / on / ? ______
- 3 Argentina / I / for / three / can / stamps / ?
- 4 letter / where / post / this / I / ? _____
- Russia / much / is / postcard / how / a / ?
- post / buy / envelopes / you / can / the / at / ?

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the sentences?

Review: Holidays

Unit 54

	d the text on the words in the tex		natch the meanings.		you might n	need to	
▶ C	of another country	which is	not your country for	eign	certain thin	_	
	lan or organize						book a flight
2 n	noney that a count	ry uses	able exhabitions and the second secon		some count		odation. For
3 p	ay to use somethin	ng for a	short time	***************************************		-	ur passport to
4 g	o to another coun	try	9 May 4 Cont May 10 Cont M			-	at country to
5 a	time when you do	n't hav	e to work	ec-101-001-003-0-00-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-	get a visa, a	nd you	might also
6 a	rrange and pay for	somet	ning in advance		need foreig		•
7 p	out your things in a	bag be	fore you travel				re a car before
8 a	journey by plane				airport. And		get it at the
9 a	place to stay, e.g.	a hotel					t forget your
Un	it 55						
1 M	latch 1 – 10 with	a – k.					
	doublee_	6	I'm afraid	a	conditioning	g	TV
1	central	7	never	b	a shame	h	heating
2	air	8	book	C	in the price	i	mind
3	internet	9	what	d	access	j	service
4	room	10	included	е	room √	k	a room
5	satellite			f	not		
2 C	omplete the con	versati	on.				
	A Can you reco	mmend	a good hotel in	New York?			
В	Yes, we (1)	******************************	in a great hotel	last year - the	e Excelsior.		
A	Did all the rooms	have a	bathroom?				
В			(ME 200/18 11 MA) AND 300 MAN (MAN (MAN (MAN (MAN (MAN (MAN (MAN				
Α			r, and TV and everythin	9			
В	Yes, the room (3) friendly and help How about the fo	ful too.	were grea	at. And the h	otel (4)	HARROUGH BARROON BARRO	were reall
			st it was (E)			-/+ +	ava analysis 14
В	was about \$50 a	(6)	ct, it was (5)		nd the notel wasr	11 100	expensive – it
A			d has it got (7)	?			

A It sounds perfect. I think I'll (8) ______ a room, then.

1 Match 1 – 9 with a –

•	departures	5	seat	а	luggage	f	card
1	check-in	6	hand	b	belt	g	call
2	gate	7	aisle	c	closed	h	control
3	last	8	boarding	d	seat	i	desk
4	passport	9	flight	е	seven	j	board 🗸

2 Complete the sentences with one word. Use the Past Simple in questions 6 – 10.

1	I couldn't carry my suitcases, so I put them on a
2	I had to show my passport and at the check-in desk.
3	I put my luggage on the and it was 25 kilos.
4	The check-in person said, 'Have a good'.
5	I was an hour late because my flight was
6	When I on the plane, somebody was in my seat.
7	I my seat belt and started reading the in-flight magazine.
8	It was sunny when we took off, but it was raining when the plane at Manchester Airport.
9	After we got off the plane, we went and our luggage.
0	When I through customs, there was nobody there.

Unit 57

One word is missing in each line of the text. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

sunba	thed	went	get	perfect	holiday 🗸	or	flew	rented	resort
We had	a lovely	(in France	last		•	holiday	************************************	000000000000000000	
year. We to Marseille Airport and then				then	1	***************************************	***************************************	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	
we had t	to a bus	to Cassis	, which	is	2			0 040440 000	
a very nice holiday by the sea.				3					
We an apartment in the centre of					4	***************************************	***************************************	***************************************	
the towr	n. Every	morning v	we for a	1	5	***************************************		******************************	
walk rou	nd the	town, the	n we or	1	6	•••••			
the beac	h for ar	hour so.	The		7				
weather	was for	the whol	e week		8	***************************************		000000Fs 003 000	

Correct	one	mistal	o in	aach	sentence
COLLECT	OHE	HILLSTAN	ce in	Parn	Sentence

	She went on a guiding tour of the city. She went on a guided tour of the city.
1	We're going in a tour of the city this afternoon.
	Did you go seeing in Paris?
	We always go lost in a new place.
4	She made a lot of photos on her holiday.
5	Did you visit at the museum?
6	There were lots of typic tourists.
7	There's a good exhibition at the art museum.
8	Have you got a guided book about London, please?

Unit 59

1 Write words beginning with P and C.

•	post	_ a letter = put a letter in a letter box
1	p	= where you buy stamps
2	p	= the numbers and letters at the end of an address
3	P	= the person who delivers the letters
4	P	_ = letter box
5	P	= you write these on holiday
6	P	= you a stamp on an envelope
7	p	= %
8	p	== you take this to the post office because it's too big for a letter box
9	C	_ = the money of a country, e.g. dollars, euros
10		= a place inside or outside a bank where you can get
44	money with a card	
11	C	= e.g. give someone dollars and they give you the same amount in pesos
12	C	= you have to pay this to a bank for changing money
13	C	= a bank can1% for changing money

2 Complete the questions.

	Can I have five Stamps	tor postcards to Russia, please?
1	How much is it to	a 1 kg parcel to Italy?
2	Did you put a stamp on the	?
3	How many letters did the postman	today?
4	What's the	for the Brazilian Real?
5	Can I change dollars	pounds sterling here?
6	Is there ade	in the centre?

60 I can meet and greet people

A Introductions 6



Sam and Mary meet for the first time ...

JANE Sam, this is Mary.

MARY Hello.

Sam Hi. Nice to meet you.



two hours later ...

Mary Well, goodbye, Sam. Good to meet you. Sam Yes. I hope to see you again. Bye!

Glossary

bye a short form of goodbye shake hands



spotlight Introductions

- Hi is informal and common with young people.
- How do you do? is also possible, but now very formal.
- We often use Nice to meet you or Good to meet you when we meet people for the first time, and when we say goodbye the first time after we meet them.

1	Make	sentences	from	the	words.
---	------	-----------	------	-----	--------

- ► you/do/how/do/? How do you do?
- 1 meet / nice / hello / you / to _____
- 2 this / Max / Hanna / is ______
- 3 again / hope / you / bye / to / l / see
- 4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet _____

Complete the dialogues.

1 Lucia Emma, ► this is Alex.

Alex Hi, Emma. to meet you.

Emma ______.

2 Alex Goodbye, Emma. I ______ to see you _____.

Emma Yes.

3 Chris Jan, this _____ Dan.

Jan _____, Dan. Good ______

Dan _____, Jan.

4 Dan Well, ______, Jan. I hope ______ again. Jan _____!



B Meeting a friend 🕟

Tess (T) meets her friend Matt (M) in a bar.

- T Hi, Matt. How are you?
- M Fine, thanks. And you?
- T Yes, not bad.
- M Good. And how's Sarah?
- T Yeah, she's very well.

An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

- OK. I've got to go now. See you later.
- T Sure. About 7.00?
- M Yeah, that's fine.
- T Good. See you then.
- M OK. Bve.
- Complete the phrases.
 - ► How are you?
 - 1 S__ you _g___.
 - 2 | m_st g_ n_w.
 - 3 S__ you l_t__.
 - 4 H_'s v__y w__l.

Sam She's ______.

Glossary

how are you? You say this to a friend when you meet. (also how are things?)

fine or very well or not bad are common replies to 'How are you?' NOT very fine

have got to do = have to do or must do (have got to is more informal)

spotlight See you...

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.

See you next Saturday.

See you then = at the time we agreed

See you later = the same day

See you soon = another day, e.g. next week

See you again = another time, but I'm not sure when

- 5 S__ you s___.
- 6 H_w _r_ th___s?
- 7 S__ you _n S__d_y.
- 8 I'v_ g_t t_ go n_w.

Sam, 1

9 Th__'s f_n_.

2 Jim

- Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.
 - 1 Jim Hi, How ▶ are you ? Sam I'm very _____. And you? Yeah, not And ___ your wife?
- go now. Sam OK. See you _____ Jim Sure. What time? 6.30? Sam Yeah, _____ fine . See you __
- Saying hello and goodbye 60

	hello			goodbye			
	anytime (24 hours)	before lunch	after lunch	after 6 p.m.	anytime at the en		
	hello	good morning	good afternoon	good evening	goodbye	goodnight	
more informal	hi or hi there	morning	afternoon	evening	bye or bye bye	night	



Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

What do you say when you:		more informal
see someone anytime?	Hello	Hi
1 see someone before lunch?		
2 see someone after 6.00 p.m.?		
3 see someone after lunch?		
4 say goodbye at 11.00 p.m.?		

61 I can use special greetings 6

Say this to someone when:	Expression	Response	
you say goodbye	have a nice day/evening have a good/lovely weekend	thanks, you too and you	
someone is going to bed	goodnight, sleep well		
it's Christmas/new year/ Easter (Easter is a Christian festival in March or April.)	happy/merry Christmas happy New Year happy Easter	happy Christmas, etc the same to you	
it's their birthday	happy birthday		
they've done something well or passed an exam	well done congratulations	thank you thanks	
they are getting married or having a baby	congratulations NOT well done		
they are going to do something difficult, e.g. before an exam	good luck not good lucky		
they are going away, e.g. on holiday	have a good/nice holiday/time have a good journey		
someone has arrived recently, or returned home after a long time	welcome to London welcome home/back		
	cheers	cheers	

1	Match 1 – 9 with a – j.			
	Merry Christmas!	a b c d e f g h i	You too. The same to you. ✓ Good luck. Welcome home! Well done! Congratulations. Sleep well. Cheers! Have a good journey.	Cheers has two other meanings in informal, spoken English. 1 Thank you Here's the money you lent me. ~ Oh, cheers. 2 Goodbye See you later. ~ Cheers.
	9 Have a nice evening	j	Happy birthday!	

Complete the phrases.

1	Have a nice/good	day	/e/w_	***************************************	/h	/
	j/t					
2	Нарру С	/E	/N	Y	/b	
3	Goodn	/Good L	!/Well d		_!/W	homel

Test yourself. Look at column one in the table and cover columns two and three. Can you remember the phrases and responses?

62 I can ask for information

A About people 60

Who do you live with, Tracey?

And what's your brother like?

And your boyfriend - what does he do?

How long have you known him?

I understand you're learning Spanish.

How often are the classes?

And why Spanish?

Whose idea was it to live in Spain?

What's wrong with England?

How about you? What do you think?

What kind of work can you do in Spain?

- ~ My parents, and my younger brother.
- ~ He's stupid and a bit fat.
- ~ He works for an airline company.
- ~ About two years.
- ~ Yes, that's right.
- ~ Twice a week.
- ~ Because we want to live in Spain.
- ~ My boyfriend's.
- ~ He doesn't like the weather.
- ~ Yeah, I think it's a good idea.
- ~ My boyfriend can still work for his company, and I can get a job in a bar.

Glossary

What's wrong with England? = What's the problem with England?

spotlight

whose and belong to

Whose money is that? ~ It's mine. (It's my money.) Who does this bag belong to? ~ It's Ben's. (The bag belongs to Ben.) NOT Whose does this bag belong to?

1	Make	questions	from	the	words
U	Make	questions	from	the	words

	for / do / work/ who / you /? Who do you work for?
1	you / often / there / go / how / do / ?
2	like / what / music / do / kind of / you / ?
3	he / does / what / do ?
4	have / lived / how long / there / you / ?
5	wrong / Peter / with / what's / ?
6	this / to / belong / does / who / ?
7	his / like / what's / flat / ?
8	like / you / why / her / don't /?

Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

	Because she's horrible to me
a	Ten years.
b	He's very angry with me.
C	It's small but very nice
d	Twice a year.
e	It's mine.
f	He's a doctor.
g	Rock and pop.

Co	omplete the dialogues.
	What kind of animal is it?
	~ I think it's a horse.
1	How do you go? ~ Every week.
2	jacket is this? ~ It's mine.
3	's she like? ~ She's very nice.
4	I don't speak German about you? ~ Yes, I speak a bit of German.
5	How have you worked there? ~ Six months.

6 _____ does this belong to? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's Mark's.



4 Circle the correct answers.

- ► How far/long is it to the museum?
- 1 Which/what is your address?
- 2 How long/long time do you need?
- 3 What hour/time does it open?
- 4 How much/many places did you visit?
- 5 Where's the nearest/next café?
- 6 Is the museum worth to see/seeing?

spotlight which or what?

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities. We have a double room or a twin. **Which** do you prefer? In other situations, use **what**.

What's the address of the hotel? (NOT Which is the address?)

Complete the questions.

	When	does the post office open?
1	How	is it to the station?
2	How	places did you go to?
3	There are two	do you want?
4		s the phone number of the bank?
5	It opens at 8.00,	but when does it?
6	Is it	going to see Notre Dame?
7	Where's the	underground station?
8	There's a lot to se	ee. What do you?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Answer the questions or ask another student.

1	Where do you live?
2	How long have you lived there?
3	Which places are worth visiting?

4 How far are they from your home?

5 Can you recommend any restaurants? _____

63 I can ask for things

A Requests and responses 60

Requests (in the classroom)	Responses		
Can you bring the dictionaries here, please?	Sure.		
Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?	OK. Yeah, sure.		
Yuri, could you possibly take these books to the staffroom?	Yeah, no problem. Yes, of course.		
Elena, can you change places with Gabi?			
Could you lend me a pen, Boris?	X (No), I'm afraid		
Dmitri, could you possibly wait here a few minutes?	I can't.		

spotlight Being polite

Can and **could** have the same meaning in the table. **Could you possibly** ...? is more polite, for a bigger request.

Please is very common, and makes a request more polite.

I'm afraid ... is used to say politely that you are sorry about something.

Glossary





bring

take

finish something do or complete the last part of something

change places e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's place and Gabi sits in Elena's place

lend give something to someone to use for a short time

wait stay in one place for a short time until something happens

I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, but I can't NOT I'm afraid but I can't

1	Complete	the dia	logues	with	one	word	in	each	space	
---	----------	---------	--------	------	-----	------	----	------	-------	--

	Can you	_ clean <u>the</u> board	1?		
1	Can	lend a pen?	~ Yes,	course.	
2	Could you	the books here,	? ~ Yes,	problem.	
3	Could you	wait here a few	? ~ I'm	I can't.	
4	Lia, can you	places	Maris,	? ~ Yeah ,	•

Use the words to write requests and responses. Use can, could and could ... possibly and different responses.

	take / books / away
	A Could you take these books away, please?
	B Yes, sure.
1	finish / exercise / homework
	Α
	В
2	Luca / change places / Maria
	Α
	D

3	bring / notebook / tomorrow
	Α
	В
4	lend / pencil
	Α
	В
5	wait / classroom a few minutes
	Α
	В

B Asking for and giving permission 6.

1			
1		ald you lend me ur dictionary?	√ Could I borrow
1	y 0		your pen?
		Sure.	I'm afraid I need it.
1	Is it	t all right if I	
L		in that chair?	Is it OK if I close the door.
(Ves	s, that's fine.	
(108	s, that's line.	Yes, sure.
Do	yo	u mind if I look	
	at y	our answers?	Can I open the window
(N	o, go ahead.	Sure, go ahead.
GI	oss	sary	spotlight lend and borrow
_		ead on that's fine You say go ahead or th	II voll parrow a pen from someone voll lise
		when you give someone permission to do	their pen, then give it back.
		othing. Int = OK	If you lend someone a pen, you give them
		$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{o} \mathbf{k}$ $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{m} \mathbf{n} \mathbf{d} \mathbf{m} \mathbf{m} \mathbf{n} \mathbf{d} \mathbf{m}$ where $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n} \mathbf{d} \mathbf{m}$ if $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{n} \mathbf{d} \mathbf{m}$	your pen to use for a short time.
		answer 'No, go ahead' means 'It's not a	Could I borrow your pen? – Could you lend
p	robl	em'.)	me your pen?
3	1 2 3 4 5	Can we sit down? Is it OK if we sit Is it OK if I use this dictionary? Is it OK if I make a coffee? Can I stay for another ten minutes? Is it OK to close the window? Can you lend me your book?	
	6	Can I sit here? ~ Yes, of course.	
	7	Can I use the computer? ~ I'm sorry b	
	8	Is it OK to have my coffee here? ~ Yes,	sure.
4		sk for permission. Use different wo	
		You want to sit near the window. Can	I sit near the window?
	1	You want to go at one o'clock today	
	2	You want to borrow a rubber.	
	3	You want to go to the toilet.	
	4	You want to sit in a different seat.	
	No.		
5			ays to give permission from this unit.
		Yes, sure. 3	
	1	4	
	7		

64 I can invite people 60

Inviting

Would you like to ... Do you want to ...

- ... go out for a meal/a drink?
- ... come round for a coffee?
- ... come to a party?





Saying yes

Yes, great! Yes, I'd love to! That sounds lovely/fun/good. That would be lovely/nice.



Saying no

I'm afraid I can't. I'm sorry, but I'm busy. I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.



spotlight

Would you like to... or Do you want to...?

Would you like to ...? is a little more polite than Do you want to ...?

- A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.
 - ► How/tomorrow? about
 - 1 Would you to come round later?
 - 2 Yes, I'd love. _____
 - 3 Do you want to out for dinner?
 - 4 That lovely.
 - 5 I'm afraid can't.
 - 6 That be nice.
 - 7 Do you want come to a party?
- 8 I'm, but I'm busy tonight.
- Complete the questions and answers.
 - Invite someone for a drink in a bar. Say yes.
 - 1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
 - 2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee. Say no politely.
 - 3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow. Say yes.
 - 4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café. Say no politely.

Glossary

invite ask someone to come to a party, your house, etc.

go out for a meal or a drink means 'go to a restaurant or a café/bar' come round come to my home

party a time when friends meet to eat. drink, dance, play games, etc.

great very good syn wonderful I'd love to = I want to do it very much (I'd = I would)

That sounds lovely. = I think that's a lovely idea.

That would be lovely. = I would like to do it.

busy If you are busy, you have a lot of things to do.

I'm afraid I can't = I'm sorry, (but) I can't NOT I'm afraid but I can't

A Do you want to go out for a drink ? B That would be lovely B Yes, g...... B I'm a____ A Would _____? B Yes, that s A Do _____? B I'd ______, but

gym.

65 I can make suggestions 6.

Ask	for a suggestion	What shall Where shal	this was already
Mak	e a suggestion	Shall we go to the Maybe we could g	beach? What about going to an exhibition? Let's go out for a drink.
Say 'Yes, (Yeah)	(that's a) good/gro , let's do that.	eat idea!	Say 'no', or make another suggestion I'm not sure (about that). Well, I'd prefer to stay at home. Hmm or perhaps we could go to the mountains
P	ut the dialogue ir	order	Glossary
Th Ye W M Fii w	d prefer to get them ne weather's nice, so es, good idea. That shall we do this laybe we could take ne. Shall we get the hat about going to orrect the mistake.	the train. tickets online? the beach?	suggestion an idea that someone gives you to think about maybe/perhaps possibly What about? = What do you think about? 1 spotlight Saying no It isn't very polite to say no to a suggestion in English. It's more polite to say, I'm not sure, or make another suggestion. Shall we go out? ~ Well, I'd prefer to stay in.
1			
2			
3			
5	Yes, that a good in		
,	res, that a good to	JCa	
W	rite in a word wh		
1	B What / going /	the theatre?	shall we do this evening?
2	A What / we / on B Perhaps we / g	Saturday?o out for a meal	
3	A OK, let's / that A Where / we go B /'s go to an exl	/ afternoon?	

66 I can offer, accept, and refuse

A Offering food, drink or help 6.



Offering food/drink
Would you like a biscuit?
Do you want something to eat?

Accept = say yes

Refuse = say no

Yes, please.

No, thanks.

Thanks.

Thanks. Could I have ...?



Offering help
Can I give you a hand?
Do you need some help?

Accept

Refuse

Yes, please. Thanks a lot.

No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

Thank you (very much).

spotlight Saying thank you

Thanks or **Thanks a lot** are the most common ways of thanking someone in spoken English. **Thank you (very much)** is more formal.

0	Co	orrect one letter of one word in each sen	tence.
		Could you like something to drink? Would	3 di di Cara d
	1	Can I give you a band?	~ No, don't lorry.
	2	Do you want something to ear?	
	3	So you need some help?	~ No, I'm mine, thanks.
	4	Would you bike a drink?	~ Thinks. Could I have a coffee?
2		ne word or contraction is missing. Where	from? Write it at the end.
	•	No,/worry. don't	Would you a drink?
	1	Can I give you hand?4	
	2	Thank you much 5	No, fine, thanks.

Complete the questions and answers.

C	implete the questions and ansi	wers	i.		
	Offer someone food.		Do you want something to	eat?	
1	Offer someone a drink.	Α	Would	a drink?	
	Accept, and ask for some water.	В	Yes,		water?
2	Offer someone help.	Α	Do	help?	
	Say no politely.	В	No,	, thanks.	
3	Offer someone food.	A	Would	eat?	
	Accept, and ask for an apple.	В	Yes,	***************************************	an apple?
4	Offer someone help.	Α	Can	hand?	
	Say no.	B	No	Morry	

B Offering to do something 6.



Would you like me to make the dinner? ~ That's very kind of you.



Shall I carry your bag? ~ OK. Thanks.



Do you want me to answer that? ~ Yes, please.



Let me pay for the drinks. ~ That's very kind of you.

spotlight let me + verb

We use **let me** + verb when we really want to do something for someone. Let me pay for lunch. Let me get the train tickets. **Let me give you a lift** to the station. = Let me take you in my car.

Match 1 - 6 with a - g.

- ► I'm really hungry. _____
- 2 Are the dishes dirty? _____
- 2 Are the dishes dirty? ______
 3 I have to go to the airport. _____
- 4 This suitcase is really heavy.
- 5 Is that someone at the door? _____
- 6 I don't feel very well.
- Circle the correct word.

B

- ► Shall Let me answer the door. 5 Shall I/I'll carry that for you?
- 1 That's very kind for/of you.
- 2 Let/Let's me get the shopping. 7 Let me/I do the washing-up.
- 3 Let/Shall I answer the phone?
- 4 Would/Do you like me to help?

Do you _____ me to answer it?

- a Let me carry it for you.
- 1 I haven't got much money. _____ b Do you want me to ring the doctor?
 - c Shall I make you a sandwich? ✓
 - d That's OK. Let me pay for the meal.
 - e Yes. Would you like me to wash up?
 - f Let me give you a lift.
 - g Yes. Shall I see who it is?
 - 6 Shall I give/take you a lift to work?
 - 8 Do you like/want me to make the breakfast?

Complete the conversations. Write one word or contraction (e.g. it's, I'll) in each gap.

I'm just going to the post office. Well, ▶ <u>let</u> me give ______a ____. В A Oh, _____ of ____ . 2 A I'm really tired! OK. _____the dinner for you? B Yes, ______ do the washing-up afterwards. A 3 A Jeannie, that shopping looks really heavy. Let ______ it for you. Oh, ______very much. Oh, no! That's the phone again! 4 A

67 I can say sorry and respond 6

He pushed me but didn't apologize.



Really! That's very rude.

Saying sorry/apologizing	Responses
Sorry, I don't speak English very well. I'm sorry, I've broken a cup. I'm very sorry – I've lost your pen. I forgot to post your letter. I'm really sorry. Sorry I'm late. The traffic was terrible.	That's all right. I'll speak slowly. That's OK. Don't worry. It doesn't matter. I've got lots of pens. Never mind. I can post it later. Oh, don't worry about it.

Glossary

apologize to someone say sorry to someone rude opp polite that's all right/don't worry/it doesn't matter/never mind These phrases all mean 'it's not important/it's OK'. break PT broke
PP broken

lose PT/PP lost If you lose something, you can't find it. forget PT forgot PP forgotten oPP remember really sorry very sorry sorry I'm late NOT sorry for be late

spotlight (I'm) sorry

We can also use (I'm) sorry to ask someone to repeat something:

Sorry, could you repeat that, please? ~ Sure, no problem.

I'm sorry, what was your name again? ~ It's Marianne.

1	Correct	the	mista	kes.
				1200

	ľ'n	sorry for be late. I'm sorry I'm late.
1	Α	I'm really sorry. I've lose your dictionary.
	В	Don't mind.
2	A	I'm sorry, I've forget your book.
	В	No worry.
3	Α	I've break your cup – I'm very sorry.
	В	It isn't matter.

Complete the dialogues.

1	Α	I'm really sorry.	5	Α	I'm sorrylate. I missed the bus.
	В	all right.		В	That's OK.
2	A	Sorry I'm late.	6	Α	, could you repeat that, please?
	В	Don't		В	Sure, no
3	Α	I'msorry.	7	A	Did he to you?
		It doesn't		В	Yes, he was very sorry.
4	A	It's broken – I'm very sorry.	8	Α	Did he say sorry?
	В	Oh, never		В	No, he's very

Test yourself. Cover the responses in the table and read the sentences on the left. Give correct responses.

68 I can express my opinion 68

Tthought it was a very funny book. What do you think of London? Personally, I don't like big cities.	-	He wants our opinion of the course.	~ Yes, I agree.
What do you think of London? Personally, I don't like big cities.	G		~ Well, I don't think it's very good.
As a said the course was a waste of money. Clim not sure. I think I prefer the other on more word to make a sentence. Very / I / good / it's 1 think it's very good. 1 do / it / think / what / you / ? 2 you / agree / I 2 you / agree / I 2 you / agree / I 3 don't / very / I / good / it's 4 waste / it / money / a / was I / like / personally / didn't 2 you can use personally to introduce opinion. I'm not sure You can use Personally to introduce opinion. I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree yolitely. Prefer like one thing more than another a waste of time) I like this. ~ Yes, _ agree agree with him. I think it's great. I live this colour. What do you of it? ~ , I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go do litely. with him. I think it's great. I live this colour. What do you ? ~ Yes, with him. I think it's great. with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go in think it's great. with him. I think it's prefer like one thing more than another a waste of time) waste of time waste of time) waste of time waste of time waste of time was	(1	thought it was a very lunny book.	~ I agree with you. I loved it.)
Tike this dress. What do you think?	(V	What do you think of London?	~ Personally I don't like hig cities
Max said the course was a waste of money. Put the words in order, and add one more word to make a sentence. Very/I/good/it's	I	like this dress. What do you think?	
Put the words in order, and add one more word to make a sentence. Very/I/good/it's I think it is very good. do / it / think / what / you /? you / agree / I don't / very / I / good / it's waste / it / money / a / was I / like / personally / didn't one / I / other / prefer Complete the dialogues. I like this. ~ Yes, agree I like this. ~ Yes, agree I like this colour. What do you Pete likes it. What's your Pete like her new flat. ~ I'm not I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not I think people watch too much TV. Smoking's bad for you. I think pr thought have an opinion about someth excellent very good agree with someone have the same opinion as someone nor I'm agree over disagree opinion what you think about something I don't think it's very good nor I think it's enot very good personally You can use personally to introduce opinion. I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politely. Prefer like one thing more than another a waste of time) of it? ~, I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your Pete likes it. What's your Pete likes it. What's your Personally, I didn't I think it's great. ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I think people watch too much TV. Smoking's bad for you. I think football's boring.	N	Max said the course was a waste	
more word to make a sentence. very / I / good / it's	0	of money.	~ I disagree. I thought it was great.)
more word to make a sentence. I think it is very good. I do / it / think / what / you / ? you / agree / I do / it / think / what / you / ? you / agree / I do / it / think / what / you / ? do / it / think / what / you / ? do / it / think / what / you / ? do / it / think / what / you / ? do / it / think / what / you / ? do / it / think / what / you / ? do / it / think it is very good agree with someone have the same opinion as someone Nor I magree ore disagree opinion what you think about something I don't think it's very good Nor I think it's not very good personally You can use personally to introduce opinion. I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politely. prefer like one thing more than another a waste of money a bad way to use money (also waste of time) Complete the dialogues. I like this. ~ Yes, @gree . I love this colour. What do you	Pι	ut the words in order, and add one	
excellent very good agree with someone have the same opinion as someone nor I'm agree orp disagree opinion what you think about something I don't think it's very good Nor I think it's not very good opinion. I'm not sure you can use personally to introduce opinion. I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politely. Vaste / it / money / a / was	m	ore word to make a sentence.	
agree with someone have the same opinion as someone Nor I'm agree or disagree opinion what you think about something I don't think it's very good Nor I think it's not very good Nor I think it's understand the not sure to disagree politicly. I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politicly. Perfer like one thing more than another a waste of time) Complete the dialogues. I like this. ~ Yes, agree I love this colour. What do you of it? ~, I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very good Nor I think it's understand Nor I'm not sure to disagree? Perfer like one thing more than another a waste of time) of it? ~, I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very good Nor I think it's great. ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I I think people watch too much TV Smoking's bad for you. I think football's boring.	>	very/I/good/it's I think it's very good.	excellent very good
Idon't think it's very good NOT I think it's not very good NOT I think it's not very good	1	do / it / think / what / you / ?	someone NOT I'm agree OPP disagree
personally You can use personally to introduce opinion. Waste / it / money / a / was	2	you / agree / I	I don't think it's very good NOT I think it's not very
/m not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politely. prefer like one thing more than another a waste of money a bad way to use money (also waste of time) Complete the dialogues. I like this. ~ Yes,	3	don't / very / I / good / it's	personally You can use personally to introduce your
a waste of money a bad way to use money (also waste of time) 6 one / I / other / prefer Complete the dialogues. I like this. ~ Yes, Iagree I love this colour. What do you of it? ~, I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I I think people watch too much TV Smoking's bad for you I think football's boring	4	waste / it / money / a / was	I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politely.
Complete the dialogues. I like this. ~ Yes, agree I love this colour. What do you of it? ~, I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not ; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I think people watch too much TV	5	I / like / personally / didn't	a waste of money a bad way to use money (also a
I like this. ~ Yes, Iagree I love this colour. What do you of it? ~, I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I think people watch too much TV Smoking's bad for you	6	one / I / other / prefer	-
I like this. ~ Yes, Iagree I love this colour. What do you of it? ~, I don't like it very much. Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I think people watch too much TV Smoking's bad for you	Co	amplete the dielegues	
1 I love this colour. What do you of it? ~, I don't like it very much. 2 Pete likes it. What's your? ~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great. 3 What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go 4 I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. 1 I think people watch too much TV 2 Smoking's bad for you 3 I think football's boring			
Pete likes it. What's your ? ~ Yes, I with him. I think it's great. What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not ; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I think people watch too much TV			-640
What did you think her idea? ~ Personally, I didn't it was very go I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. I think people watch too much TV			
4 I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not; it's a bit small. I think I her old ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. 1 I think people watch too much TV			
ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think. 1 I think people watch too much TV			
2 Smoking's bad for you	AB wł	BOUT YOU Do you agree or disagre hat they think.	e? Write your opinion, or ask another student
2 Smoking's bad for you	1	I think people watch too much TV	
3 I think football's boring.			
4. Management of the second of		SHIOKING S DAG TOL VOID.	
4 Money makes you happy	2		

69 I can use the phone

A Phone vocabulary 60

Phone numbers	What's your phone number? ~ It's 245731. What's your mobile number? ~ It's 07700 900 796. What's the (area) code for Liverpool? ~ It's 0151.				
Phone verbs	You call or ring someone. PT rang	= phone someone			
	You text someone.	= send someone a text (message) e.g. CUL8R = see you later			
	You take a message.	= take information during a phone call and give it to someone else			
	You leave a message.	= give information to someone on the phone who then gives it to someone else			
Phone problems	The line is engaged/busy.	= the person you phoned is speaking on the phone already			
	The person is out/isn't in.	= not there			
	It's the wrong number.	= you make a mistake with the number			
	The battery's flat on the mobile.	= no electricity			

Same or different? Write S or D.

	He phoned/rang his sister.	S
1	What's your phone/mobile number?	
2	two six oh/zero four	
3	I left/took a message.	
4	I'm sorry, she isn't in/'s out.	
5	The line was busy/engaged.	
6	I texted him/sent him a text.	

spotlight Saying phone numbers

Say each number, e.g. 245731 is **two four five seven three one**.

Say **double** when two numbers are the same, e.g. 33 = **double three**.

For '0', say **oh** or **zero**, e.g. 602448 is **six oh/zero two double four eight**.

Complete the dialogues with one word in each so	2	Complete the	dialogues	with one	word in	each	space.
---	---	--------------	-----------	----------	---------	------	--------

- 1 Did you ▶ ring _____ Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but the line was e _____ . I'll p _____ her later.
 2 What's your phone n _____ ? ~ It's 345489. And the c _____ for Oxford is 01865.
 3 Did you c _____ Sue last night? ~ Yes, but she was o _____ , so I left a m _____ . I r ____ her mobile too, but I think the b _____ was flat.
 4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w _____ number.
- 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 What's your phone number, area code and mobile number? _____
 - 2 Who do you ring most often? _____
 - 3 How long do you spend on the phone every day? ______
 - 4 Do you text a lot? If so, who to?

B Phone conversations 6.

Lau	ra (L) is	s phoning Brenda (B).	An	nton Jackson (AJ) is speaking to a receptionist (I	₹).
В		llo?		R	Hello?	
L			t Brenda?	AJ		
В			peaking.	R)'s
L			ello. This is Laura, Laura Freebairn.	AT	calling?	
B			ura, how are you? te thanks. Is Jessica in, please?	AJ R		
В			ist a moment—I'll get her for you	AJ		
				R		
				AJ		
4	Tie	ck ((/) the correct response.		Glossary	
		Ca	in I speak to Sam, please?		Is that Brenda? NOT Are you	,
			e's not in at the moment. 🗸 He's not in	n inset a		-
	1		ello?	i just a	speaking = Yes, this is	
	•			7	Brenda.	
	2	-	eaking. Oh, hello, is that Kamal?		This is Laura or It's Laura NOT I am/Here is Laura	
	2		in I speak to Lia Ponte, please?		just a moment wait a minu	ite
			st a moment. It's Natasha.		get someone go and find	
	3	He	ello, is that Galina?	someone and bring them t	0	
		Oh	n, hello, this is Carla Speaking		the phone	
	4	He	ello, this is Angela Brandt.		at the moment now	
		Oł	n, hello, how are you? Who's calling	?	Who's calling? This is the polite way to ask 'Who are you?'	
5	Co	omp	plete the conversations.		ring/phone/call someone	
	1		Hello?		back phone someone agai	n
		B	Hello. ▶ <u>Is that</u> Marisa?			
			Yes, (1)			
		В	Oh, hello. (2)	Dag	gmar.	
		A	Oh, hello, Dagmar.			
		В	ls Mikki (3),	?		
		Α	I'm sorry, he's out at (4)	***************************************	***************************************	
			Can I take a message?			
		В	Yes, please. Tell him I'll (5)	him	after lunch.	
	2		Hello?			
			Oh, can I (6)		· ·	
		Α	Yes, (7) mo	ment.	. I'll (8) him for you.	
	3	Α	Hello?			
		В	Oh, hello. (9)	Joa	anna?	
		Α	Yes, (10)			
		В	Hello, Joanna, (11) 's Rud	√ .		
		Α	Hi, Rudy. How are you?			

Review: Social English

Unit 60

1 Do these have the same meaning or a different meaning? Write S or D.

•	Afternoon!	Good afternoon!	S
1	Morning!	Good morning!	
2	Hi!	Bye!	
3	I'm fine.	I'm very well.	
4	See you later.	See you tomorrow.	
5	Good to meet you.	Nice to meet you.	
6	How are you?	How are things?	
7	Hello.	Hi, there.	
8	Bye!	Goodbye!	
9	How do you do?	How are you?	
10	I've got to go.	I must go.	

2 Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

[▶] good	-> evening	¹ hope	bad	4 how	do
later	see	to	³ not	you	you
you	you	again	² how	are	do
⁹ see	you	meet	soon	you	5 shake
there	⁸ hi	to	⁷ nice	⁶ see	hands

Unit 61

What do	vou sav	v in t	hese s	ituations	,
	,	,			•

- It's Christmas Day. Happy Christmas!

 It's your friend's birthday.

 You say goodbye to a colleague on Friday afternoon.

 Someone tells you they are getting married.

 A friend is going to take an exam.

 A friend has passed an exam.

 Someone has returned home after a long time.
- 8 It's the first day of January. ______

	When/What time?	~ 7.30p.m.	5	***************************************	territori finanti superanti postenti della constitucioni della con	~ Next to the ban
1		~ Fifteen.	6			~ Three hours.
	2411400131400100010001000100010001000100100100100					~ It's mine.
						~ I prefer this one
4	1	~ Twice a week.	9		20134 MOONIS STORM TO A VICTOR TO STORE ST	~ It's John.
2 (Circle the correct form th	en write your ansv	wers.			
	_			BOUT YO	DU	
-(What's How's your English I	like?	****			
1	I've got one sister. What's/H	low about you?	_		***************************************	***************************************
2	And what do/are you do?		dualds		Minus and American Management and a change of the contract of	***************************************
3	And what does/is your best	friend do?	***			MINISTER OF THE PROPERTY OF TH
4	How often/many do you stu	ıdy English every wee	k?		19/5000019/98/4/02/10/10/10/10/10/10/10/10/10/10/10/10/10/	***************************************
	How long/long time have yo					
	What kind/kind of games do	9				
	nit 63	o you like:	_			
Ur			_			
Ur	nit 63 Complete the sentences v	with I or you.				
Ur	nit 63 Complete the sentences v Can I borrov	with I or you. v a dictionary, please	7			
Ur 1 (1)	Complete the sentences of the complete the sentences of the complete the sentences of the complete the comple	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this.	? v?			
Ur 1 1 2 3	Complete the sentences of the confidence of the	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me?	? v?			
Ur 1 0 1 2 3 4	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? a your bike, please?	? v?			
Ur 1 0 1 2 3 4	Complete the sentences of the confidence of the	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? eave the car here?	? v?			
Ur 1 0 1 2 3 4	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? eave the car here? bw €10, please?	? v?			
Ur 1 1 2 3 4 5	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? eave the car here? ow €10, please? use your phone?	? v?			
Ur 1 1 2 3 4 5 6	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? eave the car here? ow €10, please? use your phone? it to the postbox, ple	? v?			
Ur 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. I a dictionary, please y a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? eave the car here? ow €10, please? use your phone? it to the postbox, ple change places with N	? v? ase? Vlia?		em below.	
Ur 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. I a dictionary, please y a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? eave the car here? ow €10, please? use your phone? it to the postbox, ple change places with N	? v? ase? Vlia?		em below.	
Ur 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Complete the sentences of the conference of the	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? e your bike, please? eave the car here? ow €10, please? use your phone? it to the postbox, ple change places with I	? v? ase? Viia? request.	Write the		
Ur 1 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 6 7 8 9 9 P 2 F	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? ave the car here? w €10, please? use your phone? it to the postbox, ple change places with I in the box to the r problem of I'm course	ase? Mia? request.	Write the		
Ur 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 9 P 2 F	Complete the sentences of the control of the contro	with I or you. v a dictionary, please go now need this. ibly carry this for me? ie your bike, please? ave the car here? w €10, please? use your phone? it to the postbox, ple change places with I in the box to the r problem of I'm course	ase? Mia? request.	Write the		

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

	Do	you want to come at a party tonight? Do you want to come to a party tonight?
1	Α	Would you want to have lunch tomorrow?
		I'm afraid but I can't.
2	Α	Do you like to go skiing this weekend?
	В	Yes, that is fun!
3	Α	Would you like to go round here for a drink tonight?
	В	Yes, I love to, but I'm busy.
4	Α	Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend?
	В	I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65

Complete the dialogue.

Α	Would you ▶ like	to go out tomo	rrow?
В	Yes. Where (1)	we go?	
Α	Well, (2)	we (3)	go swimming.
В	Mmm. I'm not (4)	about that.	It's a bit cold for swimming.
Α	OK. What (5)	going to an exh	ibition?
			s do that.

Unit 66

Change two words to make the pairs of sentences correct.

•	Yes, thanks.	No, please.	Yes, please. No, thanks.
1	Would you want a sandwich?	Do you like a drink?	
2	Do you need a help?	Do you want some hand?	
3	No, I'm worry, thanks.	No, don't fine.	
4	Thanks a very.	Thank you lot much.	
5	Shall me pay for the coffees.	Let I do that for you?	
6	That's much kind of you.	Thank you very very.	



possible.

Rea	d the situations, then write the dialog	ues.	Use	as man	y differe	ent phrase	es as possible.
▶ 5	Someone lends you a pen and you lose it.					st your pe	
		В	1)	nat s OK	, don t	worry.	MANUFACTOR CONTRACTOR
	Someone asked you to post a letter	A					
_	esterday, but you forgot.	В	***********	NOTATIVE STATES			M-stree with distance shoul
	You arrange to meet someone, but	Α					
-	ou are late.	В		от технология подагать для доступности	intransmin security	NIII Ko (Orthonormania)	нопринентация принадация и при
	You make coffee for someone, but	Α					
	preak one of their cups.	В					
	Someone says something to you,						
k	out you can't hear it.	В	***************************************	Originalisti (September 1990)		and and an analysis of the state of the stat	MANAGEMENT CONTROL OF THE CONTROL OF
Ur	nit 68						
Mal	ke words from the letters. Use the defi	initio	ns t	to help y	ou.		
	To have an idea about something	hil	ktn .	think		50303830w	
1	What you think about something	no	ipoi	n	hythustan manner (1911)	anning regree	
2	Very good	tel	xecr	nle		N-1-1-3-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-	
3	Have a different opinion from someone	gr	edea	asi		331111000331 <u>10</u> 1100-04	
4	Like one thing more than another	rei	repf			Western B.	
5	Used to introduce your opinion	sp	aner	rlloy			
6	A bad use of money	sto	ofaev	wa	or or other properties.	maganeerinandisahula-Gahasa ossissoosi	money
Ur	nit 69						
1 R	ewrite the underlined words but keep	the	mea	aning th	e same.		
	I'm sorry, Paul is out. Isn't in		and the second second				
1	I can't phone her now.						
2	Is that Sue? ~ Yes, this is Sue.	***************************************		MONOTON HAR HAR HAR LOS AND			
3	I'll call you back later.	Mark The Street Control	***************************************	_			
4	Can I speak to Anton? ~ Yes, wait a minut	<u>te.</u>	ED SÉCULOS ANS ANSA				
5	She <u>texted me</u> earlier.	***************************************		******			
2 V	Vrite the phone conversation in the rig						
Y	es. Just a moment – I'll get her.		Α	Hello?			
Н	ello? ✓	1	В	November 1	······································	#00m02000000000000000000000000000000000	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
Н	ello, Keira. How are you?	2	Α	Service and the second second	***************************************	000-491-4910-400-4010 Red (MARK) HIS BERGES (MARK)	NAME OF THE PARTY
ls	that Cheryl?	3	В		unditional his neglectric control garden place of the sandi		
1'1	m fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?	4	Α	***************************************			MARAMOTORS .
TI	hanks.	5	В				baconosos
Y	es, speaking.	6	Α	describbes in medical end dismodels of	486000000000000000000000000000000000000		Medicacion
H	i. It's Keira.	7	В	***************************************	**************************************		F000000000

70 I can use common adjectives

A Common opposites 60

















- 1 She's asleep. OPP awake
- 2 The bird's dead. opp alive
- 3 He's very strong. OPP weak
- 4 She's a rich woman. opp poor
- 5 These are common names in Italy. opp unusual
- This Swiss knife's very useful. opp useless
- The screen is very wide. OPP narrow
- The children are noisy. OPP quiet

Position of adjectives spotlight

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after be. It's a quiet village. The village is quiet.

You can't use alive, awake and asleep before a noun.

The man is alive. NOT an alive man

0	True	or f	alse?	Write	T	or	F.
---	------	------	-------	-------	---	----	----

- ► The River Nile is very narrow. ____F___
- 1 Julius Caesar is still alive.
- 2 People are noisy at football matches.
- 3 Dictionaries are useless.
- 4 Some people talk when they're asleep.
- 5 Elephants are very strong. _____
- 6 America is a poor country.
- 7 Toyota cars are common in Japan.
- 8 Pasta is unusual in Italy.

Write the opposite of the bold word.

- ► They're very rich. poor
- 1 It's a useless knife.
- 2 My arms are quite strong.
- 3 Is he **alive**? _____
- 5 It's a **noisy** place.

- 6 It's a quiet town.
- 7 The garden's quite wide.
- 8 That's very common.
- 9 Is she **awake**?_____
- 4 The people are very poor. ______ 10 It's quite a narrow road. _____



Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the adjectives and their opposites.

B Classroom habits

Teachers: Students: Simon I tell my students to write new Petra It's impossible to remember words in a vocabulary notebook. everything, so it's necessary I think it's really helpful. to revise things you've studied in class. Jill It's very annoying when students are late for class. Ivan I write new words on my hand, and then on my arms. It's a strange thing to do. Martin When students do activities, I and some students think have to give clear instructions. I'm mad. Carol I don't like students who talk Yoko I repeat new words four when I'm listening to other or five times; it's the only students. That's really irritating. way to remember. Jean Pierre In English, you often write words in one way and say them in another; it's very confusing. Glossary Write SYN (synonym) or OPP (opposite) next to each pair of words. helpful useful or giving help annoying If something is annoying, it makes you possible/impossible OPP a bit angry. SYN irritating 1 mad/crazy ______ clear easy to understand opp confusing 2 annoying/irritating _____ impossible not possible opp possible necessary If something is necessary, you must 3 necessary/unnecessary have it or do it. opp unnecessary 4 clear/confusing _____ strange unusual and perhaps not normal syn odd 5 odd/strange _____ mad very unusual and not normal syn crazy it's the only way there is no other way Complete the sentences. ► I've got two dictionaries. One of them is <u>unnecessary</u>. 1 His explanation was very ______; I didn't understand anything. 2 An old man in the street was very _____ and gave me directions. 3 It's ______ to fly round the world in five hours. 4 My brother has got three jobs, and works every day of the year. I think he's _____ 5 I was the _____ person to come by car; the others took the bus or walked. 6 Cookery books are useful, but they aren't 7 My cat is very ______. He likes dog food more than cat food. 8 He gave me very ______ instructions to get to the house, so I had no problems. 9 My sister talks all the time when I'm watching TV: it's very

71 I can use common adverbs

A Emphasis 60

only	We use only to say 'no more than'. She was only 17 when she got married. (It's unusual to get married at 17.) We can walk to the station — it's only five minutes. (Not 15 or 20.)
even	We often use even before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe. It's cold here, even in summer. (In most places, it's warm in the summer.) My older brother is 1.90m, and my younger brother is even taller.
still	We use still to say that a fact or situation continues to be true. After 25 years, I still love my job. (I continue to love my job.) Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're still in London.
especially (also particularly)	We use especially to say 'more than others' or 'more than usual'. We liked the towns in the south, especially Seville. (Seville was the best.) It's very hot here, especially in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.)

Put the word	in brackets	in the con	roct place	in the	contonco
rut the word	in brackets	in the cor	rect place	in the	sentence.

It's six kilometres to the next town.	(only)	It	's only	six k	cilometres	to the	e next tou	un.

- 1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still) ___
- 2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially)
- 3 There are three students in the class. (only)
- 4 He works on Sundays. (even)
- 5 She's at university. (still) ____
- 6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is bigger. (even)

Circle the correct answer.

- ► The food is good there, only especially the fish.
- 1 He was only/even 15 when he left school.
- 2 I've seen the film five times and I even/still enjoy it.
- **3** The students are very nice, still/particularly Marcel.
- 4 There are even/only three bridges like this in the world.
- 5 It was cold yesterday but it's even/still colder today.
- 6 I study hard but my English is still/only terrible.

Write the new words in your own sentences. Say them to yourself.

Complete the sentences.

	He's ninety, but he <u>still</u> drives a car.	
1	four people came to the party; it was a bit sa	ad.
2	They've been in Hong Kong for ten years and they	like living there.
3	I love fish,salmon.	
4	He can't drive; he's 15.	
5	Jacqui's thin, but her sister is thinner.	
6	She enjoyed the book, the first part.	



0%

a bit/a little quite very extremely absolutely really

a bit/a little	Use a bit or a little before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT a bit good) The lesson was a bit boring. It's a little warmer than yesterday.
quite	= more than a bit, but less than very The film was quite interesting. The town is quite big.
extremely	= a bit stronger than <i>very</i> Use extremely before gradable adjectives (see spotlight). I was extremely tired by 6 o'clock. We were extremely busy on Saturday.
absolutely	Use absolutely before ungradable adjectives (see spotlight) for emphasis. The food was absolutely delicious. The party was absolutely fantastic.
really	 very, extremely or absolutely You can use really with gradable and ungradable adjectives, and with verbs. The restaurant was really good. The weather was really terrible. We were really tired. I really liked the film.

4 Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- It was quite a bit interesting.
- This programme is teally/absolutely terrible.
- 1 The weather was very/absolutely nice.
- 2 Her new shoes are very/absolutely wonderful.
- 3 My sister is a bit/a little untidy.
- 4 I really/extremely want to go to Australia.
- 5 She was really/extremely friendly.
- 6 Their flat is a bit/quite nice.
- 7 The hotel was very/really good.
- 8 The boat is extremely/really enormous.

spotlight Gradable and ungradable adjectives

Gradable adjectives, e.g. good, big, bad, nice, boring, young, tired, busy
Ungradable adjectives, e.g. awful, perfect, terrible,

Ungradable adjectives, e.g. awful, perfect, terrible, wonderful, delicious, fantastic (= very, very good), enormous (= very, very big)

Sewrite the sentences. Use an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined word(s).

- The film was a bit boring. The film was a little boring.
- ► The children were really fantastic. The children were absolutely fantastic.
- 1 He was very good. __
- 2 The holiday was <u>absolutely</u> wonderful.
- 3 She's a little unfriendly.
- 4 The kitchen was extremely clean.
- 5 The room was a bit small. ____
- 6 Her new boyfriend is really awful.
- 7 They're <u>really</u> nice people. ___
- 8 The weather was <u>absolutely</u> terrible. ___

72 I can use irregular verbs

A Past tenses 6

Here are some common irregular verbs with their past tense forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

be was/were bring brought buy bought cost cost did drive feel felt	find found fly flew forget give gave go went grow grew hold held	keep kept know knew leave left lend lent put put read read ring rang	run ran see saw send sent sit sat sleep slept speak spoke spend spent	stand stood swim swam take took teach taught think thought win won write wrote
--	--	--	---	--

Circle tile rigite drisvers	1	Circle	the	right	answers
-----------------------------	---	--------	-----	-------	---------

Three	verbs	which	change	from	'i' to	o 'a'	in	the	past	tens

(sit) (ring) (swim) bring

1 Three verbs which have the same form in the infinitive and the past tense. put cost read run

2 Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'o' in the past tense. write drive give win

3 Three verbs which change the final 'd' to 't' in the past tense. spend stand send lend

4 Three verbs which change from 'o' to 'e' in the past tense.

know hold cost grow

Three verbs which form the past tense with '-ought'.

teach buy bring think

2 Find eight more past tense verbs.

seflew no left spokedoke ptenawondide found ef el tasato

3 Complete the sentences using the correct verb in the past tense.

This coat cost more than €500.

1 Iw so tired, Is for ten hours.

2 We s across the river.

3 Ir her on my mobile.

4 He w the email but f to send it.

5 They s the film last night.

6 She b a new car yesterday.

7 They s up when he came in.

8 We t a taxi, then w to the cinema.

Test yourself. Cover the past tense forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past tense forms?

B Past participles 60

Here are the same irregular verbs as on page 175 with their **past participle** forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

be bring buy cost do drive feel	been brought bought cost done driven felt	find fly forget give go grow hold	found flown forgotten given gone grown held	keep know leave lend put read ring	kept known left lent put read rung	run see send sit sleep speak spend	run seen sent sat slept spoken spent	stand swim take teach think win write	stood swum taken taught thought won written	
---	---	---	---	--	--	--	--	---	---	--

Eleven more of these verbs have the same form in the past tense and past participle, e.g. find, found, found. Write the past tense/past participle below.

find <pre>find</pre>	drive X leave	bring be	know cost	keep run	do think	put go	fly ring	feel sleep	hold stand up	write
foun	d	**************************************	Paramananan (managa nga sabasa			***************************************	######################################	**************************************	errorendamento sant	

Write the past participle of the verbs below. What is similar about them?

-	fly flown	4	take	7	speak
1	forget	5	write	8	drive
2	give	6	know	a	Grow

3 see

Complete the questions with a past participle of a verb from the box. You will answer the questions in Exercise 8.

	teach	read	swim	sleep	speak	send	drive	lend.	win	
Ha 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8		someone an Englisi a Porsche a lesson? any mone an email on a boa n the Me	ey? to the wro	per? ong person an Sea?	Landard Manager	UT YOU	now) Have y ~ No, Has y	ight eventen use eventen use eventen use eventen event	r (= at any r in the pres Jonathan N er been to Ca	ent perfe Iills? airo?

- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.
- Test yourself. Cover the past participle forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past participle forms?

73 I can use phrasal verbs

A Meaning 60

Most phrasal verbs have a verb (sit, stand, get, etc.) and a particle (up, on, off, etc.).
Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.









Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
give something up	He had to give up football.	stop doing something
get on with someone	I like Sue; we get on well.	have a good relationship
take off	The plane couldn't take off.	leave the ground and start flying
grow up	When Ben grows up , he wants to be a vet.	change from a child to an adult
find out something	I must find out the times of the trains to Southampton.	find a fact or piece of information you need/want
go out	Let's go out this evening.	leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. cinema, disco, etc.

Circle the correct particle.

- I'd like to lie up down for a few minutes.
- 1 Can we find out/over the cost of the tickets?
- 2 Where did she grow out/up?
- 3 He fell over/on when he ran down the road.
- 4 Do you want to go out/off this evening?
- 5 Pearl wants to give on/up her job.
- 6 Do you get in/on well with your parents?

spotlight Phrasal verbs

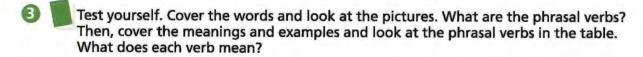
Phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. We don't use them as often in formal written English. Be careful: some have more than one meaning:

The plane couldn't **take off**.

You can take off your jacket.

2 0	omplete	the	sentences	with	the	correct	particle.
-----	---------	-----	-----------	------	-----	---------	-----------

- ▶ Pasha doesn't want to go <u>out</u> this evening; she's tired.
- 1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find _____
- 2 Everyone stood ______ when he came into the room.
- 3 Maciej doesn't spend much time with his sister; they don't get _______ very well.
- 4 She sat ______ at the table and started eating.
- 5 The doctor told me to lie _____ on the bed.
- 6 I told my brother to give _____smoking.
- 7 The plane took ______ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
- 8 She fell _____ in the street, but several people helped her.



Grammar 6

Some phrasal verbs don't have an object.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
go up	The price of petrol will go up soon.	increase, become more
carry on with something	Can we carry on with the exercise?	continue with something
go back	She wants to go back to London.	return to a place
wake up	I always wake up at 7.00 a.m.	stop sleeping

Other phrasal verbs need an object. It can go before or after the particle.



Take off your jacket. Take your jacket off.



Could you turn on the light? Could you turn the light on?



Put on your shoes. Put your shoes on.

When the object is a pronoun (e.g. it, them) it must go before the particle. Take it off. (NOT Take off it.)

Can I **try <u>them</u> on?** (NOT ... try on them.)

Could you turn it on? (NOT ... turn on it.) Look it up in that dictionary. (NOT ... Look up it.)

- Change the **bold** words to it or them. Put the pronoun in the correct place.
 - Look it up. Look up the word.
 - Look up both words. Look them up.
 - 1 Take off **your jacket**. 6 Try on **this shirt**.

 - 2 Try on these trousers.
 - 3 Turn on the TV.

- 4 Put those socks on.
- 5 Take off **your shoes**.
- 7 Turn on the lights.
 - 8 Put **your coat** on.
- Are the sentences correct or do they need the pronoun it? Where? Look at the examples.
 - Could you turn on, please? Could you turn it on, please?
 - ▶ Please sit down. correct
 - 1 Could I try on?
 - 2 Do you want to go back?
 - 3 You can take off if you're hot.
 - 4 Look up in the dictionary.
 - 5 His salary will go up soon.
 - 6 Do they want to stop or carry on?
 - 7 Did you put on? _____
 - 8 What time do you usually wake up?
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
 - 1 Where did you grow up?
 - 2 How do you feel when you wake up?
 - 3 How often do you go out in the evenings?
 - Do you get on well with people who live near you?
 - When you buy clothes, do you usually try them on first?

74 I can use prepositions of time 6

at	a time at six o'clock at mid	lday/midnight	a mealtime at breakfast/lunch/dinner (time)		
on	a day on Tuesday on I on Tuesdays = ever on my birthday on			tember 1 st sixth of May	
in	a part of a day in the morning in the afternoon in the evening	a season in (the) spring in (the) autum		a month, year or century in July/December in 1990/2050 in the 21st century = 2000 – 2099	

				Tartes 1
Sr	20	tli	a	ht
	Albert 1	and the last		- Dardon I

at

We also use at in these phrases:

I relax at the weekend.

Some doctors work at night. NOT in the night

What are you doing at Christmas/at New Year?

- Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.
 - in the spring/February 15th/the evening
 - 1 at teatime/2005/the weekend
 - 2 **in** August/summer/Friday
 - 3 **on** April/your birthday/Saturdays
 - 4 at night/the morning/half past seven
 - 5 in autumn/the 20th century/4.00

- 6 **on** midnight/June 2nd/Sunday afternoon
- 7 at breakfast/midday/the autumn
- 8 **on** winter/Christmas Day/the fifth of May
- 9 in the afternoon/dinnertime/2008
- 10 at New Year/the evening/six o'clock

2	Write the	correct	preposition	in	each	space.
---	-----------	---------	-------------	----	------	--------

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ▶ _On Thursday morning (1)
about nine, and got there (2) lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) the
afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) spring, but it was great
- really sunny. (5) Friday we had lunch with an old friend who I met at university (6) 1997.
Then (7) the evening, we went to a restaurant, and got home (8) midnight. (9) the
weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton
Festival which starts (10) 6 May.

ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

N٢	en do you
1	get up?
2	study English?
3	go swimming?
4	watch TV?
5	go to sleep?

When was the last tir	me you
-----------------------	--------

- 6 saw your family?
- 7 went on holiday? _____
- 8 went to the mountains? ______

 9 went to bed very late? _____
- 10 went to a party? _____

75 I can use time words and phrases

A Past, present and future 60

Look at the diary and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

Mon	8	Jon and Trish 7.30	Mon	15	London
Tues	9	pay phone bill	Tues	16	dinner with Scott 8.00
Wed	10	lunch with Liz 1.00	Wed	17	+
	_	meet Brian 7.45			•
Thur	(11)	cinema 7.15	Thur	18	Dr Holton 10.45
Fri	12	meeting 9.00 - 12.00	Fri	19	theatre 8.00
		Wheeler's bar 7.30			
Sat	13	stay at Gary's	Sat	20	Pete's birthday
Sun	14	,	Sun	21	Mum and Dad for lunch

I was in Moscow last week. I saw Jon and Trish three days ago. I had lunch with Liz yesterday. I went out with Brian last night. I'm going to the cinema this evening. I've got a meeting tomorrow morning. I'm going to stay at Gary's this weekend. Then I'm in London for three days next week. I have a doctor's appointment next Thursday. I'm seeing my parents in ten days' time.

1	True	or	false?	Write	T	or	F.
---	------	----	--------	-------	---	----	----

- ▶ I was in Moscow last week.
- 1 I got back from Moscow four days ago. _____
- 2 I saw Jon and Trish this week.
- 3 I paid the phone bill three days ago. _____
- 4 I met Brian yesterday.
- 5 I was in London last week. _____
- 6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon.
- 7 I'm going out tomorrow evening.
- 8 I'm seeing Scott in four days' time. _____
- 9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week's time.
- 10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday.

Glossary

last week = April 1 - 7 NOT the last week this week = April 8-14 next week = April 15 - 21 NOT the next week last night or yesterday evening NOT yesterday night/last evening appointment a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, usually for work or with a doctor, dentist, etc.

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We saw them yesterday <u>evening</u>.
 4 He wants to come in a week's _____
- 2 I wrote Pete's birthday in my _____.
- 3 She rang me at 10 o'clock last ______ . 6 I'm going to Italy _____ week.
- 1 She saw Paul about three days ______. 5 She can't come. She's got a dentist's
- Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.
 - ► I had lunch with Liz a week ago. 1 _____ on Thursday evening.
 - 2 _____ five days ago.
 - 3 last weekend.
- 4 ______tomorrow morning.
- 5 _____ in three days' time.

B Words and phrases often confused 6.

before/after	
	10.00 11.00 12.00 Lunch 2.00 3.00 4.00 We did some shopping before lunch. We went for a coffee after lunch.
at the moment/ in a minute	I'm very busy at the moment. = I'm very busy now. NOT in this moment I'll speak to you in a minute. = I'll speak to you one or two minutes from now.
soon/later	I'm going home soon . = I'm going home in a short time from now. Can I talk to you later? = Can I talk to you in the future but not now?
until	We worked until ten o'clock. = We stopped work at 10.00. NOT by 10.00 I want to stay here until July. = I don't want to go before July.
for/since	I moved to this house. Sarah was born. Sarah is now five years old.
	I've lived here since Sarah was born. I've lived here for five years.

4 Circle the correct answer.

- Dinner will be ready at (in)a minute.
- 1 I had a shower before/after I went to bed.
- 2 We went home before/after work and watched TV.
- 3 I usually work until/for one o'clock, and then have a sandwich.
- 4 She's in the library at/in the moment.
- 5 I haven't seen her for/since last week.
- 6 I'm very busy this morning. Can I phone you later/soon?
- 7 She has worked here for/since seven years.
- 8 The taxi will be here later/soon. Are you ready?

spotlight for and since

We use **for** with a period of time (**for** two weeks, six months, etc.), and **since** with a point in time (**since** 2003, last year, I came to England, etc.). We often use these words with the present perfect. I've been at university **for** a **year**. I've known Joe **since** 2002.

- Complete the sentences. Use soon, later, before, at, in, until, for or since.
 - ▶ I had a rest <u>after</u> lunch.
 - 1 She waited ______ 7.00, then went home.
 - 2 He's been here _____ three weeks.
 - 3 I'm getting tired. Can we go home _____?
 - 4 Can you help me? ~ Yes, I'll be with you _____ a minute.
 - 5 What are you doing _____ the moment?
 - 6 We haven't seen them _____ last summer.
 - 7 I wrote the email _____ I went out.
 - 8 I'm busy tomorrow. Can we go out _____ this week?
- 6 Translate the words in **bold** in this unit into your own language.

76 I can use prepositions of place and movement

A In, at, on 60

at a position, for example a place to meet or where something happens Let's meet at the bank/at the bus stop. I saw him at the match/at the party at home/at work/at school.



in a three-dimensional space
 in a box, a cupboard
 in a room, an office, a flat
 in a garden, a park



in a big area
in a village/town/city
in the countryside
in London/Spain/Asia/the world





on a line
on the road, the coast,
the river



on a surface on the table, the wall on the first floor



in or on? He's in the river. She's on the river.

Circle the correct preposition.

- ► I live in on Canada.
- 1 She's not in/on her office.
- 2 The photos are in/on the wall.
- 3 We met in/at a golf match.
- 4 We stayed in/on a lovely village.
- **5** She's swimming in/on the pool.
- 6 Barcelona is in/on the coast.
- 7 We live at/in the countryside.

- 8 There are too many cars in/on the road.
- 9 Dinner is on/at the table.
- 10 They're sitting in/at the garden.
- 11 The books are on/in the table.
- 12 I saw her in/at the bus stop.
- 13 The number is in/on the door.
- 14 I spoke to her in/at the party.

A POLIT VOL

2 Complete the questions with in, on, or at.

- Which country do you live __in__?
 Do you live _____ a village, a town, or a city?
 Do you live _____ a flat or a house?
 Is your town _____ a river?
- 4 Which floor is your bedroom _____?
- 5 Do you like walking _____ the countryside?
- 6 Are you learning English _____ school, ____ work, or ____ an English-speaking country?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

B Other prepositions 6.



The people are in front of the garage. The postman is between mum and dad. The adults are behind the children. The tree is near the house.

The office is above the garage. The garage is below the office. The seat is **next to** the bus stop. The bus stop is **opposite** the garage.

4	True	or	false?	Write	T	or	F.
---	------	----	--------	-------	---	----	----

- ► The tree's opposite the house. _ F
- 1 The blue car's near the house. ____
- 2 The big window is above the door.
- 3 The people are opposite the garage.
- 4 The postman's next to mum. ____
- 5 The seat's between the house and the tree.
- 6 The children are behind mum and dad.
- 7 The girl is in front of the postman. ____
- 8 The front door's below the big window.
- 9 The bus stop's next to the green car.

Complete the sentences.

- The tree's behind the blue car.
- 1 The bus stop is _____ the seat.
- 2 The blue car is _____ the tree.
- 3 The boy's standing _____ dad.
- 4 The green car's _____ the bus stop.
- 5 The bus stop is _____ the green car and the seat.
- 6 The seat is _____ the garage.
- 7 The postman's _____ dad.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

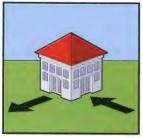
- 4 Are there any shops near it?

1 What's opposite the building where you live? 2 What's behind your building? _____ 3 What's next to it?

5 What's above your living room? _____ 6 What's below your bedroom? _____

Test yourself. Cover the sentences and look at the picture. What can you say about ... the people? the postman? the office? the garage? the seat? the bus stop?

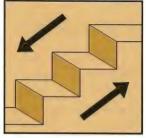
C Prepositions of movement 60







go across

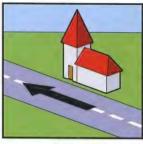


go down

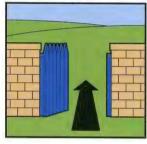


go along

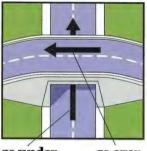
go up



go past the church



go through



go under go over

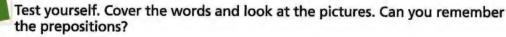
Circle the correct word.

- Don't run down the hill church.
- 1 Walk under the trees/field.
- **2** Drive along the city/motorway.
- **3** Don't go across the river/gate.
- 4 Go into the beach/shop.
- 5 Walk through the gate/stairs.

- 6 I ran past the bus stop/countryside.
 - 7 Go up the floor/mountain.
- 8 Don't run down the stairs/bridge.
- 9 Walk out of the building/hill.
- 10 We flew over the sky/field.

Complete 1-10 with a preposition in each sentence.

- ► Go straight on, along this road. 1 We shouted hello as the boat went ______ the bridge. 2 She went _____ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist. 3 They drove _____ the hill to look at the view from the top. 4 We walked _____ the river for about thirty minutes, then walked back. 5 We drove ______ a restaurant on the way to the station. 6 He came _____ the door and fell over; it was very funny. the bank and saw the accident. 8 We went _____ the hill, into the valley below. 9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens and he just ran _____ the road.



10 We swam _____ the bridge, so they couldn't see us.

77 I can use link words (1)

A And, also, too, as well 👀

The city centre is di	rty and very noisy.	And links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,).
The centre is dirty,	and it's also very expensive. and it also costs a lot to live there.	Also goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. be, can, but before the main verb.
The centre is dirty,	and it's very expensive and it costs a lot to live there as well.	Too and as well go at the end of the sentence. Too and as well are more informal than also.

		Too and as well are more informal than also.				
	Are also, too or as well in the correct positions? Put a tick (\checkmark) or a cross (X).					
1	 You need a dictionary, and as well a gram 	mar book is usefulX				
	1 The house is beautiful, and it's near the pa	rk also				
:	2 He speaks German, and he understands to	oo Greek				
	3 We went out for dinner and Lucy came as	well				
	4 I cleaned the house and washed also the c	ar				
!	5 She worked in Rome, and I think she work	ed in Ravenna too				
•	6 We've got a big garden and as well a park	near the house				
)	Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.					
		ABOUT YOU				
1	too / and it's good / the weather's / in auto The weather's nice in autumn and it's go	umn/nice/in winter ood in winter too.				
	1 yoghurt / also / like / and I					
	I often eat ice cream	a a distance of a state of the				
2	2 but I go / too / watching TV / to the cinem I enjoy					
3	3 German / as well / understand / I can / and					
	I can speak English					
4	4 also / but I / music / of books / listen to					
	I read a lot	H H B 500				
	5 and / on TV / I watch it / as well / football					
	I play					

▶ The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.

B Reason and result 60



I went into the café because it was raining. I went into the café because of the rain.	because (of) comes before the reason because + clause because of + noun	
I went into the café (in order) to get out of the rain. = I went in the café because it was raining.	(in order) to comes before the reason (in order) to + verb	
It was raining, so I went into the café. = I went in the café because it was raining.	so comes before the result so + clause There is usually a comma (,) before so.	

4 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ I took my umbrella because so it was raining.
- 1 I stayed at home because/because of the weather.
- 2 We went to Paris so/to see a friend.
- 3 I couldn't go out because/because of I had to study.
- 4 It was my birthday, so/because we had a party.
- 5 She went to the market to/because get a book.
- 6 She lost her passport, so/because she couldn't go to China.

Write because, because of, so, or to.

- The were late because of the traffic.

 1 I'm going to the chemist's get some aspirins.

 2 It was a nice day, we went out.

 3 I bought the house the beautiful view.
- 4 I don't go to the theatre very often ______ it's too expensive.
- 5 I'm going out now, ______ I'll phone you tomorrow.
- 6 She went to the centre _____ meet her friend.
- 7 I think he married her _____ her money.
- 8 Are you studying English ______ get a better job?

78 I can use link words (2)

A When and if (future) 60

I'll post the letter when I go out. (I'm sure I'm going out later.)
I'll post the letter if I go out. (I'm not sure I'm going out later.)
OR
When I go out,
If I go out,
I'll post the letter.
The verb after when or if is usually in the present simple, not the will form.
NOT I'll post the letter when I will go out.

Circle the correct answer.

- I'll tell her if I see her. = I'm sure(not sure)that I'll see her.
- 1 He'll be OK when he sees her. = He's sure/not sure that he'll see her.
- 2 If I go to Beijing, I'll email you. = I'm sure/not sure that I'll go to Beijing.
- 3 I'll ring you if I can come. = I'm sure/not sure that I can come.
- 4 He'll feel better when he gets home. = It's sure/not sure that he's going home.
- 5 When we get on the train, we'll ring you. = It's sure/not sure that we'll get on the train.
- 6 You'll find the museum if you take a map. = It's sure/not sure that you'll take a map.

Complete the sentences with if or when.

- If _____ you miss the seven o'clock train, you'll have to walk.
 ______ it's cold tonight, we'll have soup.
 ______ I'm 30, I'll have a party.
 I'll call you ______ you forget to ring me.
- 4 We'll leave ______ it stops raining.
- 5 He'll do it _____ he wakes up tomorrow.
- 6 ______ you lose your key, you can phone me.

B When and while 6

When and while both mean 'in that period of	Lime'.
I phoned the doctor when I was on holiday.	= in a period when I was on holiday
phoned the doctor	
past	now
on holiday (a period of time)	
When (but not while) also means 'at that mom	ent' or 'at that time'.
I gave Jack the money when he got home. NOT while he got home.	= at the time I met him
gave him the money	
past X X	now
Jack got home	

- Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.
 - ▶ The lesson started when while the students sat down.
 - 1 Come and see me while/when you arrive.
 - 2 I'll help with the children when/while you get home.
 - 3 She saw the accident while/when she was shopping.
 - 4 She met Mr Jacks while/when she got to the station.
 - 5 I'll wash the car while/when you're at work.
 - 6 Shall we go out when/while it stops raining?



C A sequence of actions 60

... and we had a really nice week. **Firstly**, we spent a few days in Budapest, **then** we went to Vienna. **Afterwards**, we went on a tour of the Lakes and stayed in Salzburg for a couple of nights.

... it's very easy to make.

First of all, you fry the meat, and then you fry some onions and add them to the meat. After that, you add some red wine and water and cook slowly for three hours. Finally, you add some red pepper and cook it for fifteen minutes.

Glossary

firstly You say firstly when you are talking about the first thing in a list. (also first or first of all) (and) then/after that You say (and) then or after that when you are talking about the next thing in a list. (also afterwards) finally You say finally when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually if it is a long list of four or more things.

	pepper and cook it for fifteen minutes. In a list, usually if it is a long list of four or more things.				
Co	omplete the texts with link words. Don't use the same word twice.				
A	For this job, Firstly, you have to fill in a form. (1) you have to go and talk to the boss. (2), you meet other people who work in the company. (3), you have to do a written test.				
В	(4), I checked the train times on the internet, and (5) I looked at the flights to see if they were cheaper.				
Pu	at the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.				
•	I checked the answers. / I did all the grammar exercises. First of all, I did all the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.				
1					
2	I did a Masters degree. / I did a degree in history. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.				
3	We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a few days. / We started our holiday in Heidelberg.				
4	I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.				
) A	BOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words. First of all, [

79 I can use 'have' and 'have got'

A Have and have got 60

My brother has/has got a house in the country. His wife has/'s got an art studio there.	If you have/have got something, it is yours; it belongs to you.	
She has/has got a bad cold at the moment.	Use have/have got to describe illness.	
They have/'ve got two young daughters.	Use have/have got to describe relationships.	
Both girls have/have got blonde hair.	Use have/have got to describe appearance.	

spotlight have and have got

Have is a full verb. Use **do**, **does** and **did** in questions, short answers and negatives. **Do** they **have** a car? \sim Yes, they **do**. I **didn't have** a job last year.

In negatives and questions, **have got** is more common than **have** with **do**. We don't use **have got** in short answers. *Have* they **got** a car? He **hasn't got** a bike. He **doesn't have** a bike. (less common)

1	Change have	to the correct	form of have	got in each	sentence.
---	-------------	----------------	--------------	-------------	-----------

- ► I have an old car. I've got an old car.
- 1 She has blue eyes. ...
- 2 They have a small dog. . ______
- 3 I don't have a mobile phone.
- 4 He doesn't have any money. ...
- 5 Do you have any sisters?
- 6 Does she have a flat in town? _____

Correct the mistakes.

- ► He have a car. He's got a car. or He has a car.
- 1 She got any children? ______
- 2 They has got a lovely garden.
- 3 Have she got long hair?
- 4 My sister no have a boyfriend.
- 5 Have you a computer? _____
- 6 We don't got any friends here.

3 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

	Have you got a car?	If so, what kind?
1	Have you a bike?	If so, when do you use it?
2	you have a computer?	If so, what kind?
3	your parents got a dog?	If so, what's its name?
4	you got an English dictionary?	If so, what's it called?
5	you have any English-speaking friends?	If so, who are they?

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Have + noun 6

have breakfast/lunch/dinner NOT the breakfast/the lunch/the dinner	We had lunch in a pizzeria.	
have a wash/a shower/a bath	I had a quick shower before I left.	
have a drink/something to eat	I had a drink with Joe last night. Let's have something to eat .	
have a swim/a walk/a run activities you do because you enjoy them	I didn't have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.	
have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day	We had a great time in Kyoto.	
have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey	Have a nice weekend. ~ Yeah, you too.	
have a break = stop work for a short period and relax have a rest = relax and do nothing	Let's have a break for ten minutes. I'm going to have a rest this weekend.	

You can't use have got in these expressions. Not Let's have got a break.

Make four more groups of phrases with have from the words below.

swim shower	breakfast weekend	holiday break ✓	bath dinner	journey walk	rest ✓ wash	lunch run
Group 1	Group	2 Gr	oup 3	Group 4	Gro	up 5
rest						
break						

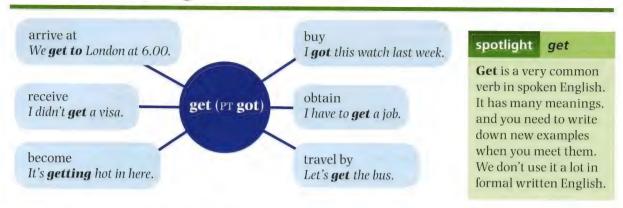
6 Complete the postcard.

n Parati. Yesterday we had a (1)	
the evening we had a (2)	in the bar
in a nice fish restau	urant. We're going
this morning, then maybe do some mo	re shopping this
after that. I hope you're ex	joying yourself in
back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. S	ee you soon.
	the evening we had a (2) in a nice fish restau this morning, then maybe do some mo

Omplete the sentences.

	I got up late and didn't have any breakfast.
1	Would you like to have something to?
2	I worked hard today, so I'm going to have a this evening.
3	We have a twenty-minute between the lessons.
4	All the buses were late this morning, so I had a bad to work.
5	Did you have a good in London yesterday?
6	Have a nice See you on Monday.
7	They had a fantastic in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks
8	I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a

80 I can use 'get' 60



Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of get. You will complete column 3 in Exercise 2.

	He becomes angry if you're late.	He gets angry if you're late.	
1	Did you receive my message?		
2	I must buy some new clothes.		
3	We arrived home late last night.		
4	It's becoming cold.		
5	I received three letters today.		
6	Where did you buy that bag?		
7	He needs to obtain a job.		
8	Do you want to travel by train?		

Cover sentences 1 – 8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does get mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

He gets	angry if you're late.	become
	J J J	

Complete the sentences in a logical way, using get.

	There weren't any buses, so we got the train		
1	Do you want to walk or?		
2	What time did you?		
3	Those shoes are lovely. Where did you	?	
4	Could you close the window? It's		
5	I must go now, it's		
6	She sent me an email but I didn't		
7	I need a map of the town centre. Where can I	?	
8	I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to		

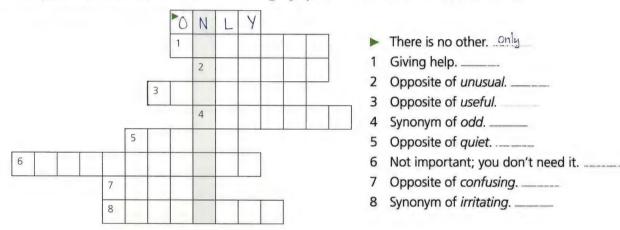
Review: Language

Unit 70

1 Describe each picture with an adjective.



2 Complete the crossword. The letters in grey spell out another word. What is it?



Unit 71

1 Add one word from the box to the correct place in each sentence.

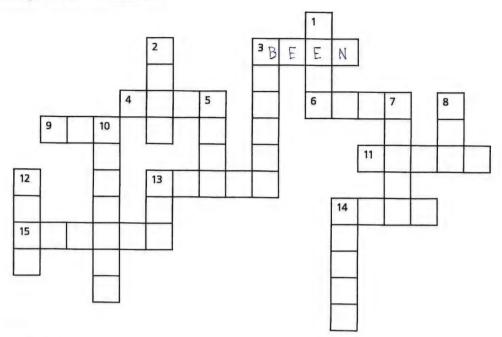
even	absolutely	still	quite
only	especially 🗸	a bit	

- ▶ I play tennis a lot, \(\lambda \) in the summer. especially
- 1 We couldn't play the match with ten players.
- 2 He lives in Italy, but speaks English most of the time. _____
- The food is fantastic in that restaurant.
- 4 Max didn't like the film, but I thought it was
- 5 The last film was good, but this is better.
- My English is getting better.

2		. 1				
1	Complete	thec	antancas	in a	cultable	MAN
Shee	COMBIELE	LIIC 3		111 4	Julianie	vvav

- There are too many cars on the roads, but I still drive to work
- 1 I go swimming, even in
- 2 It was August, but the weather was really
- 3 The service is a bit ______ but the food is really good.
- 4 She can't drive; she's only
- 5 By the end of the evening I was quite
- 6 I like her new boyfriend; he's extremely

Complete the crossword.



4c	ross ->	
3	She hasn't	been to the dentist for a year.
		that book?
6	They	the bus to work this morning.
9	1	the books on the shelf.
11	yours?	these keys on the floor. Are they
13	Не	for eight hours last night.
14	1	her an email yesterday.
15	He	to post the letter.

DO	MU 1
1	We to the cinema on Saturday.
2	Have you his new film?
3	Shesome new jeans at the weekend.
5	Have you your homework?
7	How long have you her?
8	Heten kilometres this morning.
10	I the book was very good.
12	She home at 8 o'clock this morning.
13	We on the floor because there were no chairs.
14	I all my money on holiday.

Unit 73

1 Make sentences from the words.

	morning / I / woke / this / early / up I woke up early this morning.
1	in / grew / I / up / a / village
2	you / down / why / sit / don't / ?
3	find / I / address / out / must / their
4	over / street / the / fell / in / she
5	night / you / out / last / did / go / ?
6	light / on / could / the / you / turn / ?
7	look / in / up / dictionary / it / your
8	them/I/try/could/on/2

Can I remove my jacket?	take off									
1 I stopped smoking last year 2 The price of flats is increasing all the time 3 She lives in Paris but wants to return to Rome										
vviicii i iiiioi uiio i cair s	OTTERIOR WITH EXCICISE									
1. 74										
nit /4										
	C. W. C. C. C.	C. 40 - 40 - 10								
the words and phrases	in the correct place	in the table.								
the morning Mor	nday morning Dece	ember my birthday breakfast								
In	At	On								
spoke Spanish very well, hotel near Malaga. I sti where to live. I found a the hotel for two year large hotel on the Algaman at the hotel - he a married. We bought a si	California and went to, and I got a job as a auged in one of the ronice apartment nears. After that I got a rve in the south of Palso worked there - avoid all house near the house	o live in Spain. I already receptionist in a tourist oms and looked for somethe town and I worked at a similar job, this time in a cortugal. I met a Spanish d six months later we gototel and one month ago,								
ead the text, then come Seven years ago I left spoke Spanish very well hotel near Malaga. I stimbere to live. I found a the hotel for two year large hotel on the Algaman at the hotel - he amarried. We bought a si I found out that we're room for him - or her.	California and went to, and I got a job as a ayed in one of the ronice apartment nears. After that I got a rve in the south of Palso worked there - averaging to have a baby before I went to live	receptionist in a tourist oms and looked for some- the town and I worked at I similar job, this time in a ortugal. I met a Spanish I d six months later we got otel and one month ago, I we are now preparing a								
ead the text, then come Seven years ago I left spoke Spanish very well, hotel near Malaga. I sto where to live. I found a the hotel for two year large hotel on the Alga man at the hotel - he a married. We bought a si I found out that we're room for him - or her. I already spoke Spanish I I stayed in one of the room	California and went to and I got a job as a auged in one of the rowice apartment nears. After that I got a rive in the south of Palso worked there - august and the house near the house going to have a baby before I went to live oms in the hotel until I	receptionist in a tourist oms and looked for some- the town and I worked at a similar job, this time in a ortugal. I met a Spanish ad six months later we got otel and one month ago, . We are now preparing a								
ead the text, then come Seven years ago I left spoke Spanish very well hotel near Malaga. I stiwhere to live. I found a the hotel for two year large hotel on the Algaman at the hotel - he a married. We bought a sill found out that we're room for him - or her. I already spoke Spanish I stayed in one of the roll met a Spanish man after	California and went to and I got a job as a auged in one of the ronice apartment nears. After that I got a rve in the south of Palso worked there - august house near the house of a babut before I went to live oms in the hotel until I ar I	receptionist in a tourist oms and looked for some- the town and I worked at a similar job, this time in a ortugal. I met a Spanish ad six months later we got otel and one month ago, . We are now preparing a								
ead the text, then come Seven years ago I left spoke Spanish very well, hotel near Malaga. I stowhere to live. I found a the hotel for two year large hotel on the Algaman at the hotel - he amarried. We bought a si I found out that we're room for him - or her. I already spoke Spanish I stayed in one of the roll met a Spanish man after I've lived in the house I is spoke Spanish I stayed in the house I is spoke I we will be spanish man after I've lived in the house I is spoke I we will be spanish man after I've lived in the house I is spoke I we will be spoke	California and went to and I got a job as a auged in one of the rownice apartment near s. After that I got a rive in the south of Palso worked there - august house near the his going to have a babut before I went to live oms in the hotel until I er I	receptionist in a tourist oms and looked for some- the town and I worked at a similar job, this time in a ortugal. I met a Spanish d six months later we got otel and one month ago, . We are now preparing a								
ead the text, then come Seven years ago I left spoke Spanish very well hotel near Malaga. I stiwhere to live. I found a the hotel for two year large hotel on the Algaman at the hotel - he a married. We bought a sill found out that we're room for him - or her. I already spoke Spanish I stayed in one of the roll met a Spanish man after	California and went to and I got a job as a auged in one of the ronice apartment nears. After that I got a rve in the south of Palso worked there - avenuall house near the hogoing to have a babut before I went to live oms in the hotel until I er I	receptionist in a tourist oms and looked for some- the town and I worked at a similar job, this time in a ortugal. I met a Spanish ad six months later we got otel and one month ago, . We are now preparing a								
	The price of flats is incre She lives in Paris but was The plane couldn't leave We have a good relation When I finish this I can go The words and phrases The words and phrases The morning of Mormidnight the sixth of	The price of flats is increasing all the time. She lives in Paris but wants to return to Rome. The plane couldn't leave the ground and start was a good relationship. When I finish this I can continue with Exercise 2. The words and phrases in the correct place with emorning Monday morning Monday morning December of March half past fire summer Tuesday three o'clock 2007. In At								

2	Put t	he phra	ses in the	correct pla	ce on the li	ne.			
		t night terday a	tomorrov fternoon	w evening this evenir	today 🗸 ng tomorr	last week row morning	next Monday two days ago	in ten days'	time
1	1 Past	2	3	4	► Łoday Present	_	7	8 9_ Fu	ture

1	Put the	letters	in	order	to	make	prepositions.
---	---------	---------	----	-------	----	------	---------------

	wolbe below	5	wodn	10	sotipepo
1	revo	6	scoras	11	tebnewe
2	stap	7	tenx ot	12	gorhhtu

2 Which words from Exercise 1 can go in sentences 1 and 2 below?

8 toin _____

1	I live below /	Jack.
2	Jo ran	the nar

3 Write the words in the correct columns.

the world ✓ school the coast a football match		wall home Germany e the second floor the bedroom
In	At	On
►the world		

Unit 77

1 Match 1 - 8 with a - i.

- a we loved the street life too.
- b I think we'll go back next year.
- c we wanted to visit some friends. ✓
- d see the countryside.
- e we spent a lot of time together.
- f we went to São Paolo as well.
- g the weather; it's cooler then.
- h meet us.
 - i we also took her sister.

My cousin, Peter, did French at university, and he studied a little Chinese ▶ ±00 He first became interested in the language (1)	2 C	omplete	the text w	ith a link w	ord/phrase fi	rom the	box.		
He first became interested in the language (1) his girlfriend, Hua. She's half Chinese, but she has lived in Britain for most of her life. Peter moved to Beijing two years ago (2) study Chinese. Hua went there last year and got a job in a bank, and he (3) got a job, teaching English. They loved living there (4) people were so friendly and life was great. Last month, Hua found a new job in Hong Kong, (5) Peter decided to leave China and go there (6) He's about leaving China, but I'm sure he'll go back and see his friends in the future. Unit 78 Write sentences using phrases from each column.		because	too 🗸	as well	because of	also	to	SO	
(2)study Chinese. Hua went there last year and got a job in a bank, and he (3)got a job, teaching English. They loved living there (4) people were so friendly and life was great. Last month, Hua found a new job in Hong Kong, (5) Peter decided to leave China and go there (6) He's about leaving China, but I'm sure he'll go back and see his friends in the future. Voil get to the airport, ✓ you're travelling on a long flight, you can choose your seat on the plane, you are waiting for the flight, you feel ill during the flight, you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy. When you get to the airport, qo to the check—th desk. ✓ When you get to the airport, qo to the check—th desk. ✓ When you get to the airport of all finally while if then when ✓ When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really)	Н	e first be	came interest	ed in the lan	guage (1)			his girlfrie	nd, Hua. She's half
people were so friendly and life was great. Last month, Hua found a new job in Hong Kong, (5) Peter decided to leave China and go there (6) He's about leaving China, but I'm sure he'll go back and see his friends in the future. Vou get to the airport, /- you're travelling on a long flight, you can choose your seat on the plane, When you are waiting for the flight, you feel ill during the flight, you feel ill during the flight, you lose your passport on holiday, When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk.	(2	2)		study Chines	e. Hua went th	ere last y	ear and	d got a jol	b in a bank, and he
Write sentences using phrases from each column. you get to the airport, ✓ you're travelling on a long flight, you can choose your seat on the plane, When you are waiting for the flight, you feel ill during the flight, you lose your passport on holiday, when you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport is go to the check-in desk. ✓ I was a shower. Ar (2)	p	eople we	re so friendly	and life was	great. Last mo	nth, Hua	found	a new job	in Hong Kong,
Write sentences using phrases from each column. you get to the airport, ✓ you're travelling on a long flight, you can choose your seat on the plane, When you are waiting for the flight, you feel ill during the flight, you lose your passport on holiday, when you get to the airport, ap to the check-in desk. When you get to the airport, ap to the check-in desk. Complete the text with words from the box. after that first of all finally while if then when ✓ When you getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really limits and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really limits to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really limits to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really limits the departure lounge. tell the airline staff. go to the embassy. tell the airline staff. go to the embassy. sit near the front where it's quiet. sit in the departure lounge. don't leave anything on the plane. always wear comfortable clothes. go to the embassy. sit near the front where it's quiet. sit in the departure lounge. don't leave anything on the plane. always wear comfortable clothes. go to the embassy. sit near the front where it's quiet. sit in the departure lounge. don't leave anything on the plane. always wear comfortable clothes. go to the check-in desk.	al	bout leavi	ing China, bu	t I'm sure he	'll go back and	see his fi	riends i	n the futu	ire.
you're travelling on a long flight, you can choose your seat on the plane, When While While While When While When When When When When When When Whe			tences using	g phrases f	rom each col	umn.			
While you get off, you lose your passport on holiday, you lose your passport on holiday, you lose your passport on holiday, you get to the airport, go to the check—in desk. ✓ When you get to the airport, go to the check—in desk. Complete the text with words from the box. after that first of all finally while if then when ✓ When			you're trave	lling on a lor oose your sea	ng flight, at on the plane,	go sit r	to the one ar the	embassy. e front wh	
1			you get off, you feel ill d	during the fli	ght,	dor alw	ı't leave ays we	e anything ar comfor	on the plane. table clothes.
Complete the text with words from the box. after that first of all finally while if then when When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really)	1	When	you get to t	he airport,	go to the che	ck-in de	sk.	Philippin di Amillo	
Complete the text with words from the box. after that first of all finally while if then when ✓ When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really in the shower) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave.		emilia fini					Michigan Company	**************************************	
Complete the text with words from the box. after that first of all finally while if then when When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really in the shower).		***************************************		201-201-1-201-1-1-2-2-2-2-1-1-2-2-2-2-2-			nterna (1110-140)		
Complete the text with words from the box. after that first of all finally while if then when ✓ When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really in the shower) in the shower in t		***************************************				NUL-1		***************************************	
after that first of all finally while if then when ✓ When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really in the shower).	6	**************************************	Observation and the second					The World Committee of the Committee of	
When I'm getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) I have a shower. Ar (2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really listen to music and sing along)	C	omplete	the text wi	ith words f	rom the box.				
(2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really		after tha	at first of	all finally	/ while	if the	en	when 🗸	
(2) I'm in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really in the shower)	>	When	I'm getti	ing ready to	go out for the	evenina	(1)		I have a shower And
too. (3) I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really that I) (4) I decide what to wear; usually a shirt and some expensive in the share and the	(2	2)	I'm in t	the shower, I	often listen to	music an	d sing	along; oh	, yes, and I wash my ha
That I (/I) I decide what to wear usually a shirt and some second transfer A = I the	to	00. (3)	I h	nave a shave	and put on son	ne expen	sive af	tershave.	(My girlfriend really lov
(5), I look in the mirror before I go out to see (6) everything's OK. In									
look my best!					. Delote i go ot	at to see	(5)		every timing 5 Ok. 1 Wal

1 Circle the correct word or phrase.What time do you have (unch) a lunch?

	1	Did you have/had a wash before dinner?	
	2	We always have a/the swim in the lake in the afterno	on.
	3	Have you got/Did you have a good weekend?	
	4	Do/Have you got any children?	
	5	We hadn't/didn't have the same office last year.	
	6	We had a great time/weather in Italy last summer.	
	7	Can I have rest/a rest? I'm really tired.	
	8	I had/was hungry, so I had/had got dinner.	
2	Oı	ne word is missing. Where from? Write it at the	end of the sentence.
	•	It was sunny at midday, so we had in the garden. <u>Iu</u>	nch
	1	We had a for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.	AMERICANIAN O ANALONO CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER
	2	We had something eat at the beach.	NAME OF THE PARTY
	3	My sister got blonde hair.	
	4	I was hot, so I had a before dinner.	onesan
	5	We had a day at work. I hate my job!	NAME OF THE PARTY
	6	Have a lovely in the Caribbean!	
	7	I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't any money.	Marie
	8	On Sunday, we just had a and did nothing.	The state of the s
	In	:+ 00	
U		it 80	
1	W	hat meaning does the verb get have in each sen	tence? Write the number of the
	se	ntence next to the correct verb.	
		arrive obtain buy 1 travel by	receive become c
			ABOUT YOU
	1	Where do you get your fruit and vegetables?	7,5001 100
		Are you trying to get a new job?	White the state of
	3	Do you get tired in hot weather?	
	4	How many text messages do you get every day?	
	5	Are you getting taller?	9 910-94-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9-9
	6	What did you get for your last birthday?	
	7	Where did you get the shoes you're wearing?	
	8	How often do you get the train to school or work?	
	9	What time did you get home last night?	
2	AB	SOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions	in Exercise 1 or ask another student

Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun	
advise	advice	
act	actor, actress	
advertise	advert/advertisement	
agree	agreement	
apologize	apology	
arrange	arrangement	
attach	attachment	
begin	beginning	
believe	belief	
build	building, builder	
choose	choice	
climb	climbing	
collect	collection	
compose	composer	
dance	dance, dancing, dancer	
deliver	delivery	
depart	departure	
design	designer	
disagree	disagreement	
discuss	discussion	
draw	drawing	
drive	driver, driving	
educate	education	
enter	entrance, entry	
examine	exam/examination	
explain	explanation	
fail	failure	
feel	feeling	
fly	flight, flying	
grow	growth	
hate	hatred	
hear	hearing	
insure	insurance	
invite	invitation	
manage	manager	
mean	meaning	

Verb	Noun	
move	movement	
own	owner	
park	parking	
pay	payment	
perform	performance, performer	
permit	permission	
prefer	preference	
print	printer, printout, printing	
pronounce	pronunciation	
read	reading, reader	
recommend	recommendation	
refuse	refusal	
report	report, reporter	
reserve	reservation	
respond	response	
ride	riding, rider	
run	run, runner, running	
serve	service	
shoot	shooting	
sign	signature	
sing	singer, singing, song	
smoke	smoke, smoking	
spell	spelling	
study	study, student	
suggest	suggestion	
swim	swim, swimming	
teach	teacher, teaching	
think	thinking, thought	
travel	travelling, travel	
walk	walk, walking	
wash	wash, washing	
weigh	weight	
win	winner	

Test yourself. Cover one column and look at the other. Can you remember the other part of speech?

2 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
angry	anger
able, unable	ability, inability
attractive	attraction
beautiful	beauty
cloudy	cloud
cold	cold
comfortable,	comfort
uncomfortable	
crowded	crowd
dangerous	danger
different	difference
dirty	dirt
eastern	east
electric, electrical	electricity
excited, exciting	excitement
famous	fame
foggy	fog
friendly, unfriendly	friend, friendship
geographical	geography
lucky, unlucky	luck
happy, unhappy	happiness
healthy, unhealthy	health
historic, historical	history
humid	humidity
hungry	hunger
icy	ice
ill	illness
industrial	industry
intelligent	intelligence
kind, unkind	kindness
lazy	laziness
long	length

Adjective	Noun
mad	madness
medical	medicine
musical	music
mistaken	mistake
noisy	noise
northern	north
possible, impossible	possibility
painful	pain
peaceful	peace
personal	person
political	politics, politician
religious	religion
sad	sadness
safe	safety
scientific	science, scientist
southern	south
strong	strength
sunny	sun, sunshine
true	truth
various	variety
violent	violence
weak	weakness
western	west
wide	width
windy	wind
wooden	wood
young	youth

3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

answer
brush
call
cash
change
charge
chat
check
circle
cook
copy

cough
cut
delay
divorce
download
drink
email
end
fall
guide
hate
hope

jump
label
laugh
look
love
mark
matter
microwave
name
need
offer
phone

post
pull
push
queue
rain
repair
reply
request
research
rest
ring
share

shave snow star start stay taste text tour use visit waste work

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective
confusion	confuse	confusing, confused
death	die	dead
employment	employ	employed, unemployed
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable
excitement	excite	exciting, excited
help	help	helpful
heating	heat	hot
interest	interest	interested, interesting
knowledge	know	known, unknown
location	locate	located
marriage	marry/get married	married
organization	organize	organized
pollution	pollute	polluted
rent	rent	rented
retirement	retire	retired
sleep	sleep	asleep
speech, speaking, speaker	speak	spoken
surprise	surprise	surprised, surprising
writing, writer	write	written
worry	worry	worried, worrying

5 Verbs and adjectives

Verb	Adjective
annoy	annoyed, annoying
boil	boiled, boiling
bore	bored, boring
clean	clean
close	closed
complete	complete
correct	correct
empty	empty
freeze	frozen, freezing
frighten	frightened, frightening

Verb	Adjective	
include	included	
irritate	irritated, irritating	
lose	lost	
open	open	
relax	relaxed, relaxing	
shut	shut	
tidy	tidy	
tire	tired, tiring	
wake up	awake	

Common irregular verbs

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let

Verb	Past simple	Past
		participle
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
overtake	overtook	overtaken
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Answer key



Answer key

Unit 1

- 1 1 two hundred
 - 2 three hundred and forty
 - 3 twenty-two
 - 4 42,500
 - 5 one thousand two hundred
 - 6 two thousand three hundred and fifty
- 2 1 eight
 - 2 twenty
 - 3 sixty-seven
 - 4 fifty
 - 5 a/one hundred and nineteen
 - 6 two hundred and forty-four
 - 7 alone thousand
 - 8 five thousand and fifty-six
 - 9 eleven thousand three hundred and one
- 3 1 about a/one hundred euros
 - 2 about ten students
 - 3 about thirty years
 - 4 about five hundred
 - 5 about two thousand
 - 6 about eighty people
 - 7 about two hundred and fifty thousand
 - 8 about a/one million

Unit 2

- 1 1 nine fifteen 5 three forty-five
 - 2 ten twenty-five 6 seven twenty
 - 3 three thirty-five 7 two thirty 4 eleven forty-five 8 four forty
- 2 1 quarter past seven
 - 2 half past nine
 - 3 twenty-five to twelve
 - 4 ten to four
 - 5 twenty-five past eight
 - 6 three minutes past one
 - 7 quarter to three
 - 8 seventeen minutes past four

4 15 2D 3D 45 55 6D 75 85

- 5 Answers from a British person
 - 1 They open at nine a.m.
 - 2 No, they don't.
 - 3 They close at half past five in the afternoon, and at seven p.m. on Thursdays.
 - 4 They open at about eleven in the morning.
 - 5 They close at different times. Some close at about midnight.
 - 6 They open at nine a.m. and close at half past five in the afternoon.

Unit 3

- 1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
 - 2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
 - 3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
- 2 1 Tuesday 6 April
 - 2 September 7 February
 - 3 summer 8 winter
 - 4 December 9 Thursday
 - 5 Saturday 10 August
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 September.
 - 2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
 - 3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
 - 4 I go and see my family and we have a big lunch together.
 - 5 May 1st is a public holiday for workers, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
- 5 1 third 6 sixteenth
 - 2 twentieth 7 fourteenth
 - 3 fifth 8 thirteenth
 - 4 first 5 eighth
- 6 1 April the tenth. or The tenth of April.
 - 2 April the eleventh. or The eleventh of April.
 - 3 March the fourth. or The fourth of March.

9 second

- 4 April the sixth. or The sixth of April.
- 5 April the seventeenth. or The seventeenth of April.
- 6 March the thirty-first. on The thirty-first of March.
- 7 March the twenty-first. or The twenty-
- first of March.

 8 April the twenty-third. or The twenty-
- third of April.
 7 1 The third of February. OR February the
 - 2 July the fourth. or The fourth of July.
 - 3 The tenth of December. or December the tenth.
 - 4 August the twelfth. or The twelfth of August.
 - 5 The fifteenth of January. or January the fifteenth.
 - 6 Nineteen eighty-nine.
 - 7 The twenty-first of May. or May the twenty-first.

- 8 November the thirtieth. or The thirtieth of November.
- 9 The twenty-second of April. or April the twenty-second.
- 10 Twenty fifteen. or Two thousand and fifteen.
- 11 Your own answer
- 12 Your own answer

1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9F

- 2 1 Britain
- Africa 6
- 2 Europe
- 7 The Middle East
- 3 Central
- 8 Asia
- 4 Far
- 9 Australasia
- 5 South
- 3 1 France, French
 - 2 Germany, German
 - 3 Spain, Spanish
 - 4 Portugal, Portuguese
 - 5 Italy, Italian
 - 6 The Czech Republic, Czech
 - 7 Poland, Polish
 - 8 Hungary, Hungarian
 - 9 Russia, Russian
 - 10 Greece, Greek
 - 11 Turkey, Turkish
- 4 -ian: Russian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Brazilian, Argentinian, Indian, Canadian, Australian -ish: British, Spanish, Turkish, Polish, English -an: American, German, Korean, Mexican

Unit 5

11x 2 / 3x 4 / 5 / 6 / 7 / 8 / 9 x 10 / 11 x 12 /

- 2 1 board pen
- 4 pencil sharpener
- 2 cassette player
- 5 piece of paper
- 3 noticeboard
- 6 CD player
- 3 Answers from an Argentinian person
 - I've got a rubber. I haven't got a I've got a desk.
 - noticeboard.
 - I've got a table.
- I haven't got a ruler.
- I've got a chair.
- I haven't got a board.
- I haven't got a cassette
- player.

Unit 6

- 1 1 indefinite 5 past participle
 - 2 noun
- 6 plural
- 3 preposition
- 7 verbs
- 4 an irregular
- 8 adverbs

- 211 7 Today/quickly
 - 2 lessons 8 asked
 - 9 spoke 3 young
 - 4 a 10 class

 - 5 from/in 11 I think he's in the wrong class.
 - 6 the

Unit 7

- 11f 2g 3a 4d 5b 6e
- 2 1 called 5 right/correct
 - 2 pronounce 6 opposite
 - 3 How do 7 does
 - 4 between 8 explain

Unit 8

- 1 1 What do you do in your country?
 - 2 Where do you come from?
 - 3 Could I have your address?
 - 4 What's your family name?
 - 5 What's your postcode?
 - 6 How old are your children?
 - 7 Have you got any children?
 - 8 What's your first name?
- 2 1 family
- 5 could/can
- 2 first
- 6 postcode
- 3 from
- 7 do married 8
- 4 Whereabouts/ Where exactly?
- 9 old

- 3 Answers from a Greek person 5 11363 1 Anna
 - 2 Greece
- 6 I'm a teacher.
- 3 Athens
- 7 No, I'm single.
- 4 1 Kipseli
- 8 I'm 30.
- 11363 Athens Greece

Unit 9

- 1 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6F 7F 8T 9F 10 F 11 F 12 T
- 2 Your own answers

- 1 1 daughter
- 6 husband
 - 2 nephew 3 niece
- 7 grandmother 8 uncle
- 4 sister-in-law
- 9 aunt
- 5 cousin

- 10 relatives
- 2 1 sister
- 7 grandmother
- 2 wife
- 8 granddaughter
- 3 niece
- 9 cousin
- 4 relative
- 10 parent
- 5 daughter
- 11 aunt
- 6 sister-in-law
- 4 Your own answers
- 5 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6F 7F 8T 9T

- 6 1 I was born in 1989.
 - 2 We spend a lot of time together.
 - 3 My girlfriend is older than me.
 - 4 There are six of us in my family.
 - 5 I am the youngest in my family.
 - 6 I've got an older/younger brother and a younger/older sister.
- 7 Answers from a Turkish person
 - 1 There are six people in my family.
 - 2 1963.
 - 3 I've got one sister and two brothers. My sister's older than me and my two brothers are younger than me.
 - 4 I spend a lot of time with my sister because she's fun and she lives near me.
 - 5 No. We all live in our own houses but very close to each other.

- 1 1 lie down 5 sit down 2 fall over 6 get on 3 ride 7 run 4 climb 8 stand up
- 2 1 stand 6 jumped 2 walk 7 rode 3 climb
 - 8 ran, fell 4 dance 9 got, got
 - 5 lie
- 4 1 carry 5 touch 9 hold 2 turn off 6 drop 10 push 3 put down 7 pick up 11 shut 4 close 8 break 12 open
- 5 1 touch a bicycle 1, push a bicycle 2
 - 2 pick up a TV 2, turn on a TV 1
 - 3 break a bottle 1, open a bottle 2
 - 4 pull your hair 1, touch your hair 1 5 turn off a radio 1, hold a radio 1
 - 6 drop a ruler 1, break a ruler 2
 - 7 carry a door 2, close a door 1
 - 8 pick up a baby 2, hold a baby 2

Unit 12

- 1 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6T 7F 8T 9T 10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F
- 2 1 wrist 5 shoulder 2 stomach 6 eyes 3 neck bottom 7
- 4 finger
- 3 1 chin 6 face 2 stomach 7 nose 3 chest 8 bottom 4 tooth/teeth 9 waist
 - 5 back

Unit 13

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T 7F 8F
- 2 1 height 4 weighs 2 good-looking 5 fat 3 slim 6 beautiful
- 4 1 I've got medium-length, short, curly hair. or I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
 - 2 Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy. or Her hair is short, blonde, lightbrown, and wavy.
 - 3 My sister's hair is short, long, and curly. OR My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
 - 4 My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache. or My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache.
 - 5 My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair. or My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.
- 5 1 medium-length, short
 - 2 blonde, black, brown, grey
 - 3 straight, wavy, curly
 - 4 beard, moustache
 - 5 brown
- 6 Answers from a German person
 - 1 It's short.
 - 2 It's red.
 - 3 It's straight.
 - 4 I've got a beard.
 - 5 No, my eyes are blue.
- 7 1 b 2 e 3 i 4 h 5 c 6 f 7 a 8 g
- 8 Answers from an Argentinian person
 - 1 Pablo (my nephew).
 - 2 Ester (my mother).
 - 3 Ezequiel (my nephew).
 - 4 Berta (my grandmother).
 - 5 Pedro (my father).
 - 6 Sol (my niece).
 - 7 Carlos (my mother's 5th husband).
- 10 The police are looking for Y.
- 11 The other man is in his mid-forties/is middleaged, short and overweight, with short grey hair and a beard.

- 1 1 funny 5 clever 2 quiet 6 friendly 3 relaxed 7 laugh 4 nice
- 2 1 unfriendly 5 funny 2 intelligent 6 serious 3 horrible 7 relaxed 4 stupid 8 kind

- 3 1 serious
 - 2 are, fun, horrible/unfriendly
 - 3 What, kind, clever/intelligent
- 4 really friendly, really nice, really funny, really interesting
- 5 1T 2T 3T 4T 5F 6F 7T 8F
- 6 Answers from a British person
 - 1 I'm very sporty.
 - 2 I don't think I'm very relaxed.
 - 3 I'm tidy at work but untidy at home.
 - 4 I'm hardworking most of the time.
 - 5 I'm quiet but I think I'm quite sociable as well.
 - 6 Yes, I think I am.

- 1 1 They had a baby last year.
 - 2 They split up in January.
 - 3 We have a very good relationship.
 - 4 How did you get to know her?
 - 5 They were together for three years.
 - 6 I went out with him for six months.
- 2 1 have
- 5 ex-
- 2 together
- 6 divorced, partner/
- 3 couple
- girlfriend, get
- 4 out, up
- 3 1D 2D 3S 4S 5D 6S
- 4 Answers from an Hungarian person
 - 1 My wife.
 - 2 Seven years.
 - 3 At a friend's Christmas party.
 - 4 We have mutual friends.
 - 5 We live together.
 - 6 Because we love each other. We're interested in similar things, and we want the same things in life.

Unit 16

- 1 1 I'm tired.
- I'm boiling.
- 2 I'm nervous.
- 6 I'm ill. or I feel ill.
- 3 I'm thirsty.
- or I don't feel well.
- 4 I'm hungry.
- 2 1 matter; feel or 'm
- boiling
- 2 tired
- 5 nervous
- 3 matter; freezing
- 6 What's; well
- 4 1 angry
- 6 frightened
- 2 worried
- 7 unhappy
- 3 upset
- 8 embarrassed
- 4 scared
- 9 excited
- 5 surprised
- 5 1 angry 6 happy
 - 2 surprised
- 7 upset or sad or unhappy
- 3 worried
- 8 frightened or scared
- 4 excited
 - 9 love
- 5 embarrassed

Unit 17

- 1 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
 - 2 I have breakfast at 8 a.m.
 - 3 I leave home at 8.30 a.m.
 - 4 I finish work at 6 p.m.

 - 5 I have dinner with my family.
 - 6 I go to bed at 11 o'clock.
 - 7 I sleep seven hours a night.
- 2 1 get
- 4 get
- 2 have
- 5 have
- 3 leave
- 6 go
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
 - 2 Yes, I do sometimes.
 - 3 In the sitting room.
 - 4 At about 8.15.
 - 5 At about 8.50.
 - 6 My family.

go for a walk

- 7 At around 11.30.
- 8 About 8 hours.
- 5 do the shopping once or twice a week stay in go shopping play tennis go to the gym come round at the weekend
- 6 1 go 6 late 2 round 7 at 3 play 8 gym 4 out or shopping 9 do, early 5 During, in 10

see

- 7 1D 2S 3D 4D 5S 6D
- 8 1 Haruko gets up early every day.
 - 2 Hiro hardly ever goes to the gym.
 - 3 Haruko always stays in.
 - 4 Hiro studies all day.
 - 5 Haruko never has a shower in the morning.
 - 6 Hiro occasionally goes to the cinema.
- 9 Answers from a British person
 - 1 True. I always have a shower before breakfast.
 - 2 False. I occasionally go out on Friday evening.
 - 3 False. I sometimes listen to music in the evening.
 - 4 False. I never study on Sunday.
 - 5 False. I often watch TV at the weekend.
 - 6 False. I sometimes work in the evening.
 - 7 True. I usually go shopping on Monday.
 - 8 False. I never go to the gym after dinner.

1	1	jacket	6	T-shirt
		trousers	7	dress
	3	jumper	8	jeans
		coat	9	sweater

5 raincoat

3 1F 2F 3F 4T 5T 6T 7T 8F 9T 10F 11T 12F

5 1 gloves 4 sandals 2 umbrella 5 hat 3 jeans 6 jeans

6 1 Give me the sock.

2 Not possible.

3 I've got one pair of sandals.

4 Not possible.

5 She's wearing my scarf.

6 Where is my glove?

7 Not possible.

8 Not possible.

7 Answers from a German person

 Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.

2 I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.

3 No, I only wear leather shoes.

4 I wear sunglasses in summer.

5 I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

Unit 19

1	1	short	5	loose
	2	comfortable	6	expensive
	3	small	7	smart
	4	casual	8	long
2	1	uncomfortable	5	small
	2	nice	6	long
	3	casual	7	loose
	4	expensive	8	lovely

3 1 short 5 loose

2 uncomfortable 6 horrible/awful/ 3 casual terrible

4 expensive

5 1 a or a size 4 fit, too 2 medium 5 take 3 wrong 6 fit, too

6 1 The shirt is too small/tight.

2 The trousers are too long.

3 The hat's too big.

7 1 Where do I pay?

2 No thanks, I'll leave it.

3 Excuse me, where's the changing room?

4 Can I try this dress on?

5 I'm looking for a pair of trousers.

6 Do you need any help?

8 1 on 5 room 2 desk 6 help 3 them 7 lovely/nice 4 card 8 pay

9 Answers from a Turkish person

1 No, I don't.

2 I buy clothes about four times a year.

3 I bought some very nice walking shoes.

4 Yes, I always do.

5 Yes. I never buy clothes without trying them on.

6 I usually pay by debit card.

Unit 20

The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty.

2 Could you put in your PIN, please? or Could you enter your PIN, please?

3 She paid for the dress in cash.

4 I've only got a 50 pound note.

5 They're €6 for each.

6 Have you got a bank account?

7 Three books. That's €42 altogether.

8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 change.

2 1 put in/enter 5 each
2 PIN 6 altogether
3 receipt 7 note
4 cost 8 change
3 1 price 5 fare
2 spend 6 earn

3 saved 7 sold 4 won 8 bill 4 1 bought 4 earned

2 spent 5 won 3 sold 6 saved 5 1 online 4 price 2 bill 5 fares

3 free 6 earn

6 Answers from a Greek person

Very rarely.

2 Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.

3 Yes, most of the time it is.

4 It's about one euro. 5 Yes, they're cheap.

6 No, women earn less than men.

Unit 21

11c 2i 3h 4j 5b 6a 7e 8f 9g

2 1 rain 4 foggy 2 sunny 5 wind 3 snows 6 cloudy

- 4 1 showers 4 minutes 2 lightning 5 damp 3 dry, very hot 6 breeze
- 5 1 There was heavy rain last night.
 - 2 It was humid yesterday.
 - 3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
 - 4 The weather's changeable.
 - 5 It's dry today.
 - 6 We had a storm.

6 Answers from an Argentinian person

- 1 We have a lot of showers in the winter.
- 2 In winter it's not always freezing at night.
- 3 The weather is the same all summer. True. It is hot and humid.
- 4 Once or twice a year we have heavy rain for 24 hours.
- 5 It only snows in the west of the country.
- 6 Our winters are usually cold and wet.
- 7 We often have thunder and lightning. True.
- 8 It is usually hot and humid in summer.

Unit 22

- 1 1 hurts 7 flu
 2 've got 8 Has
 3 feel 9 've got
 4 've got 10 Has
 5 feel 11 's
 6 hurts 12 haven't got
- 2 1 cough 5 stomach-ache 2 temperature 6 sick
 - 2 temperature 6 sick 3 hurt 7 flu 4 matter; well 8 throat
- 4 1 You should to go to the chemist's.
 2 Go and lie you down for a while.
 - 3 Go and see your GP doctor. OR Go and see your GP doctor.
 - 4 Stay in the bed and don't do anything.
 - 5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
 - 6 You should go and to see your doctor.
 - 7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
 - 8 Lie down for the a while.

5 Possible answers

- 1 You should go and lie down for a while.
- 2 You should go to the pharmacy.
- 3 You should stay in bed for a day or two.
- 4 You should go and lie down for a while.
- 5 You should go and see your GP.

Unit 23

- 1 1 cotton wool 4 antiseptic 7 cream 2 tissues 5 plasters 8 medicine 3 correct 6 pharmacist
- 2 1 a sore throat
 - 2 take these tablets
 - 3 for toothache, please
 - 4 wool
 - 5 some plasters, please
 - 6 for your finger
 - 7 this medicine it's very good
 - 8 tablet three times a day
 - 9 cream
 - 10 help you

Unit 24

- 1 1 Pork, because it's a meat.
 - 2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
 - 3 Tuna, because it's a fish.
 - 4 Salmon, because it's a fish.
 - 5 Cow, because it's only an animal.
- 2 1 beef 3 tuna 5 crab 2 pork 4 duck
- 3 1 pork 3 salmon 5 bacon 2 lamb 4 tuna 6 chicken
- 4 Your own answers

Unit 25

- 1 grapes, melon, lemon, avocado, strawberry, cherry, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
- 2 1 sweet 5 small 2 bitter 6 good
 - 3 red 7 sweet
- 4 green 8 big
- 4 1 carrot 5 beans 2 onion 6 courgette
 - 3 pepper 7 tomato
 - 4 cabbage 8 garlic
- 5 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7F
- 6 Your own answers

1	1	1	7	1
	2	1	8	bread or some
	3	butter or some		bread
		butter	9	1
	4	1	10	rice or some rice
	5	cheese or some	11	jam or some
		cheese		jam
	6	1	12	1

- 2 1 milk 7 butter 2 some cheese 8 rice 3 sugar 9 a large bar of 4 biscuits chocolate 5 some olive oil 10 noodles 6 six eggs 4 1T 2F 3F 4T 5F 6T 7F 8T 9 F 10 T 6 packet 7 2 iar grams
- 5 1 box 3 bottle 8 packet
 - 9 litre/bottle/carton 4 carton/bottle 5 kilo 10 bottle/litre
- 7 1 got, many 3 Could/Can, just
- 2 much, else, that's 4 like, ripe 8 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
 - 2 I'd like some sugar, please. 3 Have you got any ham?
 - 4 How much cheese would you like?
 - 5 That's just over half a kilo.
 - 6 How many oranges would you like?

- 1 1 roll, baquette, sandwich, toasted sandwich
 - 2 cappuccino, tea, orange juice, espresso, black coffee
- 2 1 bread 6 couple 2 sandwich 7 white 3 chocolate 8 white 4 coffee 9 have
- 3 1 I'd like two coffees, please.
 - 2 To drink here or take away?
 - 3 To drink here. And a toasted ham sandwich.
 - 4 OK. It will be a couple of minutes.
 - 5 Have a seat, please.

5 take away

Unit 28

- 1 1 fork 9 wine 2 spoon 10 red 3 napkin 11 white 4 plate 12 salt 5 bowl 13 black pepper 6 bottle 14 bottles 7 mineral water 15 oil 8 glasses 16 vinegar
- 2 Answers from an Argentinian person On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have salt, pepper, napkins, oil and vinegar. We don't usually have a bottle of mineral
- water, a bowl or a glass of red wine. 4 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6F 7T 8T 9 F 10 T

- 5 1 cream 5 course 2 steak 6 sauce 3 salad 7 done 4 soup boiled
- 6 Your own answers
- 8 1 some more 5 of course 2 to order 6 the 3 another 7 1'11 4 meal 8 certainly 9 1 have 6 dessert 2 how 7 3 course 8 bill
 - 4 sparkling 9 sure/certainly 5 some

Unit 29

- 1 1 How many stops is it to the railway station?
 - 2 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?
 - 3 How long does it take to the railway station?
 - 4 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?
 - 5 Where do I get off for the cinema?
 - 6 Does the 24 go to the park?
 - How often does the 24 run? 8 Which is the last stop for the 16?
- 2 1 Five 5 At the next stop 2 The 16 or the 24 6 No, it doesn't 3 About ten 7 Every ten minutes 4 Yes, it does 8 The railway station
- 3 1 stop 6 timetable 2 next/second 7 run 3 last/final 8 runs 4 get off 9 every 5 goes/runs 10 takes
- 4 Answers from a British person
 - 1 Yes, at the end of the road.
 - 2 The 9 and the 15.
 - 3 They run about every 15 minutes.
 - 4 I don't get the bus very often, but I sometimes get it to the town centre.
 - 5 Four.
 - 6 Five to ten minutes.

- 1 1 a slow train 4 the 7 o'clock train 2 get off the train 5 a seat
- 3 catch a train 6 at a (railway) station 2 1 fare 5 last/next
 - 2 carriage 6 waited/wait 3 missed 7 timetable 4 get/take 8 journey

- 3 1 advance 5 office 2 return 6 train 3 direct 7 seat
 - 4 London
- 4 1 change 5 to 2 leaves 6 single 3 platform 7 advance 4 gets
- 5 Answers from a German person
 - 1 A month ago.
 - 2 I went to Berlin to see friends.
 - 3 I paid €75.50 for the ticket.
 - 4 Yes, I always do, because you get reduced prices.
 - 5 It was a direct journey from Hannover to Berlin.

- 1 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the bank?
 - 2 Go along here and turn left.
 - 3 Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
 - 4 It's the third turning on the right.
 - 5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
 - 6 Turn left into Foster Road.
- 2 1 turning 5 going 2 much 6 on 3 left/right/corner 7 here 4 me 8 way
- 3 1
 - 1 get 2 straight 3 turning 4 left 5 much
 - 1 Excuse 2 near 3 along 4 take 5 turning 6 right 7 opposite 8 Thanks
 - 1 way 2 Turn 3 into 4 corner 5 right

5 crossing

3 far

Unit 32

1 1 station

- 2 road 6 park
 3 camera 7 jam
 4 sign

 2 1 station 6 speed
 2 main 7 roundabout
 3 sign 8 traffic
 4 park 9 pavement
 5 crossing 10 junction
- 4 1 motorway 4 speed limit 2 rush hour 5 accident 3 overtake 6 a quiet road
- 5 1 busy
 - 2 lane, overtake 4 take, drive

- 6 Answers from a Turkish person
 - 1 Three.
 - 2 120 kph.
 - 3 Not speed cameras, but police radar.
 - 4 No. We drive on the right, the steering wheel is on the left.
 - 5 9 a.m. and 6 p.m.

Unit 33

- 1 1f 2h 3j 4c 5b 6e 7i 8g 9a
- 2 1 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
 - 2 in/out
 - 3 do not disturb/ring bell
 - 4 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
 - 5 in/out
 - 6 do not disturb/ring bell
 - 7 declare

Unit 34

- 1 1 Porto Alegre 6 Colombia 2 Brasilia 7 Rio de Janeiro 3 Amazon 8 Mountain 4 Pico da Neblina 9 inland 5 Argentina 10 coast
- 2 Possible answers
 - 1 It's the longest river in Brazil.
 - 2 It's the highest mountain in Brazil.
 - 3 It's the capital.
 - 4 It's a town in the south.
 - 5 It has a border with the south of Brazil.
 - 6 It's a famous city on the coast.
- 3 Answers from a Greek person
 - 1 Athens. It's in the north/centre of Greece.
 - 2 Thessaloniki, Patras and Corinth.
 - 3 Yes, it has borders with Albania, FYROM (Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia), Bulgaria and Turkey.
 - 6 The islands.
 - 7 The Parthenon and the ancient theatre of the Acropolis.

- 1 1 bridge 5 park 2 square 6 mosque 3 castle 7 building
 - 4 cathedral
- 2 1 temple 5 park
 - 2 bridge 6 statue, square 3 market 7 castle, palace
 - 4 museum 8 place

4 Size: a small village, a large city, a mediumsized town

Location: on the coast, on the River Duero, south-west of the capital

Population: over two million, just under

50,000, about 3,000

Interesting facts: famous for historic buildings, an industrial town

- 5 1 of 5 population 2 in 6 under 3 of 7 industrial 4 on 8 historic
- 6 Answer from a British person
 Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west
 of London, in the south-west of England.
 It's on the River Avon. The population is just
 under 100,000. It is a famous tourist place
 in England, with lots of historic buildings,
 including a famous abbey (like a cathedral)
 and many museums.
- 7 1 no 4 no 7 no 2 yes 5 yes

3 yes 6 yes

- 8 1 cosmopolitan 4 nightlife
 - 2 dangerous 5 crowded/busy 3 do 6 polluted
- 9 Answers from a Hungarian person (who lives in Budapest)
 - 1 It's pretty safe, although we had some riots recently, but these are very unusual.
 - 2 It's a big city, and there's a lot to do: there are cinemas, restaurants, cafés, shopping centres, parks and museums – whatever you're interested in.
 - 3 It's a very busy city. There are two million people living there, and thousands commute there for work.
 - 4 There are many popular clubs, bars, allnight cafés, late cinemas, concerts and other cultural events.
 - 5 Yes, it is.
 - 6 Some people think it's noisy and dirty, but I love it because it's got everything.

Unit 36

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5T 6T 7F 8F 9T
- 2 1 valley, hill

5 own, dog, horse

2 grass3 few trees

- 6 crops, grow 7 farmers
- 4 fields

3 Answers from an Argentinian person

1 Neither, I live in the city centre.

- 2 Yes, there is a natural lake close to my home.
- 3 No, I can't.
- 4 Yes, they are on the pavement.
- 5 There is a football pitch.
- 6 No.
- 7 Wheat, soy and corn.
- 8 Yes, I know a few.

5 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 S

- 6 1 I often buy flowers.
 - 2 I love the countryside.
 - 3 I'm very healthy.
 - 4 I see lots of birds in my area.
 - 5 Our public transport is wonderful.
 - 6 I'm often alone in the evening.
 - 7 I eat fresh fruit every day.
 - 8 I never feel lonely.

7 Answers from a Japanese person

- 1 False. I don't buy flowers.
- 2 True.
- 3 True.
- 4 True, but not the pretty ones. I only see pigeons and crows.
- 5 True.
- 6 False. My family is normally with me.
- 7 False. I only eat fresh fruit a few times a week.
- 8 True.

Unit 37

- 1 1 butcher's 4 deli 2 baker's 5 chemist's
 - 3 paper shop 6 newsagent's
- 2 Possible answers
 - 1 sandwiches, bread, coffee, cheese, ham
 - 2 medicine, aspirins, soap, shampoo
 - 3 fruit, vegetables, meat, fish, bread, books
 - 4 newspapers, cigarettes, chocolates
 - 5 bread, cakes
 - 6 CDs, DVDs

4 1F 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T 7T 8F

- 5 1 shopping 4 convenient 2 prefer 5 deliver 3 queue 6 get
- 6 Answers from a British person
 - 1 We usually do the shopping on Saturday morning.
 - 2 I prefer small shops, but I have to use the supermarket a lot.
 - 3 Yes, often.
 - 4 Yes, they are.
 - 5 One or two of them deliver, but I always carry things home myself.
 - 6 At the market.

1 1F 2T 3F 4F 5F 6T 7T 8T 9	1	1 F	2 T	3 F	4 F	5 F	6 T	7 T	8 T	9.
-----------------------------	---	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	----

- 2 1 basement 6 garden 2 block of flats 7 steps 3 ground floor 8 neighbour
 - 4 front door 9 balcony
 5 stairs 10 town centre
- 4 study, view, modern, living room, toilet, kitchen, home, dining room, upstairs, bedroom, utility room, parking, bathroom
- 5 1 living 8 kitchen
 2 bathroom 9 study
 3 view 10 Upstairs
 4 garage 11 bedrooms
 5 garden 12 bathrooms
 6 outside 13 parking
 7 views 14 outside
- 6 Answers from a German person
 - 1 I live in a flat.
 - 2 On the first floor.
 - 3 No.
 - 4 I look into the courtyard.
 - 5 No, but there are always free spaces.
 - 6 I have a living room, a bedroom, a dining room, a guest room, a bathroom, a kitchen and a big hallway.

Unit 39

1	1	washing machine	7	frying pan
	2	dishwasher, sink		freezer
	3	saucers, cupboard	9	full
	4	shelf/shelves	10	microwave, hob

- 5 bin 11 tap 6 oven 12 saucepan
- Answers from a Turkish person
 My washing machine is in the bathroom.
- 4 1 shopping 6 puts
 2 put (everything) away 7 takes
 3 empty 8 cook
 4 clean 9 washing-up
 5 make 10 ironing
- 5 Answers from a Greek person
 - 1 My partner.
 - 2 Ido.
 - 3 I do.
 - 4 I do.
 - 5 My partner.
 - 6 We both do.

Unit 40

1 1 mirror

	2	desk	5	war	drobe	
	3	blanket		towel		
2	1	bedside table		7	wardrob	
	2	mirror		8	hidet	

4 bidet

- 2 1 bedside table 7 wardrobe 2 mirror 8 bidet 3 bath 9 blanket 4 chest of drawers 10 sheet 5 washbasin 11 towel 6 toilet 12 shower
- 3 Answers from an Argentinian person In my bedroom, there's a double bed, a bedside table, a chest of drawers, a chair and a wardrobe. In my bathroom, there's a shower, a washbasin, a toilet, a long mirror and two towels.
- 5 1 do, brush 4 shave
 - 2 have 5 washes, shampoo
 - 3 puts on 6 tissues
- 6 1a 2a 3- 4a 5- 6an 7- 8a,-
- 7 Your own answers

Unit 41

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6T 7T 8T 9T 10T 11T 12F 13T 14F
- 2 1 floor 7 bookshelves 2 carpet 8 light 3 cushion 9 curtains 4 radiator 10 armchair 5 coffee table 11 rug 6 ceiling 12 fireplace
- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - We've got one large window and one small window in our living room.
 - 2 No, we've got air conditioning.
 - 3 We've got wooden floorboards and a tatami mat.
 - 4 There are a few pictures on the walls.
 - 5 On the ceiling.
 - 6 We've got a large sofa, a dinner table, a TV, a cupboard and a few cushions.

- 1 1 history 5 physics 2 geography 6 maths 3 biology 7 music 4 design 8 literature
- 2 1 PE/physical education
 - 2 ICT/information communication technology
 - 3 literature
 - 4 modern languages
 - 5 RE/religious education
 - 6 chemistry
 - 7 art

3 Your own answers

5 1 c 2 h 3 g 4 i 5 a 6 e 7 b 8 d 9 f 10 j

6 1 start 4 leave, get 2 uniform 5 state, private

3 pupils, secondary

7 Answers from a German person

1 Usually at the age of six, sometimes five.

2 We don't have school uniforms in Germany.

3 At the age of ten.

4 It depends on the kind of school they are attending. The earliest is 15.

5 There are state schools and private schools. The majority of children go to state schools.

8 1 no 3 2 5 E 2 5 4 A 6 C

9 1 take 4 results

2 do 5 badly, failed

3 well, grade 6 worst

10 Answers from a Turkish person

1 They were 50 minutes.

2 Yes.

3 When I was eleven years old. I was in a special school and I had to pass an exam to get into it.

4 I took one exam with many sections like Turkish language, maths, science, geography, history and general knowledge.

5 Yes.

Unit 43

1 1 do 5 A graduate 2 term 6 Unfortunately 3 BSc 7 after

4 library

2 1 degree 4 fortunately 2 do/write 5 again 3 do, PhD 6 last

3 Answers from a Greek person

1 Four years.

2 Two or three years.

3 About ten weeks.

4 About twelve weeks.

5 Yes, always.

4 1 doctor 5 economist 2 engineer 6 politician 3 architect 7 journalist

4 psychologist 8 businessman/manager

5 1 lawyer P 7 politics DS
2 architecture DS 8 engineer P
3 computer science DS 9 medicine DS
4 software engineer P 10 economics DS
5 psychology DS 11 IT manager P
6 business studies DS 12 reporter P

Unit 44

6 businesswoman 1 1 vet 7 secretary 2 shop assistant 8 dentist 3 nurse 9 chef 4 old 5 hasn't 10 builder 7 builder 2 1 businessman 2 shop assistant 8 lorry driver 3 hairdresser 9 cleaner

4 secretary 10 housewife 5 police officer 11 self-employed 6 retired 12 soldier

3 1 a hairdresser 5 retired 2 a pilot 6 self-employed 3 unemployed 7 a teacher

4 the boss/a manager 8 a chef

4 Answers from a Japanese person

1 I'm a secretary.

2 My friend Helen is the head chef at the George Hotel.

3 I don't know anyone who's a hairdresser.

4 My mother is unemployed.

5 I don't know anyone who's retired.

6 My friend Carla is an English teacher.

7 My friend Dave is a pilot.

8 My father's friend Mr Kitamura is a dentist.

9 My father and brother are businessmen.

10 Mr Karasawa is my boss.

Unit 45

1 1 hours a day 6 she work

2 a factory 7 an American airline 3 office 8 earn much

4 work for 9 job

5 does he earn 10 ten to six

2 1 part 5 hours 2 a 6 day 3 earn 7 year 4 low 8 salary

3 Answers from a British person

1 I'm a reporter.

2 I work for a local newspaper.

3 I work in an office, and I go out and talk to people.

4 I work very long hours, often 12 or 14 hours a day.



4 1 does makes 5 organizate organize 2 meet meeting 6 correct 3 type typing 7 about

3 type typing 7 about 4 correct 8 to

5 1 meet 6 colleagues 2 answer 7 discuss 3 send/write 8 organize 4 spend 9 clients 5 making 10 have

Unit 46

1 1 screen 5 monitor 2 mouse 6 keyboard 3 personal computer 7 disk

4 memory stick 8 webcam

2 1 speaker 5 memory stick, disk 2 hard copies 6 mouse 3 hard drive 7 mouse mat 4 laptop 8 screen

3 Answers from a German person
1 I have an old PC and a new Mac.

2 Yes. I use my printer almost every day.

3 One of my computers is a laptop. I keep it in the guest room.

4 Yes, I have photos of friends, family and my holidays on the computer.

5 No, don't have a webcam.

5 1g 2a 3e 4h 5b 6f 7c

6 1 clicked 5 cut
2 beginning, end 6 save
3 make/save 7 open
4 did 8 middle

Unit 47

1 1F 2T 3F 4F 5T 6F 7T 8F

2 1 I must reply to Jean's message.

2 Did you get/receive my message?3 I received an email from Li today.

4 Have you checked your emails/messages?

5 Please forward the attachment to John.

6 She sent Tia an email yesterday.

3 Answers from a Turkish person

1 Almost every day.

2 My colleagues, family and friends.

3 Commercial, healthy life emails.

4 Yes they do. They send me pictures, poems and jokes.

5 Yes.

4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S 9 D 10 S

5 1 search 4 broadband 2 download 5 website 3 on/using 6 visit 6 Answers from a Greek person

1 annaingreece@yahoo.com

2 Very rarely.3 It's www.in.gr

4 Google. 5 No.

6 I use the internet almost every day.

7 No, never.

8 Yes, I download it onto my PC.

9 I use Google.

Unit 48

1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A

2 1 I hate chocolate.

2 They don't like doing homework very much.

3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.

4 I quite like shopping.

5 She doesn't like driving.

6 I think tennis is OK.

7 I really like going out with friends.

8 She loves watching sport.

3 Answers from a German person

1 I love watching TV.

2 I really like studying English.

3 I love driving.

4 I don't like shopping for clothes.

5 I like cleaning the house.

6 I quite like writing emails.

7 I like talking on the phone.

8 I love going to the cinema.

4 1 I enjoy watching TV.

2 I'm not interested in politics.

3 My favourite film is 'Tootsie'.

4 She prefers reading to writing.

5 He's a fantastic boss.

6 Was the party good fun?

7 It's a boring programme.

8 Are you keen on tennis?

2 prefer 6 enjoy

3 favourite 7 interesting

4 interested

6 Answers from a Turkish person

1 Yes it is.

2 I like both.

3 Istanbul.

4 Yes. I like swimming.

5 Yes.

6 Yes.

7 Yes.



- 1 football pitch, tennis racket, basketball, ice hockey, three nil
- 2 1 T 2 T
 - 3 F You score goals in ice hockey. or You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
 - 4 F You play football on a pitch. or You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
 - 5 F You play ice hockey with sticks. or You play tennis with rackets.
 - 6 T 7 T
 - 8 F You play rugby with a rugby ball. or You play ice hockey with a puck.

10 score

- 3 1 game 4 score/result, nil 2 basketball 5 pitch, court 3 games, set
- 4 1 match/game beat 2 against 6 won 3 top 7 drew 4 to 8 beat 5 1 match/game 6 beat 2 against 7 scored 3 lost 8 won 4 drew; with 9 leading
- 6 Your own answers

5 time

Unit 50

- 1 1 another place another place 2 inside 6 inside 3 inside 7 another place 4 inside 8 inside 2 1 go 6 spend 2 collects 7 go 3 play 8 does 4 does 9 makes 5 play
- 3 Your own answers
- 5 1 True.
 - 2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
 - 3 False. Dima plays the guitar.
 - 4 False. Veronica's favourite hobby is drawing.
 - 5 True.
 - 6 False. Alexandra's quite good at shooting.
 - 7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
 - 8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

- 6 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I love exercising and cooking.
 - 2 Older people like watching TV, gossiping and playing gateball (a Japanese game).
 - 3 Younger people like karaoke and shopping.
 - 4 I never listen to classical music.
 - 5 No. I can't play a musical instrument.
 - 6 No. I'm a bad singer.

Unit 51

- 1 1 2004 4 album 2 able 5 Alex Turner 3 two 6 drums 2 1 group 5 album
- 2 1 group 5 album 2 lead 6 chart 3 drummer 7 known 4 single 8 download
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 The Beatles.
 - 2 Paul McCartney: lead singer and bass guitar, John Lennon: lead singer and guitar, George Harrison: guitar, Ringo Starr: drums.
 - 3 In 1962.
 - 4 Hey Jude.
 - 5 Sergeant Pepper's Lonely Hearts Club Band.
 - 6 Eleanor Rigby.
- 4 1 conductor 5 cello 2 orchestra 6 composer 3 classical 7 perform 4 concert 8 pianist
- 5 1 orchestra 6 opera singer 2 conductor 7 composer
 - 3 pianist 8 by
 - 4 violinist 9 concert, performing/
 - 5 cellist singing

- 1 1 thriller 4 cartoon 2 comedy 5 love story 3 action film 6 horror film
- 21c 2f 3a 4b 5e
- 3 1 romantic 3 frightening/scary 2 violent 4 funny
- 5 1 kind 6 actors
 2 about 7 director
 3 reviews 8 on
 4 in 9 see
 - 5 stars

- 6 Answers from a Japanese person
 - 1 I like comedies a lot.
 - 2 'The Holiday'.
 - 3 At my local cinema, 'Nankai Cinema'.
 - 4 Jude Law and Cameron Diaz.
 - 5 Nancy Meyers.
 - 6 It's a love story.

1 1D 25 3D 45 5D 65 7D

- 2 1 magazines 5 wars
 - 2 report 6 opinion(s) 3 events/news 7 celebrities
 - 4 disasters
- 4 1 in 6 -
 - 2 the 7 of, on
 - 3 on 8 believe
 - 4 out 9 of
 - 5 programme
- 5 1 watch, saw/watched
 - 2 believe/think, none
 - 3 news, happened
 - 4 listen, heard/listened to
 - 5 paper/newspaper
 - 6 forecast
 - 7 watch, much
- 6 Your own answers

Unit 54

- 1 1 abroad 5 hire 2 arrange 6 find 3 might 7 packed
 - 4 get 8 book
- 2 1 abroad 6 currency 2 flight(s) 7 insurance
 - 3 accommodation 8 might
 - 4 booked/arranged/decided 9 pack 5 get 10 find

Unit 55

- 1 1 staff 4 tourists 2 recommended 5 facilities 3 delicious 6 minibar
- 2 1 stay 5 satellite
 - 2 staff 6 conditioning, heating
 - 3 facilities 7 guests
 - 4 minibar 8 recommend

- 3 Answers from a Japanese person
 - I stayed in a ryokan in Shikoku.
 - 1 One night.
 - 2 Yes, very helpful.
 - 3 No. It was not as good as I expected.
 - 4 Yes, it did.
 - 5 No, it didn't.
 - 6 It had air conditioning but not central heating.
 - 7 Yes. I talked to a lady in the public bath.
 - 8 Yes, I can. It was a good hotel.
- 4 1 no 5 €60
 - 2 yes 6 no
 - 3 yes 7 no
 - 4 no 8 yes
- 5 1 like 9 included
- 2 book 10 air
 - 3 double 11 afraid
 - 4 twin 12 shame
 - 5 en suite 13 mind
 - 6 shower 14 Right/OK/Fine/
 - 7 fine/great Great/Good
 - 8 a 15 details

- 1 1 suitcase 7 boarding card 2 luggage 8 window seat
 - 3 aisle seat 9 ticket
 4 hand luggage 10 scales
 - 5 good flight 11 trolley
 - 6 airport
- 3 1 no 4 no 2 no 5 2
 - 3 yes
- 4 1 call, gate 4 check-in
 - 2 boarding 5 depart/leave
 - 3 delayed
- 5 2 (c) fasten your seat belt
 - 3 (h) the plane takes off
 - 4 (d) the plane lands
 - 5 (e) get off the plane
 - 6 (i) someone checks your passport
 - 7 (a) collect your luggage
 - 8 (b) go through customs
 - 9 (f) leave the terminal
- 6 1 lands
 - 2 your seat belt
 - 3 customs, passport control
 - 4 luggage, baggage reclaim
 - 5 get on, get off
- 7 Answers from a British person
 - 1 Two or three times a year.
 - 2 I usually read a book or magazine.
 - 3 An aisle seat.
 - 4 A small bag and my laptop.

1 1 rent 5 sea
2 swimming costume 6 perfect
3 shorts 7 relax
4 apartment 8 sunbathe
2 1 beach 4 so/two
2 got/took, went 5 flew

6 lie

Unit 58

1 1 go 4 take 2 book 5 guided 3 visit 6 go on

2 1 took, typical 4 art 2 should, round 5 went, guide

3 got, map

3 rented, resort

3 Your own answers

Unit 59

1 1a 2c 3d 4b 5e

2 1 Sign 4 rate 2 Change 5 per 3 currency 6 cash

3 Answers from a British person

1 The pound sterling.

2 £1 = \$1.84 at the moment.

3 At a bank or a bureau de change.

4 Yes, often.

5 They are usually inside or outside banks, at the supermarket, in stations and petrol stations.

4 1 deliver letters

2 the name, address and postcode

3 to the post office

4 on the scales

5 a stamp

6 the postman

7 a letter, a parcel, a postcard

5 1 Is there a letter/post box near here?

2 Can you put it on the scales?

3 Can I have three stamps for Argentina?

4 Where can/do I post this letter?

5 How much is a postcard to Russia?

6 Can you buy envelopes at the post office?

Unit 60

1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.

2 Max, this is Hanna. or Hanna, this is Max.

3 Bye. I hope to see you again. or I hope to see you again. Bye.

4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. or Nice to meet you. Goodbye. 2 1 nice, hi/hello

2 hope, again, goodbye/bye

3 is, Hello/Hi, to meet/see you, Hello/Hi

4 goodbye/bye, to meet/see you, Bye/ Goodbye

3 1 See you again. 6 How are things?

2 I must go now. 7 See you on Sunday.

3 See you later. 8 I've got to go now.

4 He's very well. 9 That's fine.

5 See you soon.

4 1 well, bad, how's, fine/very well/not bad

2 've got to, later, that's, then

5 1 Good morning, Morning

2 Good evening, Evening

3 Good afternoon, Afternoon

4 Goodbye/Goodnight, Bye/Bye bye/Night

Unit 61

1 1i 2h 3g 4d 5j 6c 7f 8e 9a

2 1 Have a nice/good day, evening, weekend, holiday, journey, time

2 Happy Christmas, Easter, New Year, birthday

3 Goodnight! Good luck! Well done! Welcome home!

Unit 62

1 1 How often do you go there?

2 What kind of music do you like?

3 What does he do?

4 How long have you lived there?

5 What's wrong with Peter?

6 Who does this belong to?

7 What's his flat like?

8 Why don't you like her?

2 a 4 b 5 c 7 d 1 e 6 f 3 g 2

3 1 often 4 How/What 2 Whose 5 long

3 What 6 Who

4 1 What 4 many

2 long 5 nearest

3 time 6 seeing

5 1 far 5 close/shut

2 many 6 worth 3 Which 7 nearest

4 What 8 recommend

6 Answers from a Turkish person

1 In Adana, Turkey.

2 Half of my life.

3 Capadoccia and the coast.

4 Three hours in a car.

5 Asma Alti (a kebab house in Adana).

- 1 1 Can you lend me a pen? ~ Yes, of course.
 - 2 Could you bring the books here, please? ~ Yes, no problem.
 - 3 Could you possibly wait here a few minutes? ~ I'm afraid I can't.
 - 4 Lia, can you change places with Maris, please? ~ Yes, sure.

2 Possible answers

- 1 A Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?
 - B Yes, sure.
- 2 A Luca, can you change places with Maria, please?
 - B Yes, no problem.
- 3 A Could you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
 - B I'm afraid I can't.
- 4 A Can you lend me a pencil, please?
 - B Yes, sure.
- 5 A Could you possibly wait in the classroom a few minutes?
 - B Yes, no problem.

3 Possible answers

- 1 Is it all right if I use this dictionary?
- 2 Do you mind/Is it all rightif I make a coffee?
- 3 Could I stay for another ten minutes? or Is it OK/all right/if I stay another ten minutes? or Do you mind if I stay another ten minutes?
- 4 Is it OK if I close the window?
- 5 Can I borrow your book?
- 6 Yes, sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine.
- 7 I'm afraid I need it.
- 8 Is it all right to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, of course/no problem/go ahead/ that's fine.
- 4 Possible answers
 - 1 Do you mind if I go at one o'clock today?
 - 2 Could I borrow a rubber?
 - 3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
 - 4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?
- 5 OK; Yes, no problem; Yes, of course; Go ahead; Yes, that's fine.

Unit 64

- 1 1 Would you like to come round later?
 - 2 Yes, I'd love to.
 - 3 Do you want to go out for dinner?
 - 4 That sounds lovely.
 - 5 I'm afraid I can't.
 - 6 That would be nice.
 - 7 Do you want to come to a party?
 - 8 I'm sorry, but I'm busy tonight.

- 2 1 A Would you like to go out for dinner/a meal?
 - B Yes, great!
 - 2 A Do you want to come round for a coffee?
 - B I'm afraid I can't.
 - 3 A Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
 - B Yes, that sounds lovely.
 - 4 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
 - B I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

Unit 65

- 1 1 What shall we do this weekend?
 - 2 The weather's nice, so ...
 - 3 ... what about going to the beach?
 - 4 Yes, good idea.
 - 5 Maybe we could take the train.
 - 6 Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
 - 7 I'd prefer to get them at the station.
- 2 1 What shall we do this evening?
 - 2 Do you have a suggestion?
 - 3 What about going to see a film?
 - 4 I'd prefer to go by train.
 - 5 Yes, that's a good idea.
- 3 1 A What about going to the theatre?
 - B I'm not sure about that.
 - 2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
 - B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
 - A OK, let's do that.
 - 3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
 - B Let's go to an exhibition.
 - A Yeah, that's a good idea.

- 1 1 hand, worry 3 Do, fine 2 eat, Could 4 like, Thanks
- 2 1 Can I give you a hand?
 - 2 Thank you very much.
 - 3 Would you like a drink?
 - 4 Thanks a lot.
 - 5 No, I'm fine, thanks.
- 3 1 A Would you like a drink?
 - B Yes, please. Could I have some water?
 - 2 A Do you need some help?
 - B No, I'm fine, thanks.
 - 3 A Would you like something to eat?
 - B Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
 - 4 A Can I give you a hand?
 - B No, don't worry.
- 41d 2e 3f 4a 5g 6b
- 5 1 of 5 Shall I
 - 2 Let 6 give
 - 3 Shall 7 me
 - 4 Would 8 want

- 6 1 you, lift, thanks, kind, you
 - 2 shall, make, please, me
 - 3 me, carry, thanks
 - 4 want

- 1 1 A I'm really sorry, I've lost your dictionary.
 - B Don't worry/never mind.
 - 2 A I'm sorry, I've forgotten your book.
 - B Don't worry.
 - 3 A I've broken your cup I'm very sorry.
 - B It doesn't matter.
- 2 1 That's 5 I'm
 - 2 worry Sorry, problem
 - 3 very/really, matter 7 apologize
 - 4 mind 8 rude

Unit 68

- 1 1 What do you think of it?
 - 2 I agree with you.
 - 3 I don't think it's very good.
 - 4 It was a waste of money.
 - 5 Personally, I didn't like it.
 - 6 I prefer the other one
- 2 1 think, Personally 3 of, think
 - 2 opinion, agree 4 sure, prefer
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 I'm not sure. I think children watch too much TV.
 - 2 I agree. It's very bad for your health.
 - 3 Personally, I like it.
 - 4 I'm not sure. Other things are more important.
 - 5 I disagree. I think it's very expensive.

Unit 69

- 1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S
- 2 1 engaged, phone
 - 2 number, code
 - 3 call, out, message, rang, battery
 - 4 wrong
- 3 Answers from a British person
 - 1 My phone number is 600949, the area code is 01632, and my mobile number is 0779 893 200.
 - 2 My family.
 - 3 Only a few minutes.
 - 4 No, not very often. I text my sister sometimes.
- 4 1 Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
 - 2 Just a moment.
 - 3 Speaking.
 - 4 Oh, hello, how are you?

5 1 speaking 7 speak to 2 This is/It's 8 just a 9 get 3 in/there, please 4 the moment 10 Is that 5 ring/call/phone 11 speaking back/again 12 It

Unit 70

1 1F 2T 3F 4T 5T 6F 7T 8F

6 noisy

5 SYN

- 2 1 useful
 - 7 narrow 2 weak
 - 3 dead 8 unusual
 - 9 asleep 4 rich 10 wide 5 quiet
- 4 1 SYN 4 OPP
 - 2 SYN 3 OPP
- 5 1 confusing 6 necessary
 - 2 helpful 7 strange/odd
 - 3 impossible 8 clear
 - 4 mad/crazy 9 annoying/irritating
 - 5 only

Unit 71

- 1 1 He's 75 and he still plays tennis.
 - 2 It's nice there, especially in the morning.
 - 3 There are only three students in the class.
 - 4 He even works on Sunday.
 - 5 She's still at university.
 - 6 Rio is big, but São Paolo is even bigger.
- 2 1 only
- 4 only
- 2 still
- 5 even
- 3 particularly
- 6 still
- 3 1 Only
- 4 only
- 2 still
- 5 even
- 3 especially/
- 6 especially/

particularly

- particularly
- 4 1 very
 - 2 absolutely
 - 3 a bit/a little
 - 4 really
 - 5 really/extremely
 - 6 quite
 - 7 very/really
 - 8 really
- 5 Possible answers
 - 1 He was extremely good.
 - 2 The holiday was really wonderful.
 - 3 She's a bit unfriendly.
 - 4 The kitchen was really clean.
 - 5 The room was a little small.
 - 6 Her new boyfriend is absolutely awful.
 - 7 They're very nice people.
 - 8 The weather was really terrible.

1 1 put, cost, read 4 kno 2 write, drive, win 5 buy.

4 know, hold, grow 5 buy, bring, think

3 spend, send, lend

2 left, spoke, kept, won, did, found, felt, sat

3 1 was, slept 5 saw 2 swam 6 bought 3 rang 7 stood 4 wrote, forgot 8 took, went

5 brought, kept, put, felt, held, spent, left, cost, thought, slept, stood up

6 1 forgotten 6 known 2 given 7 spoken 3 seen 8 driven 4 taken 9 grown

5 written

They all end in -n or -en.

7 1 read 5 sent 2 driven 6 slept 3 taught 7 swum 4 won 8 spoken

8 Answers from an Argentinian person

1 I read an English newspaper once a week.

2 No, never.

3 Yes, many times.

4 Yes, a few times in a lottery.

5 Oh, yes. It was terrible!

6 Yes, on a cruise.

7 Yes, many times.

8 Yes, on several occasions.

Unit 73

1 1 out 4 out 2 up 5 up 3 over 6 on 2 1 out 5 down 2 up 6 up 3 on 7 off 4 down 8 over

4 1 Take it off. 5 Take them off.

2 Try them on. 6 Try it on. 3 Turn it on. 7 Turn them on.

4 Put them on. 8 Put it on.

5 1 Could I try it on?

2 correct

3 You can take it off if you're hot.

4 Look it up in the dictionary.

5 correct

6 correct

7 Did you put it on?

8 correct

6 Answers from a Hungarian person

1 I grew up in Budapest.

2 I always feel hungry.

3 Once or twice a week.

4 I don't know many of them, but I get on well with my neighbours.

5 I try on trousers or shoes, but I often buy shirts without trying them on.

Unit 74

1 1 2005 6 midnight
2 Friday 7 the autumn
3 April 8 winter
4 the morning 9 dinner time
5 4.00 10 the evening

2 1 at 6 in 2 at 7 in 3 in 8 at 4 in 9 At 5 On 10 on

3 Answers from a Japanese person

1 I get up at 7.30.

2 I study English at night.

3 I go swimming at the weekend.

4 I watch TV in the evening.

5 I go to sleep at around 11.30.

6 I see my family in the mornings.

7 The last time I went on holiday was in October last year.

8 The last time I went to the mountains was in 2003.

9 The last time I went to bed very late was at New Year.

10 The last time I went to a party was in December.

Unit 75

1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8F 9T 10T

2 1 ago 4 time

2 diary 5 appointment

3 night 6 next

3 1 I went to the cinema

2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's Bar

3 I stayed at Gary's/I went to Gary's

4 I've got a doctor's appointment

5 It's Pete's birthday

6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad

4 1 before 5 since 2 after 6 later 3 until 7 for 4 at 8 soon

5	1	until	5	at
	2	for	6	since
	3	soon	7	before
	4	in	8	later

6 Your own answers

Unit 76

1	1	in	8	on
	2	on	9	on
	3	at	10	in
	4	in	11	on
	5	in	12	at
	6	on	13	on
	7	in	14	at
2	1	in	4	on
	2	in	5	in
	3	on	6	at, at, ir

3 Answers from a Brazilian person

▶ Brazil.

1 In a city.

2 In a flat.

3 Yes, Rio Guaiba.

4 It's on the second floor.

5 Yes, I do.

6 I'm learning at work, three hours a week in private lessons.

4 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9T

5 1 next to 5 between 2 in front of 6 opposite 7 next to 4 next to

6 Answers from a German person

1 An old factory.

2 More houses.

3 A pub, and more houses.

4 Yes, there's a supermarket and a newsagents around the corner.

5 The neighbours' flat.

6 Another neighbour's flat.

8 1 trees 6 bus stop 2 motorway 7 mountain 3 river 8 stairs 4 shop 9 building 5 gate 10 field 9 1 under 6 through 2 into 7 out of 3 up 8 down 9 across 4 along 5 past 10 under

Unit 77

1 1 x ... and it's also near the park.

2 x ... and he understands Greek too.

31

4 X ... and also washed the car.

5 1

6 X ... and a park near the house as well.

2 1 I often eat ice cream and I also like yoghurt.

2 I enjoy watching TV but I go to the cinema a lot too.

3 I can speak English and I can understand German as well.

4 I read a lot of books but I also listen to music.

5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.

3 Your own answers

4	1	because of	4	so
	2	to	5	to
	3	because	6	so
5	1	to	5	so
	2	SO	6	to
	3	because of	7	because of
	4	because	8	to

Unit 78

1	1	sure	4	sure
	2	not sure	5	sure
	3	not sure	6	not sure
2	1	If	4	when
	2	When	5	when
	3	if	6	If
3	1	when	4	when
	2	when	5	while/when
	3	while/when	6	when

4 1 Then

2 Afterwards/After that

3 Finally

4 First/First of all/Firstly

5 then/after that/afterwards

5 1 Firstly/First/First of all, she made the pasta sauce, and then she boiled the pasta. After that/Then/Afterwards/Finally, she added the sauce to the pasta.

2 Firstly/First/First of all, I did a degree in History, and then I did a Masters degree. After that/Afterwards, I got a teaching

job in Liverpool.

3 Firstly/First/First of all, we started our holiday in Heidelberg, and then we stayed in Munich for a few days. After that/Afterwards/Finally, we flew back to Rome.

4 Firstly/First/First of all, I made a shopping list, and then I went to the market. After that/Afterwards, I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner. 6 Answers from a Greek person First of all I went to see a friend, and then we had lunch together. After that, I went home and watched my favourite show on the TV and after that I read a book. Late in the evening I had dinner and finally went to bed at about midnight.

Unit 79

- 1 1 She's got blue eyes.
 - 2 They've got a small dog.
 - 3 I haven't got a mobile phone.
 - 4 He hasn't got any money.
 - 5 Have you got any sisters?
 - 6 Has she got a flat in town?
- 2 1 Has she got any children? or Does she have any children?
 - 2 They've got a lovely garden. on They have a lovely garden.
 - 3 Has she got long hair? or Does she have long hair?
 - 4 My sister hasn't got a boyfriend. or My sister doesn't have a boyfriend.
 - 5 Have you got a computer? or Do you have a computer?
 - 6 We haven't got any friends here. or We don't have any friends here.
- 3 1 got
- 4 Have
- 2 Do
- 5 Do
- 3 Have
- 4 Answers from a British person
 - 1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
 - 2 Yes, an Apple.
 - 3 Yes, his name's Barney.
 - 4 Yes, I've got the Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.
 - 5 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5

Group 1	Group 2	Group 3	Group 4	Group 5
rest	breakfast	bath	swim	holiday
break	lunch	shower	run	weekend
	dinner	wash	walk	journey

- 6 1 walk
- 4 swim
- 2 drink
- 5 rest
- 3 dinner
- 6 journey
- 7 1 eat/drink
- 5 time/day
- 2 rest/break
- 6 weekend7 holiday/time
- 3 break 4 journey
- 8 bath

- 1 1 Did you get my message?
 - 2 I must get some new clothes.
 - 3 We got home late last night.
 - 4 It's getting cold.
 - 5 I got three letters today.
 - 6 Where did you get that bag?
 - 7 He needs to get a job.
 - 8 Do you want to get a/the train?
- 2 1 receive
- 5 receive
- 2 buy
- 6 buy
- 3 arrive
- 7 obtain
- 4 become
- 8 travel
- 3 1 get a/the bus
 - 2 get here/home/back
 - 3 get them
 - 4 getting cold
 - 5 getting late
 - 6 get it
 - 7 get one
 - 8 get a bus/taxi

Review answer key

Basic English

Unit 1

- 1 twelve
- 2 fifteen
- 3 thirteen
- 4 thirty-four
- 5 eleven
- 6 seventy-nine
- 7 a/one hundred and twelve
- 8 twenty-seven
- 9 a/one hundred and seventy-five
- 10 two hundred and eighty-six
- 11 forty-one
- 12 nine hundred and fifty-three

Unit 2

- 1 twenty to two, five to two
- 2 midnight/midday, quarter past twelve
- 3 five past eleven, twenty past eleven
- 4 twenty past two, twenty-five to three

8 November

12 Australian

- 5 five to nine, ten past nine
- 6 half past six, quarter to seven
- 7 twenty-five past five, twenty to six

Unit 3

- 1 1 date, of 4 birthday 2 month, year 5 Year's Day 3 season
- 2 1 March 5 Saturday 2 autumn 6 July 3 Thursday 7 September

Unit 4

4 May

- 1 1 Italy C 9 Brazil C 2 Hungary C 10 Turkey C 3 Mexico C 11 Greek N 4 Swiss N 12 French N 5 China C 13 Germany C 6 Czech N 14 Russia C 7 Egypt C 15 Argentinian N 8 Spanish N 16 Portugal C
- 2 1 Poland 7 Korean
 2 Brazilian 8 Turkish
 3 Czech Republic 9 Italian
 4 Czech 10 Chinese
 5 Polish 11 Spain

6 Japanese

Unit 5

1	board	6	notebook
2	rubber		CD player
3	noticeboard		chair
4	dictionary	9	table/desk
5	pencil sharpener		folder

Unit 6

	_		
1	sentence	7	pronoun
2	adverb	8	word
	preposition	9	adjective
	phrase	10	singular
5	regular	11	irregular
6	article	12	plural

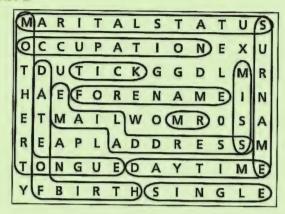
	_	-	_	_		_					_
1	S	P	A	S	T	S		M	P	L	E
V	S	T	A	R	T	1	C	L	E	W	P
D	E	U	P	S	1	N	G	U	L	A	R
(1)	N	G	R	E	G	U	L	A	R	D	E
R	T	M	0	U	D	Y	L	U	R	J	P
R	E	1	N	T	R	0	S	E	K	E	0
E	N	L	0	A	D	G	T	P	D	c	S
G	C	L	U	K	E	R	U	L	E	T	
U	E	D	W	U	W	E	M	U	1	1	T
L	Y	A	D	٧	E	R	B	R	M	V	
A	R	0	F	0	1	H	R	Α	5	E	0
R	U	W	0	R	0	C	0	U	R	P	N

Unit 7

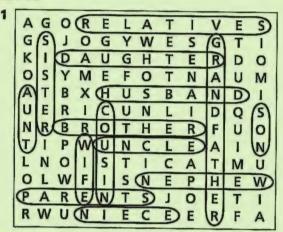
- 1 Wrong.
- 2 Spelling is how you write something, and pronunciation is how you say something.
- 3 Your own answer.
- 4 /ik'splein/
- 5 It's the opposite of right or correct.
- 6 No, that's wrong.
- 7 A frying pan.
- 8 S-T-A-M-P.

People

1	name	6	postcode
2	you come	7	do
3	from	8	'm/am
4	exactly	9	are you
5	I have		how old



Unit 10



- 2 1 My brother is eighteen years old.
 - 2 I was born in 1990.
 - 3 My sister is younger than me.
 - 4 His parents are divorced.
 - 5 There are five of us in my family.
 - 6 She is older than her brother.
 - 7 We spend a lot of time together.
 - 8 Who is the youngest in the family?

Unit 11

- 1 Using your hands: push, pick something up, hold, pull, carry, drop, turn something off, put something down Using your feet or legs: walk, stand up, jump, run, ride, climb
- 2 1 door 6 a bag 2 a wall 7 a pencil 3 a radio 8 a tree 4 a bicycle 9 a book 5 a bicycle 10 a bed

Unit 12

1 1 A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 B 9 B 10 A 11 B 12 A 13 A 2 1 arm 3 hand 5 bottom 2 neck 4 foot 6 nose

Unit 13

- 1 Possible answers
 - He's short and overweight. He's got short, brown hair and a moustache. He's middleaged.
 - 2 She's average height and average weight. She's got long, blonde, curly hair. She's a teenager/young person.
 - 3 He's got medium-length, fair, wavy hair. He's got brown eyes and a beard. He's an adult.
 - 4 She's attractive. She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes. She's elderly.
- 2 2 a child
 - 3 a teenager
 - 4 in your mid-twenties
 - 5 in your early thirties
 - 6 in your late thirties
 - 7 middle-aged
 - 8 in your early sixties
 - 9 elderly

Unit 14

1 Positive: funny, clever, kind, sociable Negative: stupid, untidy, horrible Positive or negative: quiet, organized, serious

2	1	lazy	5	intelligent
	2	shy		on my own
	3	shared		funny
	4	fun		organized

6 together

Unit 15

1 1 went

		married	7	up
	3	relationship	8	get
		get	9	couple
	5	had		
2	1	get	5	give
	2	become		become
	3	Is	7	get
	Δ	see	8	Is

Unit 16

1 1	excited	6	tired
2	hungry	7	scared
	surprised	8	nervous
	embarrassed	9	matter
5	worried	10	thirsty

2 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N 8 N 9 N 10 P



Everyday life

Unit 17

- 1 1 We sometimes go for a walk after lunch.
 - 2 Do you usually play tennis at the weekend?
 - 3 I usually go to the gym, and then I go home.
 - 4 She listens to music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping.
 - 5 On Sundays I often stay in and watch TV.
 - 6 I talk to my parents every evening.
 - 7 My sister occasionally comes round and we have dinner together.
 - 8 What time do you get to work in the morning?
- 2 1 j 2 i 3 e 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 d 8 f 9 k 10 g

Unit 18

- 1 1 socks 6 tie 2 hat 7 jumper 3 gloves 8 tights 4 boots 9 T-shirt 5 watch 10 belt
- 2 1 yellow 6 red 2 green 7 orange 3 purple 8 grey
 - 3 purple 8 grey
 4 pink 9 pale/light blue
 5 brown 10 dark blue
- 3 1 a scarf
 - 2 a pair of jeans or some jeans
 - 3 some ties
 - 4 a pair of trousers or some trousers
 - 5 some shirts
 - 6 a jacket
 - 7 a pair of trainers or some trainers
 - 8 a pair of sandals or some sandals

Unit 19

1	1	take	9	cash desk
	2	loose	10	medium
	3	cheap	11	help
	4	size	12	wrong
	5	try	13	casual
	6	changing	14	assistant
		pay	15	leave
		horrible	16	need
2	1	looking	7	too
	2	take	8	size
	3	nice	9	lovely/nice
	4	on	10	
	5	room	11	pay
	6	look	12	cash

Unit 20

1 1 F	2 T	3 T	4 F	5T 6T		
2 1	Lotter	У	5	price	9	earn
2	sold		6	saved	10	paid
3	bough	nt	7	paid	11	bills
4	cost		8	in	12	fare

Unit 21

1 1 a bit	4 a bit of			
2 a lot of	5 a bit			
3 a lot	6 a lot of			
2 Across	Down			
2 blows	1 lot			
5 ice	3 storm			
8 humid	4 windy			

8	humid	4	windy
9	snow	6	shower
11	freezing	7	thunder
12	heavy		shines
13	dry	11	foggy

Unit 22

1				_		_		~	_	<u></u>
	T	M	X	(E	A	R	Z	(H)	0	(5)
	B	A	C	K	A		H	E	J	0
	Q	(5)	0	1	D	0	Y	A	M	R
	R	1	F	L	U	L	Y	D	Z	E
	U	C	J	Α	Н		E	A	K	T
	1	(K)	W	E	S	В	1	C	R	Н
	T	O	0	T	Н	Α	C	Н	E	R
	Α	S	٧	E	C	E	G	E	L	0
	F	H	U	R	T	5)	D	E	M	A
	R	S	K	E	V(W	E	L	D	U

- 1 I've got a headache.
- 2 I've got a sore throat.
- 3 I've got toothache.
- 4 I've got backache.
- 5 I've got flu.
- 6 I feel sick.
- 7 I don't feel well.
- 8 My arm hurts.
- 9 I've got a pain in my ear.

1	something	6	Take
2	Try/Take	7	could
3	tablets	8	box
4	often	9	medicine
5	take		

Food and drink

Unit 24

Animal: duck, pig, sheep, lamb, cow Meat: beef, duck, pork, lamb, ham

Fish: tuna, salmon

Seafood: crab, mussels, prawns, squid

Unit 25

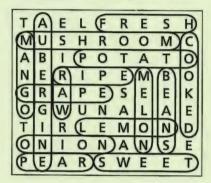
1 Possible answers

red: red pepper, tomato, cherry, chilli,

strawberry

yellow: banana, lemon, pineapple, melon orange: orange, carrot, peach, mango white/cream: garlic, mushroom, potato, cauliflower

green: peas, beans, cabbage, lettuce, cucumber, courgette



Unit 26

1 Possible answers

Packet: biscuits, pasta, rice, butter

Carton: orange juice, milk

Box: eggs, matches, chocolates

Bottle: milk, olive oil, water, orange juice, wine

Jar: jam, olives Tin: tomatoes, tuna

2 Possible answers

1 Could I have some sugar, please?

2 I'd like some sugar, please.

3 Have you got any sugar?

4 Anything else?

5 That's it, thanks.

6 How much (sugar) would you like?

Unit 27

1 C I'd like a toasted ham sandwich please.

2 W Is that to eat here or take away?

3 C Take away. And a cheese baguette, please.

4 W Fine. Anything else?

5 C Yes, a black coffee and two teas with lemon.

6 W OK, it will be a couple of minutes.

7 W Have a seat.

Unit 28

1 1 fork, spoon 5 pepper 2 main course, dessert 6 vinegar 3 fried or roast or boiled 7 white 4 medium, well done 8 sparkling

2 1 W Are you ready to order?

C Yes, I'll have the tomato soup.

W Right. And for your main course?

C Fillet steak with chips.

2 W Do you want red wine or white wine?

C Red wine, please.

W OK. Is that a bottle or just a glass?

3 At the end of the meal.

C Could I have the bill, please?

W Yes, of course.

Getting around

Unit 29

1 Does this bus go to The National Museum?

2 How many stops is it to the railway station?

3 Excuse me, does this bus go to Alfred Road?

4 How long does it take to get to the centre?

5 Does the 31 stop next to the post office?

6 Does the 9 stop outside the school?

7 Which bus do I get to Queen Street?

8 Do the buses run every ten minutes?

9 How long does it take to the centre?

10 How often do the buses run?

Unit 30

1 1 platform 6 journey 2 fast 7 carriage 3 miss 8 ticket 4 reserve 9 fare

5 timetable

The word in the grey squares is 'passenger'.

2 1 next train 4 leave 2 direct 5 get to 3 change 6 platform

Unit 31

1 1 The bank is on the right.

2 How do I get to the river?

3 Go along here and turn left.

4 Go straight on and turn right.

5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?

6 Yes, it's on the corner of this street.

- 2 1 The bank is opposite of the hotel.
 - 2 Go straight on and keep to going.
 - 3 Is there a post office near from here?
 - 4 It's on the your left, or It's on the your
 - 5 Turn to left and go straight on.
 - 6 It's the third turning on the right side.

- 1 1T 2T 3F 4T 5F 6F 7T 8T 9 F 10 T
- 2 1 motorway
- 5 lane

8 take

- 2 speed limit
- 6 traffic jams
- 3 overtake 4 accident
- 7 rush hour
- Unit 33
 - 1 'no parking'
- 5 'sale'
- 2 'entrance' or 'way in'
- 6 out of order
- 3 'no vacancies'
- 7 'no exit'
- 4 'please do not disturb' 8 'no smoking'

Places

Unit 34

- 1 north
- 6 capital
- 2 south
- 7 river
- 3 coast; coast 4 enormous
- 8 mountain
- 5 border
- 9 beach 10 famous

Unit 35

- 1 1 a modern city 2 over a million
- 5 there's nothing to do
- 3 north-east
- 6 a quiet street
- 4 dangerous
- 7 clean 8 fact
- 2 1 of
- 7 on
- 2 population
- 8 famous
- 3 historic
- 9 Statue

- 4 palace
- 10 Square
- 5 place

- 11 Park
- 6 city
- 12 cosmopolitan

Unit 36

- 1 1 valley
- 5 grass 6 path
- 2 healthy 3 boat
- 7 lake
- 4 farmer
- 8 alone
- 2 1 horse
- 4 lonely
- 2 grow
- 5 own
- 3 crops
- 6 countryside

Unit 37

- 1 1 shopping centre
 - 2 newsagent's
 - 3 chemist's
 - 4 hypermarket, supermarket
 - 5 baker's
 - 6 bookshop
 - 7 butcher's
 - 8 department store
 - 9 music shop
- 2 1 queue
- 6 stalls
- 2 shopping
- 7 indoors 8 basket
- 3 convenient
- 4 prefer
- 9 get
- 5 market
- 10 checkout
- The word in the grey squares is 'supermarket'.

Unit 38

- 1 1 bathroom
- 5 garage
- 2 kitchen
- 6 lift
- 3 bedroom
- 7 garden
- 4 study
- 8 home
- 2 1f 2b 3a 4g 5i 6h 7c 8e

Unit 39

- 1 1 dishwasher, sink 2 washing machine
- 6 fridge

5 cupboard

- 3 bin
- 7 freezer 8 oven
- 4 microwave
- 4 Do, empty
- 2 1 put 2 Put, turn
- 5 cook
- 3 turn, out

- 1 Bedroom: wardrobe, blanket, sheet, chest of drawers, single bed, desk
 - Bathroom: towel, toilet, shower, washbasin, bath, bidet
- 2 1 put on or take off, make-up or tissues 2 have, a razor or an electric razor
 - 3 clean, a toothbrush and toothpaste
 - 4 do or brush, a brush or a comb 5 have, soap

- 1 1 Picture 1 has got cushions, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 2 Picture 1 has got one armchair, picture 2 has got two.
 - 3 Picture 1 has got a radiator, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 4 Picture 1 has got two lamps, but picture 2 has got one.
 - 5 Picture 1 has got a picture on the wall, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 6 Picture 1 has got a rug on the floor, but picture 2 hasn't.
 - 7 Picture 2 has got a fireplace, but picture 1 hasn't.
 - 8 Picture 2 has got a carpet, but picture 1 hasn't.
 - 9 Picture 2 has got a light, but picture 1 hasn't.
 - 10 Picture 2 has got a coffee table, but picture 1 hasn't.

Study and work

Unit 42

1	1	biology	7	geography
	2	history		chemistry
	3	literature		design and
	4	physics		technology
	5	maths/music	10	modern languages

6 art

4	1)	Za	3 g	4 e	21	6 0	/ T	8 n	
3	1	badly			4	terrib	le/ba	ad	
	2	failed			5	nurse	erv		

2 failed 5 nurs 3 state 6 best

Unit 43

1	1	science	5	again
	2	lasts	6	degree
	3	terms	7	research

4 do/write 8 PhD or Doctor of Philosophy

2 People: undergraduate, engineer, lawyer, politician

Subjects: medicine, economics, architecture, business studies, politics

Phrases: do research, do a degree, write an essay

Unit 44

Possible answers

- 1 a dentist, a vet, a businessman, a businesswoman
- 2 a dentist, a nurse, a vet, a builder, a hairdresser
- 3 a businessman or businesswoman, a pilot, a shop assistant
- 4 retired, unemployed
- 5 a pilot, a nurse, a police officer, a soldier
- 6 a businessman, a businesswoman

Unit 45

1	1	j 2h	3 a	4 g	5 c	6i	7 e	8 d	9 f
2	1	in			4 5	pen	d		
	2	time			5 €	earn	get		
	3	a			6 0	colle	ague	S	

Unit 46

	laptop	5	backup copy
2	keyboard	6	hard drive
3	mouse mat	7	printout
4	memory stick	8	webcam

2	1	сору	5	save
	2	screen	6	print
	3	cut	7	paste

4 mouse

The word in the grey squares is 'document'.

Unit 47

9 d

1 chatroom, broadband, download, website, online, search engine, inbox, junk mail

2	1	attachment	7	broadbane
	2	message	8	internet
	3	online	9	receive
	4	delete	10	use
	5	fast	11	visit

6 send

Hobbies and interests

- 1 1 I love it, It's my favourite thing, It's wonderful, I think it's fantastic
 - 2 I quite enjoy it, It's quite enjoyable
 - 3 I think it's OK
 - 4 I'm not very keen on it, I don't like it very much, I'm not very interested in it
 - 5 I really hate it

2	1	interested	4	to
	2	on	5	boring
	3	driving	6	quite likes

- 1 1 volleyball, tennis, basketball
 - 2 rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, tennis, basketball
 - 3 football, rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, basketball
 - 4 a) tennis b) ice hockey
- 2 1 matches 4 scored 2 drew 5 goals 3 lost 6 top

Unit 50

1	1	favourite, go	4	instrument
		does	5	classical
	3	repairs	6	do, spend
2	1	spending	4	nlav

2 going

arranging

3 games

Unit 51

- 1 Pop and rock: band, lead singer, drummer, single, guitar Classical music: orchestra, violin, conductor, composer, cello
- 2 Possible answers
 - 1 Bryn Terfel is a famous opera singer in my country.
 - 2 Chris Martin is lead singer with Coldplay.
 - 3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous conductor.
 - 4 The London Symphony orchestra comes from my country.
 - 5 Alfred Brendel is a great pianist.
 - 6 Sergeant Pepper by the Beatles is one of my favourite albums.
 - 7 'Beautiful liar' by Beyoncé and Shakira is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
 - 8 Charlie Watts is the drummer with the Rolling Stones.

Unit 52

- 1 1 war, violent 4 thriller, exciting 2 comedy, funny 5 love, romantic
 - 3 horror, frightening
- 2 1 about 5 reviews 2 in 6 director 3 stars 7 see

4 actor

Unit 53

1 I usually buy a newspaper every day to find (1) out what has happened, but yesterday I listened (2) to the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it (3) on TV. As usual most (4) of it was bad news: more than twenty people (5) died in a terrible

road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting (6) programme about a television news (7) reporter who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

21c 2e 3d 4f 5b 6a

Holidays

Unit 54

1	arrange	6	book
2	currency	7	pack
3	hire	8	flight
4	go abroad	9	accommodation

5 holiday

Unit 55

11	h 2a 3d	4j 5	g 6f 7i	8 k
9	b 10 c			
2 1	stayed	5	delicious	
2	suite	6	night	
3	facilities	7	parking	
4	staff	8	book	

Unit 56

1 1 i 2 e 3 g 4 h 5 b 6 a 7 d 8 f 9 c

2	1	trolley	6	got
	2	ticket	7	fastened
	3	scales	8	landed
	4	flight	9	collected
	5	delayed	10	went/walked

Unit 57

- 1 ... We flew to Marseille ...
- 2 ... we had to get a bus to Cassis ...
- 3 ... holiday resort by the sea ...
- 4 ... We rented an apartment ...
- 5 ... we went for a walk ...
- ... we sunbathed on the beach ...
- 7 ... an hour or so ...
- 8 ... was perfect for the whole week ...

- 1 We're going on a tour of the city this afternoon.
- 2 Did you go sightseeing in Paris?
- 3 We always get lost in a new place.
- 4 She took a lot of photos on her holiday.
- 5 Did you visit the museum? (NOT at the museum)
- 6 There were lots of typical tourists.
- 7 There's a good exhibition at the art gallery.
- 8 Have you got a guidebook about London, please?

1 1 post office 7 per cent 2 postcode 8 parcel 3 postman/ 9 currency postwoman 10 cash machine

4 postbox 11 change 5 postcards 6 put, put 12 commission 13 charge, charge

2 1 send 4 exchange rate 2 envelope/letter/parcel 5 into

3 deliver 6 bureau, change

Social English

Unit 60

1 15 2D 3S 4D 5S 6S 7S 8S 9 D 10 S

2 1 hope to see you 5 shake hands again 6 see you soon 2 how are you? 7 nice to meet you 3 not bad 8 hi there

9 see you later

Unit 61

1 happy birthday

4 how do you do?

2 have a good weekend

3 congratulations

4 good luck 5 well done

6 welcome home

7 have a good holiday

8 Happy New Year

Unit 62

1 1 How many? 6 How long? 2 Why? 7 Whose? 3 How far? 8 Which? 4 How often? 9 Who?

5 Where?

2 1 How 4 often 2 do 5 long 3 does 6 kind of

3 Answers from a South Korean person

▶ I have a problem with speaking fluently and pronunciation.

1 I've got one brother.

2 I work at a travel agency.

3 She works in a nursery school as a teacher.

4 More than ten hours a week.

5 For ten years.

6 I don't like playing games, but I like watching football.

Unit 63

1 1 you, I 6 1 2 1,1 7 1 8 you 3 you 4 you 9 you 5 1

2 no problem, of course, go ahead, I'm afraid I need it, that's fine

Unit 64

1 A Would you like to have lunch tomorrow? or Do you want to have lunch tomorrow?

B I'm afraid but I can't. or I'm sorry but I can't.

2 A Would you like to go skiing this weekend? or Do you want to go skiing this weekend?

B Yes, that sounds fun! or That would be

3 A Would you like to come round here for a drink tonight?

B Yes, I'd love to, but I'm busy.

4 A Do you want to come round for a meal at the weekend?

B I'm sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65

1 shall 5 about 2 maybe 6 idea 3 could 7 Let 4 sure

Unit 66

1 Would you like a sandwich? Do you want a drink? or Do you want a sandwich? Would you like a drink?

2 Do you need a hand? Do you want some help? or Do you need some help? Do you want a hand?

3 No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

4 Thanks a lot. Thank you very much.

5 Let me pay for the coffees. Shall I do that for you?

6 That's very kind of you. Thank you very much.

Possible answers

- 1 A I'm sorry, I forgot to post your letter.
 - B Never mind. or It doesn't matter. or Don't worry.
- 2 A I'm sorry I'm late.
 - B That's OK. or Don't worry.
- 3 A I'm really sorry, I've broken a cup.
 - B That's OK. or It doesn't matter.
- 4 A Sorry, could you repeat that, please?
 - B Sure, no problem.

Unit 68

1	opinion	4	prefer
2	excellent	5	personally
3	disagree	6	a waste of

Unit 69

1 1	ring/call, at the	3	ring/phone
	moment	4	just a moment
2	speaking	5	sent me a text

- 2 1 B Is that Cheryl?
 - 2 A Yes, speaking.
 - 3 B Hi. It's Keira.
 - 4 A Hello, Keira. How are you?
 - 5 B I'm fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in?
 - 6 A Yes. Just a moment I'll get her.

4 rich

7 B Thanks.

Language

1 1 narrow

Unit 70

	2	dead		5	asleep
	3	noisy			
2	1	helpful		5	noisy
	2	commo	n	6	unnecessary
	3	useless		7	clear
	4	strange		8	annoying
	Th	ne word	in grey is	'ne	ecessary'.

Unit 71

- 1 1 We couldn't play the match with only ten players.
 - 2 He lives in Italy, but still speaks English most of the time.
 - 3 The food is **absolutely** fantastic in that restaurant.
 - 4 Max didn't like the film but I thought it was **quite** good.
 - 5 The last film was good, but this is **even** better.
 - 6 My English is getting a bit better.

2 Possible answers

1	winter	4	16
2	awful	5	tired
3	slow	6	nice

Unit 72

	Across		Down
1	been	1	went
4	read	2	seen
6	took	3	bought
9	put	5	done
	found	7	known
13	slept	8	ran
14	sent	10	thought
15	forgot	12	left
		13	sat
		14	spent

Unit 73

- 1 1 I grew up in a village.
 - 2 Why don't you sit down?
 - 3 I must find out their address.
 - 4 She fell over in the street.
 - 5 Did you go out last night?
 - 6 Could you turn on the light? or Could you turn the light on?
 - 7 Look it up in your dictionary.
 - 8 Could I try them on?

2	1	gave up	4	take off
	2	going up	5	get on (well)
	3	go back	6	carry on

Unit 74

In: December, summer, 2007, the afternoon, the 21st century

At: three o'clock, half past five, breakfast, the weekend, midnight

On: Monday morning, the sixth of March, my birthday, Tuesday, Friday evening

1	last week	5	this evening
2	two days ago	6	tomorrow morning
3	yesterday	7	tomorrow evening
	afternoon	8	next Monday
4	last night	9	in ten days' time

- 2 1 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I found an apartment or found somewhere to live.
 - 2 I met a Spanish man after I got a job in (the south of) Portugal.
 - 3 I've lived in the house I bought since I got married.
 - 4 I've lived in Portugal for five years.
 - 5 Soon I'm going to have a baby.
 - 6 At the moment we're preparing a room for the baby.

1	1	over	7	next to
	2	past	8	into
	3	near	9	out of
	4	above	10	opposite
	5	down	11	between
	6	across	12	through

- 2 1 near, above, next to, opposite
 - 2 past, across, into, out of, through ('near' and 'next to' are also possible)
- 3 In: my town, Germany, the countryside, the bedroom

At: school, home, a football match, work On: the table, the wall, the coast, the second floor

Unit 77

1 1 0	2	i 3 e	4h	5 f	6 d	7 a	8 b
-------	---	-------	----	-----	-----	-----	-----

2	1	because of	4	because
	2	to	5	so
	3	also	6	as well

Unit 78

- 1 1 When you're travelling on a long flight. always wear comfortable clothes.
 - 2 If you can choose your seat on the plane, sit near the front where it's quiet.
 - 3 While/When you are waiting for the flight, sit in the departure lounge.
 - 4 When you get off, don't leave anything on the plane.
 - 5 If you feel ill during the flight, tell the airline staff.
 - 6 If you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy.
- 2 1 first of all 4 After that or Then
 - 2 while 5 finally 3 Then OR After that 6 if

Unit 79

1 1	have	5	didn't
2	? a	6	time
3	B Did you have	7	a rest
4	Have	8	was, had

- 2 1 We had a break for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
 - 2 We had something to eat at the beach.
 - 3 My sister's/has got blonde hair.
 - 4 I was hot, so I had a shower/bath before dinner.
 - 5 We had a terrible/bad day at work. I hate my job!
 - 6 Have a lovely holiday/time in the Caribbean!
 - 7 I'd like to go on holiday, but I don't have any money.
 - 8 On Sunday, we just had a rest and did nothing.

- 1 arrive 9, obtain 2, buy 7, travel by 8, receive 4 and 6, become 3 and 5
- 2 Answers from a Hungarian person
 - 1 No, I'm happy in my current job.
 - 2 Yes, I get very tired when it's hot.
 - 3 I get about one or two messages a day.
 - 4 No.
 - 5 Tickets to see my favourite actor at the theatre.
 - 6 I bought them from a shop in the centre of town.
 - 7 I never get the train to work, I always walk.
 - 8 I got home at about ten o'clock last night.

Spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page	Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1	about	14	39B	do + noun	101
3A	Capital letters	16	40B	have + noun	103
3B	Saying and writing dates	17	42A	be good at something	109
4	People from a country	18	42B	at (the age of)	110
8	information	26	42C	exam (examination)	111
10B	How old are you?	29	43A	How long does it last?	112
11A	Irregular verbs	30	44	alan with jobs	114
13A	thin, fat, ugly	33	45B	Spend time doing something	117
13C	Other phrases for age	35	46A	keep	118
14A	What's like?	36	48A	like/love/hate + -ing	126
14B	really	37	48B	interesting/interested	127
15A	relationship	38	49B	Irregular verbs	129
15B	each other	39	51B	by	133
16B	get + adjective	41	52A	What kind of?	134
17A	usually and normally	46	53B	watch, see, listen, hear	137
17C	every and all	48	54	might + verb	141
18A	wear	49	55B	That's a shame/What a shame	143
18C	Plural nouns	50	58	should + verb	147
19B	too and very	52	60A	Introductions	153
19C	I'll take it/I'll leave it	53	60B	See you	154
20A	Money	54	61	cheers	155
21A	a lot (of)/a bit (of)	56	62A	whose and belong to	156
22A	be ill/sick	58	62B	which or what?	157
22B	should + verb	59	63A	Being polite	158
23	Asking for things in a chemist's	60	63B	lend and borrow	159
24	pig	65	64	Would you like to	
25B	salad	67		or Do you want to?	160
26A	Uncountable nouns	68	65	Saying no	161
26B	tin and can	69	66A	Saying thank you	162
26C	how much and how many	70	66B	let me + verb	163
27	Yes, please? and Yes, please.	71	67	(I'm) sorry	164
28C	another or some more	74	69A	Saying phone numbers	166
29	How long does it take?	78	70A	Position of adjectives	172
30A	last	80	71B	Gradable and ungradable	
30B	book something in advance	81		adjectives	175
31	Excuse me	82	72B	ever	177
35A	place	91	73A	Phrasal verbs	178
36B	alone and lonely	95	74	at	180
37A	Noun + shop	96	75B	for and since	182
38B	flat, house and home	99	79A	have and have got	190
			80	get	192

Word list / Index

almost /'ɔːlməʊst/ 2

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a.m. /eɪ 'em/ 2	alone /əˈləon/ 36
ATM /er ti: 'em/ 59	along /əˈlɒŋ/ 31, 76
able /'eɪbl/ 51	also /ˈɔːlsəʊ/ 77
about (= approximately) /əˈbaot/ 1	altogether /ɔ:ltəˈgeðə(r)/ 20
about (= the subject is) /ə'baot/ 52	always /'ɔːlweɪz/ 17
above /ə'bʌv/ 76	American /ə'merikən/ 4
abroad /əˈbrɔːd/ 54	and /ænd, ənd/ 77
absolutely /'æbsəlu:tli/ 71	and as in and you /ænd, ənd/ 61
accept /ək'sept/ 66	angry /ˈæŋgri/ 16
access as in internet access /'ækses/ 55	animal /ˈænɪml/ 24
accessories /ək'sesəriz/ 18	ankle /ˈæŋkl/ 12
accident /ˈæksɪdənt/ 29	annoying /əˈnɔɪɪŋ/ 70
accommodation /əkɒməˈdeı∫n/ 54	another /əˈnʌðə(r)/ 28
account as in bank account /ə'kaunt/ 20	answer the phone /a:nsə ðə 'fəon/ 45
across /ə'krɒs/ 76	antiseptic /ænti'septik/ 23
action /'æk∫n/ 52	anything else? /eniθη 'els/ 26
actor /'æktə(r)/ 52	apartment /ə'pa:tmənt/ 57
actress /'æktrəs/ 52	apologize /əˈpɒlədʒaɪz/ 67
address /ə'dres/ 8, 9, 47, 59	apple /'æpl/ 25
adjective /ˈædʒɪktɪv/ 6	appointment /əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 75
adult /'ædʌlt/ 13	Arabic /ˈærəbɪk/ 4
advance as in in advance /əd'va:ns/ 30	architect /'a:kitekt/ 43
adverb /'ædv3:b/ 6	architecture /'a:kitekt[ə(r)/ 43
advert /'ædvɜːt/ 53	area /'eəriə/ 4, 36, 69
advertisement /əd'va:tismənt/ 53	Argentina /aːdʒənˈtiːnə/ 4
advice /əd'vais/ 15	Argentinian /a:dʒənˈtɪniən/ 4
afraid as in I'm afraid /ə'freid/ 63, 64	arm /q:m/ 12
afraid as in I'm afraid not /ə'freid/ 55	armchair /ˈɑːmtʃeə(r)/ 41
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/ 4	arrange /əˈreɪndʒ/ 54
after /'a:ftə(r)/ 2,75	arranging as in flower arranging /ə'reindʒɪŋ/ 50
after that /'a:ftə ðæt/ 78	art /a:t/ 42
afternoon /a:ftəˈnuːn/ 2, 60	art gallery /a:t gæləri/ 58
afterwards /'a:ftəwədz/ 78	article /ˈɑːtɪkl/ 53
again /ə'gen/ 43, 60	article as in (in)definite article /'a:tikl/ 7
against /ə'genst/ 49	as well /əz 'wel/ 77
ago /ə'gəu/ 75	Asia /'eiʒə/ 4
agree, agree with someone /ə'griz/ 68	asleep /ə'sli:p/ 70
ahead as in go ahead /ə'hed/ 63	at as in be good at /æt, ət/ 42
air conditioning /ˈeə kəndı∫ənıŋ/ 55	at (= place) /æt, ət/ 76
airline /'eəlaɪn/ 45	at $(= time) / xt$, $t = 2,74$
airport /'eapoit/ 56	attachment /ə'tætſmənt/ 47
aisle seat /'aıl sixt/ 56	attractive /ə'træktıv/ 13
album /ˈælbəm/ 51	aubergine /ˈəʊbəʒiːn/ 25
alive /əˈlaɪv/ 70	aunt /a:nt/ 10
all /ɔːl/ 17, 53	Australasia /pstrəˈleɪʒə/ 4
all as in first of all /o:1/ 78	Australia /p'streiliə/ 4
all as in that's all /o:1/ 26	Australian /p'streilian/ 4
all right /o:l 'raɪt/ 63, 67	autumn /'ɔːtəm/ 3
almost //arlmaysat/ 2	prove as /11-/ 12

average /ˈævərɪdʒ/ 13

avocado /ævəˈkɑːdəʊ/ 25 awake /ə'weik/ 70 awful /'ɔ:fl/ 19 BA (Bachelor of Arts) /bix 'ei (bætsələr əv 'axts)/ 43 BSc (Bachelor of Science) /bi: es 'si: (bætsələr əv 'saiəns)/ 43 baby /'beɪbi/ 13, 15 back /bæk/ 12 backache /'bækeik/ 22 backup /'bækap/ 46 bacon /'beikən/ 24 bad as in not bad /bæd/ 60 badly as in do badly /'bædli/ 42 bag /bæg/ 5, 56 baggage /'bæqidz/ 56 baguette /bæ'get/ 27 baker's /'beikəz/ 37 balcony /'bælkəni/ 38 ball /bo:1/ 49 banana /bə'nq:nə/ 25 band /bænd/ 51 bank account /'bænk əkaunt/ 20 bar /ba:(r)/ 26 basement /'beismont/ 38 basket /'baskit/ 37 basket (used in basketball) /'baskit/ 49 basketball /'baskitbal/ 49 bath /bq:0/ 40, 79 bathroom /'ba:0ru:m/ 38 battery /'bæt(ə)ri/ 69 be /bix, bi/ 16 beach /bi:tf/ 34, 57 beans /bi:nz/ 25 beard /biad/ 13 beat /bi:t/ 49 beautiful /'bju:tifl/ 13 because /bi'kpz, -kəz/ 77 because of /bi'kpz, -kəz əv/ 77 become /bi'kam/ 15 bed /bed/ 17, 22 bed as in single bed /bed/ 40 bedroom /'bedru:m/ 38 bedside table /bedsaid 'teibl/ 40 beef /bi:f/ 24 before /bi'fox(r)/ 75 beginning /bi'qinin/ 46 behind /bi'haind/ 76 believe /bi'li:v/ 53 bell /bel/ 33 belong /bi'lon/ 62 below /bi'ləu/ 76 belt /belt/ 18 belt as in seat belt /belt/ 56

best friend /best 'frend/ 15 between /bi'twi:n/ 7 between /bi'twi:n/ 76 bicycle /'barsikl/ 36 bidet /'bixder/ 40 big /big/ 19 bike /bark/ 36 bill /bil/ 20, 28 bin as in rubbish bin /bin/ 39 biology /bar'pladzi/ 42 bird /ba:d/ 36 birth as in date of birth /b3:0/ 9 birthday /'bs:θdei/ 3, 61 biscuits /'biskits/ 26 bit as in a bit, a bit of /bit/ 21 bitter /'bitə(r)/ 25 black /blæk/ 13, 18 black coffee /blæk 'kpfi/ 27 blanket /'blænkit/ 40 block of flats /blok av 'flæts/ 38 blonde /blond/ 13 blow /blou/ 21 blue /blu:/ 18 board n /boxd/ 5 board pen /'boid pen/ 5 boarding /'bo:din/ 56 boarding card /'boidin kaid/ 56 boat /boot/ 36 boiled /boild/ 28 boiling /'boilin/ 16 book v /bok/ 30, 54, 55 bookshelf /'bokfelf/ 41 boots /bu:ts/ 18 border /'boxdə(r)/ 34 boring /'borrin/ 48 born as in be born /born/ 10 borrow /'bprau/ 63 boss /bps/ 44 bottle /'botl/ 26, 28 bottom (= part of the body) /'bptəm/ 12 bottom (= the lowest part) /'bptəm/ 59 bowl /bool/ 28 box /bpks/ 26 box as in letter box /boks/ 59 boyfriend /'boifrend/ 10, 15 Brazil /brəˈzɪl/ 4 Brazilian /brəˈzɪliən/ 4 bread /bred/ 26, 27 break v /breik/ 11,67 break n /breik/ 79 breakfast /'brekfəst/ 17, 79 breeze /brizz/ 21 bridge /bridʒ/ 35 bring /brin/ 63 Britain /'britn/ 4 broadband /'bro:dbænd/ 47

best /best/ 42

brother /'braðə(r)/ 10 cash desk /'kæf desk/ 19 brother-in-law /'braðər in lo:/ 10 cash machine /'kæf məfirn/ 59 brown /braon/ 13, 18, 27 cassette player /kə'set pleiə(r)/ 5 brush /bras/ 40 castle /'kg:sl/ 35 builder /'bildə(r)/ 44 casual /'kæʒuəl/ 19 building /'bildin/ 35, 45 catch /kæts/ 30 bureau de change /bjuərəu də 'fa:nʒ/ 59 cathedral /kə'θi:drəl/ 35 bus /bas/ 29 cauliflower /'kpliflavə(r)/ 25 bus driver /'bas draivə(r)/ 44 ceiling /'si:lɪŋ/ 41 bus stop /'bas stop/ 29 celebrity /səˈlebrəti/ 53 business studies /'biznes stadiz/ 43 cellist /'tfelist/ 51 businessman /'bıznəsmən/ 43, 44 cello /'tselau/ 51 businesswoman /'biznəswomən/ 43, 44 Central America /sentral a'merika/ 4 busy (= a lot of things happening) /'bızi/ 32, 35 central heating /sentral 'hi:tin/ 55 busy (= a lot of things to do) /'bızi/ 64 centre as in shopping centre /'sentə(r)/ 37 busy (= engaged) /'bizi/ 69 centre as in town centre /'sentə(r)/ 38 but /bat, bat/ 77 century /'sent[əri/ 74 butcher's /'butsəz/ 37 certainly /'sa:tnli/ 28 butter /'batə(r)/ 26 chair /t[ea(r)/ 5 buy /bai/ 20 change n /tseind3/ 20 by /bai/ 51 change v /tseindz/ 30, 59 bye bye, bye /'bai bai, bai/ 60 change places /tseind3 'pleisiz/ 63 changeable /'tfeindzəbl/ 21 changing room /'tfeindzin ru:m/ 19 CD /si: 'di:/ 5 CD player /si: 'di: pleiə(r)/ 5 charge /tfa:dz/ 59 chart as in singles chart /tfa:t/ 51 cabbage /'kæbidʒ/ 25 chat /tsæt/ 47 cake /keik/ 26 chatroom /'tsætru:m/ 47 call as in last call /ko:1/ 56 call v /kɔ:1/ 69 cheap /tsi:p/ 19 call someone back /kol samwan 'bæk/ 69 check as in check your emails /tfek/ 47 check-in, check-in desk called /kɔ:ld/ 7 camera as in speed camera /'kæmərə/ 69 /'tsek in, 'tsek in desk/ 56 camping /'kæmpɪŋ/ 50 checkout /'tsekaut/ 37 cheek /tsi:k/ 12 can v (= be able to) /kæn, kən/ 19, 66 cheers /tsiaz/ 61 can n (= container) /kæn/ 26 cheese /tsiz/ 26 can v (= permission) /kæn, kən/ 63 chef /sef/ 44 can v (= request) /kæn, kən/ 59, 63, 69 Canada /'kænədə/ 4 chemist /'kemist/ 22 chemist's /'kemists/ 22, 23, 37 Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/ 4 chemistry /'kemistri/ 42 Cantonese /kæntə'niz/ 4 cheque /tsek/ 20 capital /'kæpitl/ 34 cherry /'tseri/ 25 cappuccino /kæpə'tfi:nəu/ 27 chest /tsest/ 12 car park /'ka: pa:k/ 32 chest of drawers /tsest əv 'drazz/ 40 card as in boarding card /kg:d/ 56 chicken /'tsikin/ 24 card as in credit card /ka:d/ 19 child /t[aild/ 13 card as in debit card /ka:d/ 20 children /'tsildren/ 8, 13 cards /kg:dz/ 50 chilli /'tstli/ 25 carpet /'ka:pit/ 41 chin /tsm/ 12 carriage /'kærɪdʒ/ 30 China /'tsamə/ 4 carrot /'kærət/ 25 Chinese /tsai'niz/ 4 carry /'kæri/ 11 chips /tsips/ 28 carry on (with something) chocolate /'t[pklət/ 26 /kæri 'pn (wið samθin)/ 73 choose /tfu:z/ 37 carton /'ka:tn/ 26 Christmas /'krɪsməs/ 3 cartoon /kg:'tu:n/ 52 church /tsats/ 35 $\cosh n / \text{kef} / 20$

cinema /'sɪnəmə/ 50, 52 circle v /'sa:kl/ Starter city /'srti/ 35 classical /'klæsikl/ 50, 51 clean v /kli:n/ 17, 39, 40 clean adj /kli:n/ 35 cleaner /'kli:nə(r)/ 44 clear /klip(r)/ 70 clever /'klevə(r)/ 14 click on something /'klik on samθιη/ 46 client /'klaiant/ 45 climb /klaım/ 11 clock as in o'clock /klpk/ 2, 30 close v /kləoz/ 11,62 closed as in flight closed /klauzd/ 56 closest friend /klausist 'frend/ 15 cloud /klavd/ 21 cloudy /'klaudi/ 21 clove /klauv/ 25 coast /kəust/ 34 coat /kəut/ 18 code /kəud/ 69 coffee /'kpfi/ 27 coffee table /'kpfi teibl/ 41 coin /kɔɪn/ 20 cold adj /kəvld/ 21 cold n /kəold/ 22 colleague /'kpli:g/ 45 collect (= keep together) /kə'lekt/ 50 collect (= pick up) /kə'lekt/ 56 college /'kplid3/ 42 colour /'kalə(r)/ 13 comb /kəum/ 40 come from /'kam from, from/ 4,8 come round /kam 'raund/ 17, 64 comedy /'kpmədi/ 52 comfortable /'kamf(ə)təbl/ 19 commission /kəˈmɪʃn/ 59 common /'kpmən/ 70 company /'kampəni/ 45 complete v /kəm'pli:t/ Starter complete opposites /kəmpli:t 'ppəzits/ 14 composer /kəm'pəuzə(r)/ 51 computer game /kəm'pju:tə qeim/ 50 computer science /kəmpju:tə 'saɪəns/ 43 concert /'kpnsət/ 51 conditioning as in air conditioning /kən'dıʃənin/ 55 conductor /kən'dʌktə(r)/ 51 confusing /kənˈfjuːzɪŋ/ 70 congratulations /kəngrætʃu'leɪʃnz/ 61 continue (at school) /kəntınju: (ət 'sku:l)/ 42 convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ 37 cook v /kok/ 39 cooked /kokt/ 25 cooker /'kokə(r)/ 39

cooking /'kokin/ 50 cool /ku:l/ 21 copy n, v /'kppi/ 46 corner /'kɔːnə(r)/ 31 correct v /kəˈrekt/ Starter, 7 cosmopolitan /kpzmə'pplıtən/ 35 cost v /kpst/ 20 cotton wool /kptn 'wol/ 23 cough /kpf/ 22 could (= permission) /kod/ 63 could (= request) /kod/ 7, 23, 63 could (= suggestion) /kod/ 64 countryside /'kantrisaid/ 36 couple (= two people in a relationship) /'kapl/ 15 couple as in a couple of minutes /'kapl/ 27 courgette /kuə'zet/ 25 course (= of study) /ko:s/ 43 course (= part of a meal) /kɔːs/ 28 court /ko:t/ 49 cousin /'kazn/ 10 cow /kau/ 24 crab /kræb/ 24 crazy /'kreizi/ 70 cream adj /kri:m/ 18 cream n /krim/ 23 credit card /'kredit ka:d/ 19, 20 croissant /'kwæson/ 27 crop /krpp/ 36 cross out /krps 'aut/ Starter crossing as in pedestrian crossing /'krosin/ 32 crowded /'kraudid/ 35 cucumber /'kju:knmbə(r)/ 25 cup /kap/ 39 cupboard /'kabad/ 39 curly /'ks:li/ 13 currency /'karənsi/ 54, 59 curtain /'ks:tn/ 41 cushion /'kusn/ 41 customer /'kastəmə(r)/ 19, 23 customs /'kastəmz/ 56 cut (= make a wound) /kat/ 23 cut (= remove) /kat/ 46 Czech /tsek/ 4 Czech Republic /tsek ri'pablik/ 4

DVD player /di: vi: 'di: pleiə(r)/ 41 dad /dæd/ 10 damp /dæmp/ 21 dance /dɑ:ns/ 11 dangerous /'deindʒərəs/ 35 dark /dɑ:k/ 13, 18 data /deitə/ 47 date /deit/ 3, 47, 74 date of birth /deit əv 'bɜ:θ/ 9 daughter /'dɔ:tə(r)/ 10 day /dei/ 3, 45



day as in have a nice day /dei/ 61 double /'dabl/ 7 daytime /'dertaim/ 9 double room /'dabl ru:m/ 55 dead /ded/ 70 down as in go down /daun/ 76 debit card /'debit ka:d/ 20 download /daon'loud/ 47, 51 declare as in nothing to declare /di'kleə(r)/ 33 downstairs /daon'steaz/ 38 definite article /definat 'a:tikl/ 6 draw /dra:/ 49 degree /dr'ari:/ 43 drawers as in chest of drawers /drazz/ 40 delayed /di'leid/ 56 drawing /'dro:in/ 50 delete /dr'li:t/ 47 dress /dres/ 18 deli(catessen) /'deli, delikə'tesən/ 37 drink n /drink/ 79 delicious /dr'lısəs/ 55 drive /draw/ 32 deliver /di'livə(r)/ 37, 59 driver /'draivə(r)/ 44 dentist /'dentist/ 44 drop /drop/ 11 departed /di'pa:tid/ 56 drums /dramz/ 51 department store /dr'pa:tmont sto:(r)/ 37 drummer /'drama(r)/ 51 departure /di'pa:t[ə(r)/ 56 dry /drai/ 21 departures /di'pa:tsəz/ 56 duck /dak/ 24 design /di'zaın/ 45 during the week /djoərin ðə 'wi:k/ 17 design and technology /dızaın ən tek'nplədzi/ 42 each /i:tf/ 20 desk /desk/ 5, 40 each other /ixt['Aðə(r)/ 15 desk as in cash desk /desk/ 19 ear /19(r)/ 12 dessert /di'za:t/ 28 early as in early twenties /'a:li/ 17 details /'di:terlz/ 55 earn /3:n/ 20, 45 diary /'darəri/ 75 east /i:st/ 34, 35 dictionary /'dık [ənri/ 5 Easter /'i:stə(r)/ 61 die /dar/ 53 economics /i:kə'npmiks/ 43 difference /'difrans/ 7 economist /1'kpnəmist/ 43 different /'difrant/ Starter egg /eg/ 26 dining room /'dainin ru:m/ 38 Egypt /'i:dzipt/ 4 dinner /'dinə(r)/ 17, 79 Egyptian /I'dzip[n/ 4 direct /də'rekt, dai-, di-/ 30 elderly /'eldəli/ 13 director /dəˈrektə(r), dai-, di-/ 52 electric razor /ılektrık 'reizə(r)/ 40 dirty /'da:ti/ 35 else as in anything else? /els/ 26 disagree /disə'qri:/ 68 email address /'i:meil adres/ 9, 47 disaster /dr'za:stə(r)/ 53 embarrassed /im'bærəst/ 16 discuss /di'skas/ 45 empty adj, v /'empti/ 39 dishwasher /'dɪʃwɒʃə(r)/ 39 en suite /pn 'swi:t/ 55 disk /disk/ 46 end /end/ 46 disturb as in please do not disturb /di'sta:b/ 33 engaged /in'geid3d/ 69 divorced /di'vo:st/ 15 engine as in search engine /'endzin/ 47 do as in do a degree, do research /du:/ 43 engineer /end31'n19(r)/ 43 do as in do homework /du:/ 42 engineering /endʒi'niərin/ 43 do as in do the shopping, do the ironing England /'ingland/ 4 /du:/ 17, 37, 39 English /'mglis/ 4 do as in do your hair /du:/ 40 enjoy /in'dzoi/ 48 do as in How do you do? /du:/ 60 enjoyable /ın'dʒɔɪəbl/ 48 do as in What do you do? /du:/ 8.17 enormous /i'nɔ:məs/ 34 do the ironing /du: ði 'arənın/ 39 enter /'entə(r)/ 20 do the shopping /du: ðə 'ʃppɪŋ/ 17, 37, 39 entrance /'entrans/ 33 do well /du: 'wel/ 42 entry as in no entry /'entri/ 33 doctor /'dpktə(r)/ 43 envelope /'envələup/ 59 document /'dokjomont/ 46 equipment /i'kwipment/ 49 dog /dpg/ 36 especially /i'spe[əli/ 71 don't worry /'doont wari/ 66 espresso /e'spresau/ 27 door as in front door /do:(r)/ 38 essay /'esei/ 43

fine (= OK) / fam / 60, 63Europe /'iuarap/ 4 fingers /'fingez/ 12 even /'i:vn/ 71 finish /'finis/ 17, 63 evening /'i:vnin/ 2, 60, 75 event /i'vent/ 53 fireplace /'faippleis/ 41 first adv /fa:st/ 78 ever /'evə(r)/ 72 first adj /f3:st/ 8 every /'evri/ 17, 29 first half /fa:st 'hq:f/ 49 exactly /ig'zæktli/ 8 first of all /fast av 'a:1/ 78 exams /ig'zæmz/ 42 firstly /'fa:stli/ 78 ex-boyfriend /eks 'boifrend/ 15 fish /fif/ 24 excellent /'eksələnt/ 68 fishing /'fifin/ 50 exchange rate /iks'tseindz reit/ 59 fit /fit/ 19 excited /ik'saitid/ 16 flat adi /flæt/ 69 exciting /ik'saitin/ 52 flat n /flæt/ 38 excuse me /ık'skju:z mi:/ 29, 31 flatmate /'flætmeit/ 15 ex-girlfriend /eks 'gs:lfrend/ 15 flight /flatt/ 54, 56 ex-husband /eks 'hazband/ 15 flight closed /flait 'klauzd/ 56 exit /'eksit/ 33 floor (= level of a building) /flo:(r)/ 38 expensive /ik'spensiv/ 19 explain /ik'splein/ 7 floor (= surface you walk on) /flox(r)/ 41 flower /'flavə(r)/ 36 extremely /ik'stri:mli/ 71 flower arranging /'flavor oreindzin/ 50 ex-wife /eks 'warf/ 15 flu /flu:/ 22 eye /ai/ 12 fly /flai/ 57 fog /fpg/ 21 face /feis/ 12 foggy /'fpqi/ 21 facilities /fə'sılətiz/ 55 folder (= for holding papers) /'fəuldə(r)/ 5 fact /fækt/ 35 folder (= on a computer) /'faulda(r)/ 46 factory /'fæktəri/ 45 foot /fot/ 12 fail an exam /feil ən ig'zæm/ 42 football /'futbo:1/ 49 fall over /foxl 'auva(r)/ 11, 73 for f(s;(r), f(s)) / 75false /fo:ls, fols/ Starter for a while /for a 'wail/ 22 family name /'fæməli neim/ 8 forecast as in weather forecast /'fo:ka:st/ 53 family tree /fæməli 'tri:/ 10 foreign /'foren/ 54 famous /'fermas/ 34, 51 forename /'fo:neim/ 9 fantastic /fæn'tæstik/ 48 forget /fə'qet/ 67 far /fa:(r)/ 32, 62 fork /fo:k/ 28 Far East /fa:r 'i:st/ 4 fortunately /'fortsanatli/ 43 fare /feə(r)/ 20, 30 forward v /'fo:wad/ 47 farm /fg:m/ 36 France /frains/ 4 farmer /'fa:mə(r)/ 36 free /fri:/ 20 fast /fg:st/ 30, 47 freezer /'fri:zə(r)/ 39 fasten /'fa:sn/ 56 freezing /'fri:zin/ 16, 21 fat /fæt/ 13 French /frent [/ 4 father /'fa:ðə(r)/ 10 fresh /fres/ 25 favourite /'feivərit/ 48 fresh food /fref 'fu:d/ 36 feel /fi:l/ 16, 22 fridge /fridz/ 39 feet /fi:t/ 12 fried /fraid/ 28 few as in a few /fju:/ 36 friend as in best/closest friend /frend/ 15 field /fi:ld/ 36 friendly /'frendli/ 14

frightened /'fraitnd/ 16

frightening /'fraitnin/ 52

from (= origin) /from, from/ 4

from (= time) /from, from/ 45

front door /frant 'do:(r)/ 38

frying pan /'fraun pæn/ 39

frozen /'frauzn/ 25

242 WORD LIST

fill /fil/ 37

fillet /'filit/ 28

film /film/ 17, 52

finally /'faməli/ 78

find /famd/ 54

final score /faml 'sko:(r)/ 49

find out /faind 'aut/ 53, 73

fine (= in good health) /fain/ 60

full /ful/ 37, 39	go out /gəʊ 'aʊt/ 17, 73
full-time /'fol taım/ 45	go out for (a meal/a drink)
fun /fan/ 14, 48	/gəo 'aut fə(r)/ 64, 73
funny /'fani/ 14, 52	go out with someone /gou 'aut wið samwan/ 15
furniture /'fa:nit[ə(r)/ 41	go sightseeing /gəʊ 'saɪtsiːɪŋ/ 58
	go to primary school /goo to 'praimori sku:l/ 42
CD (con and one of it is an an)	go up /gou 'Ap/ 73
GP (general practitioner)	goal /gəol/ 49
/dʒi: 'pi:, dʒenrəl præk'tıʃənə(r)/ 22	good afternoon /'god a:ftənu:n/ 60
gallery as in art gallery /ˈgæləri/ 58	good at something /'god at samθιη/ 42
game /geim/ 49	
garage /ˈgærɑːʒ, ˈgærɪdʒ/ 38	good-looking /god 'lokin/ 13
garden /'ga:dn/ 38	good luck /'god lak/ 61
gardening /ˈgɑːdnɪŋ/ 50	
garlic /ˈgɑːlɪk/ 25	good morning /'god mornin/ 60
gate /get/ 56	good to meet you /god to 'mi:t ju:/ 60
gents /dʒents/ 33	goodbye /gud'bat/ 60
geography /dʒi'ɒgrəfi/ 42	goodnight /god'nait/ 60, 61
German /'dʒɜːmən/ 4	grade /greid/ 42
Germany /'dʒɜːməni/ 4	graduate n /ˈgrædʒuət/ 43
get (= arrive) /get/ 30, 31, 80	graduate v /ˈgrædʒueɪt/ 43
get (= become) /get/ 16, 80	grams /græmz/ 26
get (= buy) /get/ 80	granddaughter /ˈgrændɔːtə(r)/ 10
get (= fetch) /get/ 69	grandfather /ˈgrænfa:ðə(r)/ 10
get (= obtain) /get/ 42, 80	grandmother /ˈgrænmʌðə(r)/ 10
get (= receive) /get/ 47, 80	grandson /ˈgrænsʌn/ 10
get (= travel by) /get/ 29, 30, 57, 80	grapes /greips/ 25
get a grade /get ə 'greɪd/ 42	grass /grass/ 36
get a job /get ə 'dʒpb/ 43	great /greit/ 55, 64, 65
get an email /get ən 'iːmeɪl/ 47	Great Britain / great britn/ 4
get divorced /get di'vo:st/ 10	Greece /gri:s/ 4
get dressed /get 'drest/ 17	Greek /griːk/ 4
get lost /get 'lost/ 58	green /gri:n/ 18
get married /get 'mærid/ 10, 15	grey /grei/ 13, 18
get off /get 'pf/ 11, 29, 30, 56	grilled /grild/ 28
get on /get 'on/ 11, 29, 30, 56, 73	ground floor /graund 'flo:(r)/ 38
get on with someone /get 'pn wið samwan/ 15	group /gru:p/ 51
get to know someone /get to 'nou samwan/ 15	grow /grəu/ 36
get to work /get tə 'ws:k/ 17	grow up /grao 'Ap/ 73
get up /get 'Ap/ 17	guests /gests/ 55
girlfriend /ˈgɜːlfrend/ 10, 15	guide /gaid/ 58
give /grv/ 12, 15, 72	guidebook /'gaɪdbok/ 58
give someone a hand /grv samwan ə 'hænd/ 66	guitar /gr'ta:(r)/ 50, 51
give something up /grv samθιη 'ap/ 73	gym /dʒɪm/ 17, 50, 55
glass /gla:s/ 28	
glasses /'gla:siz/ 18	hair $\frac{\text{hea}(r)}{12,40}$
gloves /glavz/ 18	hairdresser /ˈheədresə(r)/ 44
go (= do something) $/gau/17, 22, 50$	half /ha:f/ 26, 49
go (= move or travel) $\frac{\text{gau}}{31,33}$	half past /'haːf paːst/ 2
go ahead /gəʊ ə'hed/ 63	half price /ha:f 'prais/ 20
go and see /gəu ən ˈsiː/ 22	half-time /haːf 'taɪm/ 49
go back /gəu 'bæk/ 73	ham /hæm/ 24
go down /gəu 'daun/ 76	hand (= part of the body) /hænd/ 12
go for a walk /gəu fər ə 'wə:k/ 57	hand as in give someone a hand /hænd/ 66
go on a (guided) tour	hand luggage /'hænd lʌgɪdʒ/ 56
/gəu nn ə (gaidid) 'tuə(r)/ 58	handbag /ˈhændbæg/ 18
go online /gəo on'laın/ 47	hands as in shake hands /hændz/ 60

happen /'hæpən/ 53 happy /'hæpi/ 16 happy birthday /hæpi 'ba:θdei/ 61 happy Christmas /hæpi 'krısməs/ 61 happy New Year /hæpi nju: 'jıə(r)/ 61 hard adv /ha:d/ 42 hard copy /ha:d 'kppi/ 46 hard drive /ha:d 'draiv/ 46 hardly ever /ha:dli 'evə(r)/ 17 hardworking /ha:d'w3:kin/ 14 hat /hæt/ 18 hate /heit/ 48 have /hæv, həv/ 79 have (= do something) /hæv/ 17, 40, 56, 69 have (= eat/drink) /hæv/ 28 have used in greetings /hæv/ 61 have a baby /hæy ə 'beɪbi/ 15 have a seat /hæv ə 'sixt/ 27 have got /hæv 'got/ 10, 13, 21, 26, 79, 80 have got to /hæv 'got tu:, tə/ 60 have to /'hæf tu:, tə/ 45 head /hed/ 12 headache /'hedeik/ 22 healthy /'helθi/ 36 hear /hio(r)/53heating as in central heating /'hi:tin/ 55 heavy /'hevi/ 21 height /hart/ 13 hello /he'ləu/ 60 help /help/ 19,66 helpful /'helpfl/ 55, 70 hi, hi there /hai, 'hai ðeə(r)/ 60 high /hai/ 34, 45 hill /hil/ 36 hire /'harə(r)/ 54 historic /hi'storik/ 35 history /'hist(ə)ri/ 42 hob /hpb/ 39 hobby /'hpbi/ 50 hockey as in ice hockey /'hoki/ 49 hold /həʊld/ 11 holiday /'holodei/ 54, 61, 79 home /hoom/ 38 homework /'homwa:k/ 39,42 hope /houp/ 60 horrible /'horəbl/ 14, 19 horror /'horə(r)/ 52 horse /hoss/ 36 hospital /'hospitl/ 45 hot /hpt/ 21 hours /'avəz/ 45 house /haus/ 38 househusband / haushazband/ 44 housewife /'hauswarf/ 44 How about you? /hav əbaut 'ju:/ 62 How are things? /haυ ə 'θınz/ 60

How are you? /hav a 'ju:/ 60 How do you do? /hav do jo 'du:/ 60 how far /'hau fa:(r)/ 32, 62 how long (= length) /'hao lon/ 13 how long (= time) /'hav lon/ 29, 62 how many /'hav meni/ 26, 62 how much /'hav mats/ 13, 26, 45, 59 how often /'hau pfn, pftən/ 62 how old /'hav əvld/ 8, 10 however /hav'evə(r)/ 77 humid /'hju:mid/ 21 hundred /'handred/ 1 Hungarian /hʌŋˈgeəriən/ 4 Hungary /'hʌŋgəri/ 4 hungry /'hʌngri/ 16 hurt /ha:t/ 22 husband /'hazbənd/ 10 hypermarket /'haipəma:kit/ 37

ICT (information communication technology) /ar si: 'ti: (ınfəmeɪʃn kəmju:nıkeɪʃn tek'nɒlədʒi)/ IT (information technology) /ai 'ti: (infəmeisn tek'nplədzi)/ 42 ice /ais/ 21 ice cream /ais 'kri:m/ 28 ice hockey /'ais hoki/ 49 icon /'aikon/ 46 icv /'aisi/ 21 I'd like /aid 'laik/ 26, 27 I'd like to /aid 'laik tu:, tə/ 55 I'd love to /aid 'lav tu:, tə/ 64 idea /aı'dıə/ 65 if /If/ 78 ill as in be/feel ill /ıl/ 16, 22 I'll leave it/them /aɪl 'liːv ɪt, ðəm/ 19 I'm afraid /aim ə'freid/ 55, 63, 64 I'm afraid not /aım əfreid 'not/ 55 impossible /im'posəbl/ 70 in (= place) /in/76in (= taking part) /m/ 52 in (= time) / in / 2.74in as in Who's in it? /m/ 52 in a minute /in ə 'minit/ 75 in advance /in əd'va:ns/ 30 in front of /in 'frant əv/ 76 in love /m 'lav/ 16 in (my twenties, etc.) /In (mai 'twentiz)/ 13 in order to /m 'side te/ 77 in the north /in ŏə 'nɔ:0/ 34 in the paper /m ðə 'peipə(r)/ 53 inbox /'mboks/ 47 included as in included in the price /in'klu:did/ 55 indefinite article /indefinat 'a:tikl/ 6 India /'india/ 4

Indian /'indian/ 4 indoors /in'do:z/ 37 industrial /m'dastrial/ 35 information /infə'mei[n/ 8 inland /m'lænd/ 34 inside /m'said/ 38 instrument as in musical instrument /'instramant/ 50 insurance /m'[vərəns/ 54 intelligent /in'telidzent/ 14 interested /'introstid/ 48 interesting /'intrəstin/ 35, 48 internet /'intanet/ 47 internet access /'intenet ækses/ 55 into /'intu:, 'intə/ 59, 76, 77 invite /in'vait/ 64 Ireland /'aiələnd/ 4 ironing /'aɪənɪn/ 39 irregular /ı'regjələ(r)/ 6 irritating /'ırıteıtın/ 70 Italian / tæliən/ 4 Italy /'rtəli/ 4

jacket /'dzækɪt/ 18 jam /dzæm/ 26 Japan /dʒə'pæn/ 4 Japanese /dzæpə'ni:z/ 4 jar /d3ax(r)/ 26 jeans /dzi:nz/ 18 job /d3pb/ 8, 42 journalism /'dʒ3:nəlızm/ 43 journalist /'dʒ3:nəlɪst/ 43 journey /'dʒ3:ni/ 30, 61, 79 juice as in orange juice /dzu:s/ 27 jump /dʒʌmp/ 11 jumper /'dʒʌmpə(r)/ 18 junction /'dʒʌŋkʃn/ 32 junk /dʒʌŋk/ 47 just as in just keep going /dʒAst/ 31 just a moment /'dʒʌst ə məʊmənt/ 69 just after /'dʒʌst ɑːftə(r)/ 2 just over /'dʒʌst əʊvə(r)/ 26.35 just under /'dʒʌst ʌndə(r)/ 26, 35

keen as in keen on something /ki:n/ 48
keep (= put/store) /ki:p/ 46
keep going /ki:p 'goon/ 31
keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ 46
kilo /'ki:ləʊ/ 26
kilometres /kɪl'əmi:təz, kɪ'lɒmɪtəz/ 31, 34
kind adj /kaɪnd/ 14
kind as in that's very kind of you /kaɪnd/ 66
kind as in What kind...? /kaɪnd/ 52, 62
kitchen /'kɪtʃɪn/ 38
knee /ni:/ 12
knife /naɪf/ 28

know /nəu/ 7, 31 know as in get to know /nəu/ 15 Korean /kəˈriːən/ 4

ladies /leidiz/ 33 lake /leik/ 36 lamb /læm/ 24 lamp /læmp/ 41 land /lænd/ 56 language /længwid3/ 4 lane /lem/ 32 laptop /'læptop/ 46 large /la:d3/ 19 last adi /last/ 30 last v /last/ 43 last night, last week, last year, etc. /last 'nait, 'wi:k, 'jiə(r)/ 75 last stop /la:st 'stop/ 29 late as in I get up late /lent/ 17 late as in Sorry I'm late /lett/ 67 late (fifties) /leit ('fiftiz)/ 13 later as in See you later /'leitə(r)/ 60, 75 laugh /la:f/ 14 law /lo:/ 43 lawyer /'lɔːjə(r)/ 43 lazy /'leizi/ 14 lead v /lixd/ 49 lead singer /lixd 'sinə(r)/ 51 league /li:q/ 49 leave as in I'll leave it/them /lixy/ 19 leave v (of a train) /lix/ 30, 42 leave home /lixy 'haum/ 17 leave school /li:v 'sku:l/ 42 left /left/ 31 leg /leg/ 12, 22 lemon /'lemon/ 25 lend /lend/ 63 length as in medium-length /len θ / 13 lesson /'lesn/ 42 let as in let me /let/ 66 let's /lets/ 65 letter /'letə(r)/ 59 letter box /'letə boks/ 59 lettuce /'letis/ 25 level /'levl/ 9 library /'laıbrəri/ 43 lie /lai/ 57 lie down /lai 'daon/ 11, 22, 73 lift n / lift / 38lift as in give someone a lift /lift/ 66 light adj /lant/ 13, 18 light n /last/ 41 lightning /'laɪtnɪŋ/ 21 like v /lark/ 48 like as in What's he/she/it like? /laɪk/ 14, 23, 62

like as in would like /lark/ 26, 27, 28, 55, 64

limit as in speed limit /'limit/ 32 mark /ma:k/ 42 line /lain/ 68 market /'ma:kit/ 35, 37 lip /lip/ 12 married /'mærid/ 8 listen to /'lisn tə/ 50, 53 married as in get married /mærid/ 10, 15 literature /'litrat(a(r)/ 42 match n = game / mæt / 49matches n (= to start a fire) /'mæt[z/ 26] litre /'li:tə(r)/ 26 little /'litl/ 19 maths (mathematics) /mæθs/ 42 little as in a little /'lttl/ 71 matter as in it doesn't matter /'mætə(r)/ 67 living room /'livin ru:m/ 38 matter as in What's the matter? location /loo'ker[n/ 35 $\frac{\text{'mætə(r)}}{16,22}$ lonely /'launli/ 36 maybe /'merbi/ 65 long adj /lon/ 13, 19 meal /mi:1/ 28, 64 long as in How long...? /lon/ 29, 62 mean /mi:n/ 7 long as in a metre long /lon/ 29 meaning /'mi:nɪŋ/ 7 long hours /lon 'avoz/ 45 meat /mi:t/ 24 look /lok/ 19 media /'mi:diə/ 53 medicine (= subject of study) /'medsn/ 43 look after /lok 'g:ftə/ 36 look round /lok 'raund/ 58 medicine (e.g. aspirin) /'medsn, 'medisin/ 23 medium (= size) /'mi:diəm/ 19 look something up /lok samθin 'ap/ 73 loose /lu:s/ 19 medium (= steak) /'mi:diəm/ 28 medium-length /'mi:diam lenθ/ 13 lorry driver /'lpri draivə(r)/ 44 lose /lu:z/ 49, 67 medium-sized /'mi:diam saizd/ 35 lot as in a lot, a lot of /lpt/ 21 meet (= come together) /mi:t/ 45 meet (= for the first time) /mixt/ 15, 60 lots as in lots to do /lots/ 35 meet as in nice/good to meet you /mi:t/ 60 lottery /'lotari/ 20 love /lav/ 48 meeting /'mi:tɪŋ/ 45 love story /'lav sto:ri/ 52 melon /'melon/ 25 lovely /'lavli/ 19,61 memory stick /'meməri stik/ 46 low as in low wages /lou/ 45 menu /'meniu:/ 28 luck as in good luck /lnk/ 61 merry Christmas /meri 'krısməs/ 61 luggage /'laqid3/ 56 message /'mesid3/ 47 lunch /lants/ 79 message as in text message /'mesid3/ 69 Mexican /'meksikən/ 4 Mexico /'meksikəu/ 4 MA (Master of Arts) /em 'eɪ (ma:stər əv a:ts)/ 43 microwave /'markrawery/ 39 MP3 player /em pi: 'θri: pleɪə(r)/ 47 midday /mid'dei/ 2 Mr /'mistə(r)/ 9 middle /'midl/ 46 Mrs /'misiz/ 9 middle-aged /midl 'eidzd/ 13 Ms /məz/ 9 Middle East /midl 'i:st/ 4 MSc (Master of Science) midnight /'midnait/ 2 /em es 'si: (ma:stər əv 'saɪəns)/ 43 might /mait/ 54 machine as in cash machine /məˈʃiːn/ 59 mile /mail/ 35 machine as in washing machine /məˈʃiːn/ 39 miles an hour /mailz on 'auo(r)/ 32 mad /mæd/ 70 milk /milk/ 26, 27 magazine /mægəˈziːn/ 53 million /'miljan/ 1 main course / mein kois/ 28 mind as in Do you mind if ...? /maind/ 63 main road /mein 'roud/ 32 mind as in never mind /maind/ 55, 67 major /'meidzə(r)/ 34 mineral water /'mineral wo:te(r)/ 28 make (= perform an action) /merk/ 45 minibar /'miniba:(r)/ 55 make (= produce) /meik/ 39, 46 mirror /'mirə(r)/ 40 make-up /'meik Ap/ 40 miss v /mis/ 30 manager /'mænidʒə(r)/ 43 Miss /mis/ 9 Mandarin /'mændərın/ 4 missing /'misin/ Starter mango /'mængəu/ 25 mistake /mi'steik/ Starter many as in how many /'meni/ 26, 61 mixed salad /mikst 'sæləd/ 28 map /mæp/ 58 mobile number /'məobail nambə(r)/ 69 marital status /'mæritl steitəs/ 9

modern /'mpdn/ 35, 38 modern languages /mpdn 'længwid3iz/ 42 moment as in at the moment /'maymant/ 69, 75 moment as in just a moment / maymant/ 69 monitor /'mpnitə(r)/ 46 month /manθ/ 3 more as in some more /mo:(r)/ 28 morning /'mɔ:nɪŋ/ 2 morning as in good morning /'mɔːnɪn/ 60 mosque /mpsk/ 35 most /məust/ 53 mother /'maðə(r)/ 10 mother tongue /maða 'tan/ 9 motorway /'moutowei/ 32 mountain /'maontan/ 34 mouse /maus/ 46 mouse mat /'maus mæt/ 46 moustache /məˈstaːʃ/ 13 mouth /mavθ/ 12 move /muxy/ 46 movie /'mu:vi/ 52 much as in how much /mats/ 13, 26, 45, 59 much as in nothing much /mats/ 53 mum /mam/ 10 museum /mju:'zi:əm/ 35, 58 mushroom /'masru:m/ 25 music /'mju:zik/ 42,50 musical /'mju:zikl/ 50 mussels /'maslz/ 24 must /'məst/ 60

name as in family name, first name /neim/ 8 napkin /'næpkm/ 28 narrow /'nærəo/ 70 nationality /næfə'nælıti/ 4 near /nip(r)/ 29, 76 nearest /'niprist/ 62 nearly /'nıəli/ 2 necessary /'nesəsəri/ 70 neck /nek/ 12 need /ni:d/ 19, 23, 66 neighbours /'neibəz/ 38 nephew /'nefju:/ 10 nervous /'na:vəs/ 16 net /net/ 49 never /'nevə(r)/ 17 never mind / nevə maind/ 55, 67 New Year /nju: 'jɪə(r)/ 61 New Year's Day /nju: jɪəz 'deɪ/ 3 news /nju:z/ 53 newsagent's /'nju:zeidʒənts/ 37 newspaper /'nju:speipə(r)/ 53 next (of a train) /nekst/ 30 next stop /'nekst stop/ 29 next to /'nekst tu:, tə/ 76 next week /nekst 'wi:k/ 75

nice /nais/ 14, 19, 79 nice as in have a nice day/evening /nais/ 61 nice to meet you /nais to 'mi:t ju:/ 60 niece /ni:s/ 10 night (= saying goodnight) /naɪt/ 60 night as in a night /naɪt/ 2 night as in €60 a night /naɪt/ 55 night as in last night /naɪt/ 75 nightlife /'naɪtlaɪf/ 35 nil /nɪl/ 49 no entry /noo 'entri/ 33 no exit /noo 'eksit/ 33 no parking /nəʊ 'pa:kɪn/ 33 no problem /nau 'problam/ 63 no smoking /nəʊ 'sməʊkɪn/ 33 noisy /'nɔɪzi/ 70 none /nan/ 53 noodles /'nu:dlz/ 26 normally /'no:məli/ 17 north /no:θ/ 34, 35 North America /no:θ ə'merikə/ 4 north-east /no:θ 'irst/ 35 north-west /no:θ 'west/ 35 Northern Ireland /no:ðen 'aielend/ 4 nose /nəuz/ 12 not bad /npt 'bæd/ 60 notebook /'nautbok/ 5 notes /nauts/ 20, 56 nothing as in there's nothing to do /'nλθιη/ 35 nothing much /nλθιη 'mλts/ 53 nothing to declare /nλθιη to di'kleo(r)/ 33 noticeboard /'noutisboid/ 5 noun /naun/ 6 number as in phone number /'nambo(r)/ 69 number as in PIN number /'nambo(r)/ 20 number as in wrong number /'nambə(r)/ 69 number 1 (in the singles chart) /nambə 'wan/ 51 nurse /naxs/ 44 nursery school /'naːsəri skuːl/ 42

occasionally /ə'keɪʒ(ə)nəli/ 17 occupation /pkiu'per[n/ 9 o'clock (of time) /ə'klpk/ 2 o'clock (of a train) /ə'klok/ 30 odd /pd/ 70 of course /əv 'kə:s/ 28, 63 offer /'pfə(r)/ 66 office as in post office /'pfis/ 59 office as in ticket office /'pfis/ 30 officer as in police officer /'pfisə(r)/ 44 often /'pfn, pftən/ 17 often as in how often /'pfn, 'pftən/ 62 oil /oil/ 28 old /auld/ 8.10 olive oil /oliv 'oil/ 26 olives /'plivz/ 26

on (– preposition of place) /bn/ /6	packet /'pækit/ 26
on (= preposition of time) $/pn/74$	pain /pein/ 22
on a river /pn ə 'rıvə(r)/ 35	pair /peə(r)/ 18
on holiday /on 'holoder, -di/ 54	palace /'pælis/ 35
on my own /on mai 'oun/ 14	pale /peil/ 18
on the coast /on ðə 'kəust/ 34, 35	pan as in frying pan /pæn/ 39
on the first floor /pn də fa:st 'flo:(r)/ 38	paper (= newspaper) /'peipə(r)/ 53
on the internet /pn ði: 'intenet/ 47	paper as in piece of paper /'peipə(r)/ 5
on the phone /pn ðə 'fəun/ 69	paper shop /'peipə fop/ 37
on time /on 'tarm/ 56	parcel /'pa:sl/ 59
on TV/on the radio	parents /'pearants/ 10
/pn ti: 'vi:, pn ðə 'reidiəu/ 53	park n /pa:k/ 35
on as in What's on? /pn/ 52	park v /pa:k/ 38
once /wans/ 17	park as in car park /pa:k/ 32
onion /'Anjon/ 25	parking /'pa:kin/ 38, 55
online /pn'lain, 'pnlain / 20, 47	part-time adj /'part taım/ 45
only adj /'ounli/ 70	participle as in past participle
only adv /'əonli/ 71	/pa:'tisipl, 'pa:tisipl / 6
open /'əupən/ 11, 46, 62	particularly /pəˈtɪkjələli/ 71
opera singer /'pprə siŋə(r)/ 51	partner /'pa:tnə(r)/ 15
opinion /ə'pınjən/ 35, 53, 68	
opposite n /'oppozit/ Starter, 7	party /'pa:ti/ 64
opposite prep /'ppəzit/ 31,76	pass an exam /pass ən ɪgˈzæm/ 42
opposites as in complete opposites /'ppazits/ 14	passenger /'pæsindʒə(r)/ 30, 56
or so as in for an hour or so /ɔ: 'səʊ/ 57	passport /'passport/ 54
orange adj /'orindz/ 18	passport control /pa:spo:t kon'troul/ 56
orange n /'prindʒ/ 25	past /past/ 76
_	past as in five past six /pa:st/ 2
orange juice /'prindʒ dʒu:s/ 27 orchestra /'ɔ:kistrə/ 51	past participle /pa:st pa:'tisipl, pa:st 'pa:tisipl/
	pasta /'pæstə/ 26
order /'ɔːdə(r)/ 27, 28	paste /peist/ 46
order as in in order to /'ɔ:də(r)/ 77	path /pa:0/36
order as in out of order /ˈɔːdə(r)/ 29	pavement /'pervment/ 32
organize /ˈɔːgənaɪz/ 45	pay /pei/ 19
organized /ˈɔːgənaɪzd/ 14	PE (physical education) /pi: 'i: (fızıkl
other as in each other /'Aðə(r)/ 15	edzu'kersn)/ 42
out of /'aut əv/ 76	peace /pi:s/ 53
out of order /aut əv 'ɔːdə(r)/ 33	peach /pi:ts/ 25
outdoors /aut'do:z/ 37	pear $pea(r)/25$
outside adv /aot'saɪd/ 38	peas /pi:z/ 25
outside prep /'aotsaid/ 29	pedestrian crossing /padestrian 'krosin/ 32
oven /'Avn/ 39	pen /pen/ 5
over (= above/higher than something)	pen as in board pen /pen/ 5
/'əʊvə(r)/ 76	pencil /'pensl/ 5
over (= more than a number, price, etc.)	pencil sharpener /'pensl sa:pno(r)/ 5
/'auva(r)/ 26, 35	pepper (= spice) /'pepə(r)/ 28
overtake /əuvə'teik/ 32	pepper (= vegetable) /'pepə(r)/ 25
overweight /əuvə'weit/ 13	per cent /pə 'sent/ 59
own v /aun/ 36	perfect /'ps:fikt/ 57
own as in on my own /oun/ 14	perform /pəˈfɔːm/ 51
	perfume /ˈpɜːfjuːm/ 40
PC (personal computer)	perhaps /pəˈhæps/ 54, 65
/piː 'siː (pɜːsənl kəm'pjuːtə)/ 46	person /'ps:sn/ 13
PhD (Doctor of Philosophy)	personally /'passənəli/ 68
/pi: etf 'di: (dokter ev fi'losefi)/ 43	petrol station /'petrol ster[n/ 32
p.m. /pi: 'em/ 2	pharmacy /ˈfɑːməsi/ 22
pack /pæk/ 54	phone n, v /foun/ 69
pacific of	



6

phone call /'foun ko:l/ 45	potato /pəˈteɪtəu/ 25
phone number /'foun nambo(r)/ 69	prawns /pro:nz/ 24
phone someone back /foon samwan 'bæk/ 69	prefer /pri'f3:(r)/ 37, 48, 65, 68
photos /'fəutəuz/ 58	preposition /prepəˈzɪʃn/ 6
phrase /freiz/ 6	price /prais/ 20, 55
physics /'fızıks/ 42	primary school /'praimeri sku:l/ 42
pianist /ˈpɪənɪst/ 51	print /print/ 46
piano /pi'ænəu/ 51	
pick up /pik 'Ap/ 11	print something out /print samθin 'aut/ 46 printer /'printə(r)/ 46
picture /'piktso(r)/ 41	
piece /pixs/ 5, 26, 41	printout /'printaut/ 46
pig /pig/ 24	private school /'praivet sku:l/ 42
pilot /'parlət/ 44	problem as in no problem /'problem/ 63
PIN (personal identification number)	programme /'prəogræm/ 53
/pin (ps:sənl aidentifi'keisn nambə)/ 20	pronoun /'prəunaun/ 6
pineapple /'pamæpl/ 25	pronounce /prəˈnaons/ 7
pink /piŋk/ 18	psychologist /sai'kpladzist/ 43
pitch /pitʃ/ 49	psychology /sai'kɒlədʒi/ 43
place /pleis/ 35, 49	public transport /phblik 'trænsport/ 36
	puck /pak/ 49
places as in change places /'pleisiz/ 63	pull /pol/ 11
plane /plein/ 56	pupil /'pju:pl/ 42
plaster /'pla:stə(r)/ 23	purple /'ps:pl/ 18
plate /pleit/ 28	push /poʃ/ 11
platform /'plætfo:m/ 30	put (= place) /pot/ 59
play /plei/ 17, 50	put in /pot 'm/ 20
player as in cassette player, CD player	put something away /pot samθιη ə'wei/ 39
/'pleiə(r)/ 5	put something down /put samθιη 'daon/ 11
player as in DVD player / pleiə(r)/ 41	put something on /put samθin 'pn/ 40, 73
player as in MP3 player /'pleio(r)/ 47	
pleasant /'plez(ə)nt/ 14, 21	quarter (past/to) /'kwɔ:tə (pa:st/tuː)/ 2
please /pli:z/ 26, 27, 59, 63, 66, 69	queue /kju:/ 37
please do not disturb /pli:z du: not di'sta:b/ 33	queue here /kju: 'hɪə(r)/ 29
plural noun /ploərəl 'naon/ 6	quick /kwik/ 47
points /points/ 49	quiet (= about a person) /'kwaiət/ 14
Poland /'pauland/ 4	quiet (= not busy) /'kwaiət/ 32, 35
police officer /pəˈliːs pfɪsə(r)/ 44	quiet (= not noisy) /'kwaiət/ 70
Polish /'pəolɪʃ/ 4	quite /kwait/ 48, 71
polite /pəˈlaɪt/ 67	10,71
politician /polə'tıʃn/ 43	madret //amhat/ 40
politics /'polatiks/ 43	racket /'rækit/ 49
polluted /pəˈluːtɪd/ 35	radiator /ˈreɪdieɪtə(r)/ 41
poor $poo(r)/70$	radio /'reidiəu/ 53
popular /'pppjələ(r)/ 34, 50	railway station /'reilwei steisn/ 31
population /popjə'leɪʃn/ 35	rain n , v /rein/ 21
pork /po:k/ 24	raincoat /'reinkəut/ 18
Portugal /'portsugl/ 4	rare /reə(r)/ 28
Portuguese /portsus / giz/ 4	rarely /ˈreəli/ 17
possible /'ppsabl/ 70	raw /ro:/ 25
possibly /'posabli/ 63	razor /'reizə(r)/ 40
post v /pəust/ 59	RE (religious education)
post office /'paust pfis/ 59	/aːr ˈiː (rɪlɪdʒəs edʒuˈkeɪ∫n) 42
postbox /'poustboks/ 59	read /ri:d/ 50
postcard /'pəostka:d/ 59	ready /ˈredi/ 28
postcode /'pəustkəud/ 8, 59	really /'ri:əli/ 14, 48, 67, 71
postman /'pəostmən/ 59	receipt /rɪˈsiːt/ 20
postwoman /'pəustwomən/ 59	receive /rɪˈsiːv/ 47
	reclaim as in baggage reclaim /'ri:kleim/ 56

recommend /rekə'mend/ 55, 62	sad /sæd/ 16
red /red/ 18,	safe /seif/ 35
refuse /rɪˈfjuːz/ 66	salad as in mixed salad /'sæləd/ 28
regular /'regjələ(r)/ 6	salary /'sæləri/ 45
relationship /ri'leɪʃnʃɪp/ 15	sale /seil/ 33
relative /'relativ/ 10	salmon /'sæmən/ 24
relax /ri'læks/ 57	salt /so:lt, splt/ 28
relaxed /rɪˈlækst/ 14	same /seim/ Starter
remember /ri'membə(r)/ 7,67	same as in the same to you /seim/ 61
rent /rent/ 57	sandals /'sændlz/ 18
repair /rɪˈpeə(r)/ 50	sandwich /'sænwitʃ, 'sænwidʒ/ 27
reply /ri'plai/ 47	satellite TV /sætəlait ti: 'vi:/ 55
report n /ri'port/ 45	sauce /so:s/ 28
report v /rr'poxt/ 53	
reporter /ri'po:tə(r)/ 43, 53	saucepan /'sɔːspæn/ 39
research /ri'ssxtʃ, 'ri:ssxtʃ/ 43	saucer /'sɔːsə(r)/ 39
reserve /ri'z3:v/ 30	Saudi /ˈsaudi/ 4
resort /rr'zɔ:t/ 57	Saudi Arabia /saudi əˈreɪbiə/ 4
rest as in have a rest /rest/ 79	sausages /'spsədʒiz/ 24
results /ri'zalts/ 42	save (= not waste) /serv/ 20
retired /ri'taiəd/ 44	save (= store) /seiv/ 46
	say /sei/ 7
return /ri'ts:n/ 30	scales /skeilz/ 56, 59
review /rɪ'vjuː/ 52	scared /skead/ 16
rice /rais/ 26	scarf /ska:f/ 18
rich /ritʃ/ 70	school /skuːl/ 42
ride /raid/ 11, 36	score n , v /sko: (r) / 49
right (= correct) /rait/ 7	Scotland /'skptland/ 4
right (= not left) /rant/ 31	screen /skri:n/ 46
right (= OK) /rait/ 55	sea /siː/ 57
ring v (of a bell) /rm/ 29	seafood /'si:fu:d/ 24
ring v (= phone) /rɪŋ/ 69	search engine /ˈsɜːtʃ endʒɪn/ 47
ring someone back /rin samwan 'bæk/ 69	season /'sizn/ 3
rink /rink/ 49	seat /sixt/ 27, 30
ripe /raip/ 26	seat belt /'sixt belt/ 56
river /'rīvə(r)/ 34	secondary school /'sekəndri sku:l/ 42
road as in main road /road/ 32	secretary /'sekrət(ə)ri/ 44
road sign /'rood sam/ 32	see (= meet or visit) /siz/ 15, 60
roast /rəost/ 28	see (= watch) /si:/ 17, 52, 53
roll /rəʊl/ 27	See you later /si: ju: 'leɪtə(r)/ 60, 75
romantic /rəo'mæntik/ 52	self-employed /self im'ploid/ 44
room service /'ru:m sɜ:vɪs/ 55	sell /sel/ 20
roundabout /'raondabaot/ 32	send /send/ 45, 47, 59, 69
route /ruːt/ 29	serious /'sɪəriəs/ 14
rubber /'rʌbə(r)/ 5	service as in room service /'ss:vis/ 55
rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 38	set /set/ 49
rubbish bin /ˈrʌbɪʃ bɪn/ 39	shake hands /feik 'hændz/ 60
rude /ru:d/ 67	shall I? (= offer) /'ʃæl aɪ, ʃəl 'aɪ/ 66
rug /rʌɡ/ 41	shall we? (= suggestion) /'ʃæl wix, ʃəl 'wix/ 65
rugby /ˈrʌgbi/ 49	shame /ʃeɪm/ 55
ruler /ˈruːlə(r)/ 5	shampoo /∫æm'pu:/ 40
run $n / r_{An} / 79$	share /ʃeə(r)/ 14
run v /rʌn/ 11, 29	sharpener as in pencil sharpener /'farpnə(r)/ 5
rush hour /'raf aoə(r)/ 32	shave /feiv/ 40
Russia /'rʌʃə/ 4	sheep /fi:p/ 24
Russian /'rasn/ 4	sheet /fi:t/ 40
	shelf /self/ 39

shirt /(3:t/ 18 something /'samθin/ 23 shoe /fu:/ 18 sometimes /'samtaimz/ 17 shooting /'suxtin/ 50 son /san/ 10 shop /fpp/ 37 song /spn/ 50 shop assistant /'fpp əsistənt/ 19,44 soon /su:n/ 60, 75 shopping as in do the shopping sore /so:(r)/ 22 /'fppin/ 17, 37, 39 sorry /'spri/ 63, 64, 67 shopping centre /'fopin sentə(r)/ 37 sounds /saundz/ 64 short /so:t/ 13, 19 soup /su:p/ 28 shorts /sorts/ 57 south /saoθ/ 34.35 should /fod/ 22, 58 South Korea /saoθ kəˈriːə/ 4 shoulder /'səuldə(r)/ 12 south-east /sauθ 'isst/ 35 shower *n* (in the bathroom) /'[avo(r)/17, 40, 55]south-west /sauθ 'west/ 35 shower $n = rain / \frac{av_0(r)}{21}$ soy sauce /soi 'sois/ 28 shut /sat/ 11,62 Spain /spein/ 4 shy /sai/ 14 Spanish /'spænis/ 4 sick /sik/ 22 sparkling /'spa:klin/ 28 sightseeing /'saitsixin/ 58 speak /spi:k/ 69 sign v /sam/ 59 speaker /'spi:kə(r)/ 46 sign as in road sign /sam/ 32 speaking /'spi:kin/ 69 signature /'signat(a(r)/9 speed camera /'spixd kæm(ə)rə/ 32 since /sins/ 75 speed limit /'spi:d limit/ 32 sing /sin/ 50 spell /spel/ 7 singer $\frac{\sin(r)}{50.51}$ spend (money) /spend ('mʌni)/ 20 single n = song /'singl/ 51 spend (time) /spend ('taım)/ 10, 45, 50 single n = ticket /'singl/ 30 split up /split 'Ap/ 15 single adj (= for one) /'singl/ 40.55spoon /spu:n/ 28 single adj (= not married) /'singl/ 8 sporty /'spo:ti/ 14 singles chart /'singlz tfa:t/ 51 spring /sprin/ 3 singular noun /singjələ 'naon/ 6 square /skweə(r)/ 35 sink /sink/ 39 squid /skwid/ 24 sister /'sistə(r)/ 10 staff /sta:f/ 55 sister-in-law /'sister in lo:/ 10 stairs /steəz/ 38 sit down /sit 'daon/ 11.73 stalls /sto:lz/ 37 size /saiz/ 19, 35 stamp /stæmp/ 59 skiing /'ski::n/ 50 stand up /stænd 'Ap/ 11, 73 skirt /sk3:t/ 18 star /sta:(r)/ 52 sky /skai/ 36 start /sta:t/ 42 sleep /sli:p/ 17, 61 starter /'sta:tə(r)/ 28 slim /slim/ 13 state school /'stert sku:1/ 42 slow /slau/ 30, 47 station as in petrol station /'sterfn/ 32 small /smo:l/ 19 station as in railway station /'sterfn/ 31 smart /sma:t/ 19 statue /'stætsu:/ 35 smoking as in no smoking /'smoukin/ 33 status as in marital status /'steitəs/ 9 snow n, v / snow / 21stay (= live for a short period) v, n /stei/ 55 so /sau/ 77 stay at school /ster at 'sku:1/ 42 so as in an hour or so /səu/ 57 stay in bed /ster in 'bed/ 22 soap /səup/ 40 steak /steik/ 28 soap (= soap opera) /səup/ 53 steps /steps/ 38 sociable /'səu[əbl/ 14 stick /stik/ 49 sock /spk/ 18 stick as in memory stick /stik/ 46 sofa /'səufə/ 41 still adj /stil/ 28 software engineer /'spftweər endʒiniə(r)/ 43 still adv /stil/ 71 soldier /'səʊldʒə(r)/ 44 stomach /'stamak/ 12 some /sam, sam/ 53 stomach-ache /'stamak eik/ 22 some more /səm 'mɔx(r)/ 28 stop as in bus stop, last stop /stop/ 29

store as in department store /sto:(r)/ 37 taxi driver /'tæksi draɪvə(r)/ 44 storm /storm/ 21 tea /ti:/ 27 story as in love story /'sto:ri/ 52 teacher /'ti:t[ə(r)/ 44 straight adj /streit/ 13 team /ti:m/ 49 straight as in straight on /streit/ 31 technology as in design and technology strange /streind3/ 70 /tek'npladai/ 42 strawberry /'stro:b(ə)ri/ 25 technology as in IT, ICT /tek'npladai/ 42 strong /stron/ 70 teenager /'ti:neidzə(r)/ 13 study /'stadi/ 38 teens /ti:nz/ 13 studies as in business studies /'stadiz/ 43 teeth /ti:θ/ 17, 40 stupid /'stju:pid/ 14 television /'telivi3n, teli'vi3n / 41 subject /'sabd3ikt/ 42 temperature /'temprətfə(r)/ 22 sugar /'fugə(r)/ 26 temple /'templ/ 35 suggestion /sə'dzest[n/ 65 tennis /'tenis/ 17, 49 suit /suit/ 18 tennis as in table tennis /'tenis/ 50 suitcase /'su:(t)keis/ 54, 56 term /t3:m/ 43 summer /'samə(r)/ 3 terminal /'ta:minl/ 56 sun /san/ 21 terrible /'terabl/ 36, 42, 79 sunbathe /'sanbeið/ 57 text v, n /tekst/ 69 sunglasses /'sangla:siz/ 18 Thai /tai/ 4 sunny /'sani/ 21 Thailand /'tailand/ 4 sunshine /'sanfam/ 21 thank you /'θæŋk ju:/ 66 supermarket /'su:pəma:kit/ 37 thanks /0ænks/ 26, 31, 60, 61, 66 sure adj $/\int v_2(r)/7, 65, 68$ that's all /oets 'o:1/ 26 sure adv /ʃoə(r)/ 28, 63 the news /ðə 'nju:z/ 53 surname /'sa:neim/ 9 the same to you /ðə seim tə 'ju:/ 61 surprised /sə'praizd/ 16 then /ðen/ 78 sweater /'swetə(r)/ 18 then as in See you then /ðen/ 60 sweet /swi:t/ 25 thin $\theta_{\rm In}/13$ swim n / swim / 79think $\theta_{ink}/48,68$ Swiss /swis/ 4 third $/\theta$ 3:d/ 3 Switzerland /'switsələnd/ 4 thirsty /'03:sti/ 16 this evening, this weekend, etc. /ðis 'i:vnin, ðis wi:k'end/ 75 TV /ti: 'vi:/ 41, 53 this is (used when introducing someone) table (= furniture) /'teibl/ 5 table (= list of facts/words) /'teibl/ Starter, 49 /'dis iz/ 60 table tennis /'teibl tenis/ 50 this is (used on the phone) /'ðis iz/ 69 tablet /'tæblət/ 23 thousand /'θaυzənd/ 1 thriller $\frac{\theta}{\theta} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\theta}{\theta} = \frac{1}{2} \frac$ take (= buy) /teik/ 19 throat /0raut/ 22 take (= carry) /teik/ 63 through /0ru:/ 76 take (= have a certain size) /teik/ 19 thumb θ_{Λ} 12 take (= use a form of transport) /teik/ 30, 32, 57 thunder /'0Andə(r)/ 21 take (a tablet/medicine) /teik/ 23 tick /tik/ Starter, 9 take an exam /teik ən ig'zæm/ 42 ticket /'tıkıt/ 30,56 take away /teik ə'wei/ 27 ticket office /'tıkıt pfis/ 30 take off (= leave the ground) tidy /'taɪdi/ 14 /teik 'pf, 'teik pf / 56, 73 tie /tai/ 18 take off (= remove) /teik 'pf/ 40, 73 take out, take something out tight /tart/ 19 tights /taits/ 18 /terk 'aut, terk samθin 'aut/ 39 time /tam/ 2,61 take photos /teik 'foutouz/ 58 take the first turning /teik ðə fa:st 'ta:niŋ/ 31 time as in half-time /taim/ 49 time as in have a nice time /taɪm/ 79 tall /to:l/ 13 tap /tæp/ 39 time as in in (ten days') time /tam/ 75 timetable /'taimteibl/ 29, 30 tart /taxt/ 28 tin /tm/ 25, 26 taste /teist/ 25

tired /'taiəd/ 16 umbrella /Am'brelə/ 18 tissue /'tɪfu:/ 23.40 unable /An'eibl/ 51 toasted sandwich uncle /'Ankl/ 10 /təustid 'sænwitf, 'sænwid3/ 27 uncomfortable /An'kAmf(ə)təbl/ 19 toe /təu/ 12 under (= less than) /' Λ ndə(r)/ 26, 35 together /təˈgeðə(r)/ 10, 15 under (= position) /' Λ ndə(r)/ 76 toilet /'toilet/ 33, 40 undergraduate /Andə'qrædzuət/ 43 tomato /tə'mq:təo/ 25 underline /Andə'lam/ Starter tomorrow /tə'mprəu/ 75 unemployed /Anim'ploid/ 44 tongue as in mother tongue /tʌn/ 9 unfortunately /An'fort[ənətli/ 43 too (= also) /tu:/ 61,77 unfriendly /An'frendli/ 14 too (= more than is good) /tu:/ 19 unhappy /An'hæpi/ 16 tooth /tu:θ/ 12 uniform /'ju:nifo:m/ 42 toothache /'tu:θeik/ 22 United Kingdom (UK) /junaitid 'kindəm/ 4 toothbrush /'tu:0braf/ 40 United States of America (USA) /junartid steits a toothpaste /'tu:θpeist/ 40 v ə'merikə/ 4 top (= clothes) /top/ 18 university /ju:ni'va:səti/ 42 top (= highest part) /top/ 38, 49 unnecessary /An'nesəsəri/ 70 touch /tatf/ 11 untidy /nn'tardi/ 14 tour /tuə(r)/ 58 until /An'tıl/ 42, 75 tourist /'toorist/ 55 unusual /nn'ju:3uəl/ 70 towel /'taval/ 40 up /Ap/ 76 town /taun/ 35 upset /Ap'set/ 16 town centre /taun 'sento(r)/ 38 upstairs /Ap'steaz/ 38 traffic /'træfik/ 32 use /ju:z/ 40, 47 traffic jam /'træfik dæm/ 32 useful /'ju:sfl/ 70 traffic light /'træfik lait/ 32 useless /'ju:sləs/ 70 train /trem/ 30 usually /'ju:zuəli/ 17 train driver /'trein draivə(r)/ 44 utility room /jux'tıləti ruxm/ 38 trainers /'treməz/ 18 transport as in public transport /'transport/ 36 vacancies as in no vacancies /'veikənsiz/ 33 travel insurance /'trævl insurans/ 54 valley /'væli/ 36 traveller's cheque /trævələz 'tfek/ 59 various /'veəriəs/ 50 travelling /'trævəlin/ 50 verb /vs:b/ 6 tree /tri:/ 36 very /'veri/ 19, 48, 60, 66 tree as in family tree /tri:/ 10 vet /vet/ 44 trolley /'troli/ 37, 56 views /vju:z/ 38 trousers /'traozəz/ 18 village /'vilid3/ 35 true /tru:/ Starter vinegar /'vinigə(r)/ 28 try /trai/ 23 violent /'varələnt/ 52 try on /'trai pn/ 19,73 violin /vaiə'lin/ 51 T-shirt /'ti: sa:t/ 18 violinist /vaiə'lmist/ 51 tuna /'tju:nə/ 24 visa /'vi:zə/ 54 Turkey /'ta:ki/ 4 visit /'vizit/ 47, 58 Turkish /'ta:kif/ 4 volleyball /'volibo:1/ 49 turn something off /ta:n samθin 'pf/ 39 turn something on /ts:n samθin 'pn/ 11, 39, 73 wages /'weid3iz/ 45 turning /'ta:nɪŋ/ 31 waist /weist/ 12 twice /twais/ 17 wait /weit/ 30 twin room /'twin ru:m/ 55 wake up /weik 'Ap/ 73 type /taip/ 45 Wales /weilz/ 4 typical /'tɪpɪkl/ 58 walk n /wo:k/ 17, 57, 79 walk v /wo:k/ 6, 11 UK (United Kingdom) /ju: 'kei/ 4 wall /wo:l/ 41 USA (United States of America) /ju: es 'eɪ/ 4 want /wpnt/ 64, 66 ugly /'Agli/ 13 war /wo:(r)/ 53

war film /'wo: film/ 52
wardrobe /'wo:droub/ 40
wash $n / wp / 40,79$
wash v /wpʃ/ 40
washbasin /'wp[beisn/ 40
washing machine /'wpʃɪŋ məʃiːn/ 39
washing-up /wp[in 'Ap/ 39
waste /weist/ 68
watch n /wptf/ 18
watch v /wpt[/ 50, 53
water as in mineral water /'wo:tə(r)/ 28
wavy /'wervi/ 13
way /wei/ 31, 70
way in /wei 'm/ 33
way out /wei 'aut/ 33
weak /wi:k/ 70
wear /weə(r)/ 18,40
weather forecast /'weðə fɔ:ka:st/ 53
web address /'web adres/ 47
webcam /'webkæm/ 46
website /'websart/ 47
week /wi:k/ 3, 17, 45, 55, 75
weekday /'wi:kdeɪ/ 17
weekend /wirk'end/ 17, 61, 75, 79
weigh /wei/ 13
weight /weit/ 13
welcome /'welkəm/ 61
well (= in a good way) /wel/ 15, 42, 61
well (= not ill) /wel/ 16, 22, 60
well (used when you feel uncertain) /wel/ 65
well as in as well /wel/ 77
well done (= congratulations) /wel 'dʌn/ 61
well done (= cooked for a long time)
/wel 'dan/ 28
well known /wel 'nəon/ 51
west /west/ 34, 35
wet /wet/ 21
what (used in questions) /wpt/ 21, 27
what about? /'wpt about/ 65
what's on? (= happening) /wpts 'pn/ 52
what's the matter? /wpts oo 'mæto(r)/ 16, 21
when (= at what time) /wen/ 62
when (= the time something happened)
/wen/ 78
where $\langle weo(r) \rangle = 62$
where are you from? /wear a ju: 'from/ 4
whereabouts /'weərəbauts/ 8
which /wits/ 62
while /wail/ 78
while as in for a while /wail/ 22
white /wait/ 18, 27, 28
who /hu:/ 62
whose /hu:z/ 62
why /wai/ 62
wide /waid/ 70

win (= be best or first) /win/ 49 win (money) /win/ 20 wind /wind/ 21 window /'windəu/ 41 window seat /'window sixt/ 56 windy /'windi/ 21 wine /wain/ 28 winter /'wintə(r)/ 3 wonderful /'wandəfl/ 36, 48 wood /wod/ 36 wool as in cotton wool /wol/ 23 word /ws:d/ 6 work n /w3:k/ 17 work v /w3:k/ 42, 45 worried /'warid/ 16 worry as in don't worry /wari/ 66 worst /wa:st/ 42 worth $/w3:\theta/62$ wrist /rist/ 12 write /rait/ 43, 59 wrong (= causing problems) /rpn/ 62 wrong (= not right) /rpn/ Starter, 7, 19 wrong number /rpn 'nambə(r)/ 69

year /jiə(r)/ 3, 45 yellow /'jeləu/ 18 yes, please /'jes pli:z, jes 'pli:z/ 27, 66 yesterday /'jestədei/ 75 you too /ju: 'tu:/ 61 young /jʌŋ/ 13

zero /'ziarau/ 69



Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

Basic: for elementary and pre-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams





Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.



It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills



